# FM 17-35

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY FIELD MANUAL



# ARMORED CAVALRY UNITS
# ARMORED AND INFANTRY
# DIVISIONS



HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
DECEMBER 1957

FIELD MANUAL
No. 17–35

HEADQUARTERS,
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
WASHINGTON 25, D. C., *26 December 1957*

# ARMORED CAVALRY UNITS
# ARMORED AND INFANTRY DIVISIONS


| | | Paragraphs | Page |
|---|---|---|---|
| PART ONE. | GENERAL | | |
| CHAPTER 1. | GENERAL | 1–5 | 4 |
| 2. | ORGANIZATION | | |
| Section I. | General | 6 | 8 |
| II. | Armored cavalry squadron | 7–19 | 8 |
| III. | Infantry division cavalry squadron | 20–22 | 14 |
| CHAPTER 3. | FACTORS AFFECTING EMPLOYMENT | 23–27 | 17 |
| 4. | COMBAT SUPPORT | 28–33 | 19 |
| 5. | COMMUNICATION AND LIAISON | 34–40 | 22 |
| PART TWO. | PLATOON AND SECTION | | |
| CHAPTER 6. | GENERAL | | |
| Section I. | General | 41–43 | 31 |
| II. | Organization and capabilities, platoons and sections | 44–50 | 32 |
| III. | Duties of personnel, platoons and sections | 51–55 | 40 |
| IV. | Platoon task organization | 56–58 | 41 |
| CHAPTER 7. | ARMORED CAVALRY PLATOON TEAM | | |
| Section I. | General | 59–61 | 45 |
| II. | Platoon team in attack | 62–70 | 45 |
| III. | Platoon team in defense | 71–75 | 50 |
| IV. | Platoon team in delaying action | 76–86 | 56 |
| V. | Platoon team in reconnaissance missions | 87–92 | 63 |
| VI. | Platoon team in security missions | 93–99 | 73 |
| CHAPTER 8. | LIGHT-GUN TANK PLATOON AND SECTION | 100–106 | 78 |
| 9. | ARMORED RIFLE PLATOON AND SQUAD | 107–117 | 80 |
| 10. | SCOUT PLATOON AND SECTION | | |
| Section I. | General | 118–122 | 85 |
| II. | Combat operations of scout units, general | 123–135 | 86 |
| III. | Offensive operations, scout units | 136, 137 | 103 |
| IV. | Defensive operations, scout units | 138 | 103 |
| V. | Scout units in delaying action | 139–141 | 107 |
| VI. | Scout units in reconnaissance missions | 142–146 | 109 |
| VII. | Scout units in security missions | 147–151 | 112 |
| VIII. | Helicopterborne operations, scout units | 152–155 | 117 |


* This manual supersedes FM 17–35, 1 March 1951, including C 1, 31 October 1952, and FM 17–22, 1 May 1950, including C 1, 31 October 1952.

| | | Paragraphs | Page |
|---|---|---|---|
| CHAPTER 11. | RECONNAISSANCE AND SURVEILLANCE PLATOON | | |
| Section I. | General | 156–158 | 119 |
| II. | Capabilities, R&S platoon | 159–165 | 122 |
| III. | Reconnaissance by R&S platoon | 166–172 | 124 |
| IV. | Surveillance by R&S platoon | 173–180 | 125 |
| CHAPTER 12. | MORTAR SECTION AND SQUAD | 181–188 | 128 |
| PART THREE. | RECONNAISSANCE TROOP | | |
| CHAPTER 13. | GENERAL | | |
| Section I. | General | 189–191 | 132 |
| II. | Organization, reconnaissance troop | 192–195 | 132 |
| III. | Employment, reconnaissance troop | 196–198 | 136 |
| IV. | Organization for combat, reconnaissance troop | 199–204 | 138 |
| CHAPTER 14. | OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP | 205–219 | 144 |
| 15. | DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP | 220–228 | 151 |
| 16. | RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP | | |
| Section I. | Delaying action, reconnaissance troop | 229–238 | 163 |
| II. | Withdrawal from action, reconnaissance troop | 239–242 | 169 |
| III. | Retirement, reconnaissance troop | 243, 244 | 175 |
| CHAPTER 17. | RECONNAISSANCE OPERATIONS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP | 245–251 | 176 |
| 18. | SECURITY OPERATIONS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP | 252–269 | 187 |
| PART FOUR. | ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON | | |
| CHAPTER 19. | GENERAL | | |
| Section I. | General | 270–274 | 207 |
| II. | Employment, armored cavalry squadron | 275–277 | 208 |
| III. | Organization for combat, armored cavalry squadron | 278–281 | 211 |
| IV. | Organization and employment, headquarters and headquarters troop, armored cavalry squadron | 282–288 | 213 |
| CHAPTER 20. | OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON | | |
| Section I. | General | 289, 290 | 218 |
| II. | Armored cavalry squadron in attack | 291–296 | 218 |
| III. | Preparation for squadron attack | 297–302 | 222 |
| IV. | Conduct of squadron attack | 303–308 | 223 |
| V. | Squadron in exploitation and pursuit | 309–311 | 226 |
| CHAPTER 21. | DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON | | |
| Section I. | General | 312–317 | 228 |
| II. | Organization of defense, armored cavalry squadron | 318–322 | 230 |
| III. | Mobile defense, armored cavalry squadron | 323–326 | 232 |
| IV. | Position defense, armored cavalry squadron | 327–330 | 233 |
| V. | Perimeter defense, armored cavalry squadron | 331, 332 | 235 |

| | | Paragraphs | Page |
|---|---|---|---|
| CHAPTER 22. | RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON | | |
| Section I. | General | 333–335 | 237 |
| II. | Delaying action, armored cavalry squadron | 336–348 | 238 |
| III. | Withdrawal from action, armored cavalry squadron | 349–351 | 243 |
| IV. | Retirement, armored cavalry squadron | 352 | 244 |
| CHAPTER 23. | RECONNAISSANCE OPERATIONS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON | | |
| Section I. | General | 353–355 | 245 |
| II. | Reconnaissance of routes, zones, and areas, armored cavalry squadron | 356–359 | 248 |
| III. | Conduct of squadron reconnaissance missions | 360–364 | 251 |
| CHAPTER 24. | SECURITY OPERATIONS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON | | |
| Section I. | General | 365–368 | 254 |
| II. | Squadron advance guard operations | 369, 370 | 255 |
| III. | Squadron flank guard operations | 371–373 | 256 |
| IV. | Squadron rear guard operations | 374, 375 | 258 |
| V. | Squadron covering force operations | 376, 377 | 258 |
| VI. | Squadron screening force operations | 378, 379 | 260 |
| VII. | Squadron rear area security operations | 380–382 | 261 |
| APPENDIX | REFERENCES | | 263 |
| INDEX | | | 264 |

# PART ONE

# GENERAL

# CHAPTER 1

# GENERAL

## 1. Purpose

*a.* This manual covers the specific organization, tactics, techniques, and procedures appropriate to all armored cavalry units of the armored and infantry divisions.

*b.* This manual is to be used in conjunction with FM 17–1, *Armor Operations, Small Units.* General information contained in FM 17–1 is repeated in this manual only where necessary to insure clarity and understanding with respect to points of interest peculiar to armored cavalry units.

*c.* While the employment of other types of units—such as infantry, artillery, engineers, and Army aviation—is mentioned in this manual, FM 20–100 and field manuals of the 5-, 6-, and 7-series should be consulted for the basic and detailed tactics and techniques of these units. This also applies in the fields of logistics and communication. In addition to FM 17–1, manuals which supplement this manual are as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| FM 17–100 | Armored Division. |
| FM 7-100 | Infantry Division. |
| FM 17-70 | Signal Communication in the Armored Division. |
| FM 17–50 | Armor Logistics. |
| FM 17–33 | Tank Units—Platoon, Company, and Battalion. |
| FM 17–20 | Armored Infantry Units—Platoon, Company, and Battalion. |

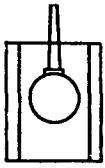
*d.* Unless otherwise specified, the material presented herein is applicable without modification to both atomic and nonatomic warfare.

*e.* Figure 1 gives the symbols most frequently used in illustrations throughout this manual.

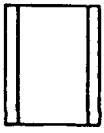
## 2. Scope

This manual consists of four parts. Part one covers general characteristics common to all armored cavalry units of battalion size and smaller, organization of armored cavalry units, factors affecting employ-

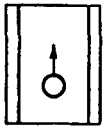
LEGEND



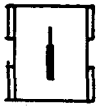
LIGHT-GUN TANK



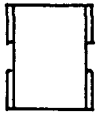
ARMORED PERSONNEL CARRIER



ARMORED PERSONNEL CARRIER USED BY THE SUPPORT SQUADS AND THE MORTAR SECTION



¼-TON TRUCK WITH MOUNTED MACHINE GUN



¼-TON TRUCK WITHOUT MOUNTED MACHINE GUN

NOTE: 1. For other military symbols see FM 21-30.

2. Illustrations of vehicles and equipment other than photographs used throughout this training text are artist's drawings and are not intended to depict future design.

*Figure 1. Symbols used in manual.*

ment, combat support, communication, and personnel and logistical considerations. Part two covers the employment of platoons and sections organic to armored cavalry units. Part three covers the employment of the reconnaissance troop. Part four covers the employment of the armored cavalry squadron. Throughout this manual, the term *armored cavalry units* is used to apply both to the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division and the infantry division cavalry squadron, as well as to their elements. Also, unless otherwise specified, the term *armored cavalry squadron* applies to both the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division and the infantry division cavalry squadron.

## 3. Role of Armored Cavalry Units

Armored cavalry units in general are organized, equipped, and trained to perform three basic combat roles: reconnaissance, security, and economy-of-force missions. The proper utilization of armored cavalry units in any of these basic roles permits the higher commander to concentrate the bulk of his force on more decisive objectives or operations in the accomplishment of his mission.

## 4. Missions of Armored Cavalry Units

Armored cavalry units are capable of executing the following type missions:

*a.* Exercise surveillance over wide fronts and to extended depths.

*b.* Collect and report information of an intelligence nature, to include assistance in acquisition of atomic targets and atomic damage assessment.

*c.* Provide flank protection for a moving or stationary unit.

*d.* Provide security between elements of the parent unit and/or between the parent unit and adjacent units.

*e.* When suitably reinforced, act as a covering force in offensive, defensive, or retrograde operations.

*f.* Screen the concentration of the parent unit and/or subordinate elements.

*g.* Secure rear areas, lines of communication, and installations from attack by enemy airborne or guerilla forces.

*h.* Maintain combat liaison with units on the flanks or to the front of the parent unit.

*i.* Provide alternate communication for other units in emergencies.

*j.* Conduct limited offensive, defensive, and retrograde operations as an economy-force unit.

## 5. Characteristics of Armored Cavalry Units

The basic characteristics of armor units described in paragraph 12, FM 17–1, are generally applicable to armored cavalry units.

*a. Armor-Protected Firepower.* Armored cavalry units contain armor-protected machine guns, mortars, and tank guns. However, the scout elements are unprotected by armor.

*b. Mobility.* The wheeled vehicles and light tracked vehicles give armored cavalry units the capability of achieving more speed and mobility on roads and trails than other armor units. The cross-country mobility of the wheeled vehicles in the scout units is less than that of the tracked vehicles.

*c. Shock Action.* Shock action is provided by the light-gun tanks. In order to maximize this shock action, tanks should be employed in mass.

*d. Extensive and Flexible Communication.* Armored cavalry units have more extensive communication than other armor units. Voice radio communication between squadron and troop is augmented by CW radio, which provides a capability for handling a greater volume of traffic and for establishing and maintaining communication over greater distances.

*e. Flexibility.* The cross-country mobility, extensive and flexible communication, and flexibility of organization of armored cavalry units permit them to operate over wide areas and at extended distances with the capability of rapidly changing direction.

# CHAPTER 2

# ORGANIZATION

## Section I. GENERAL

### 6. General

The fundamental concept of organization of armored cavalry units is to provide the commander with the capability of employing his organic units intact without attachments, or organizing combined-arms forces of tanks, armored infantry, and scouts, all supported by organic indirect fires. Throughout this manual, the terms *integrated platoon* and *integrated troop* will be used. An integrated platoon is one that is organized by TOE to provide this combining of forces at platoon level: i.e., tank section, rifle squad, scout section, and support squad, all operating under the platoon headquarters. An integrated troop is one that is organized by TOE to provide this combining of forces at troop level: i.e., tank platoon, armored rifle platoon, mortar section, and scout platoon, all operating under the troop headquarters.

## Section II. ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 7. General

The armored cavalry squadron of the armored division consists of a headquarters and headquarters troop and four integrated reconnaissance troops (fig. 2).

### 8. Reconnaissance Troop, Armored Cavalry Squadron

The reconnaissance troop of the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division is composed of a troop headquarters, a 4.2-inch mortar section, two light-gun tank platoons, an armored rifle platoon, and a scout platoon (fig. 3).

### 9. Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, Armored Cavalry Squadron

Headquarters and headquarters troop consists of a squadron headquarters and a squadron headquarters troop. The squadron headquarters contains the squadron commander and his staff. The headquarters troop contains a troop headquarters, squadron headquarters section, headquarters tank section, squadron communication platoon, squadron main-

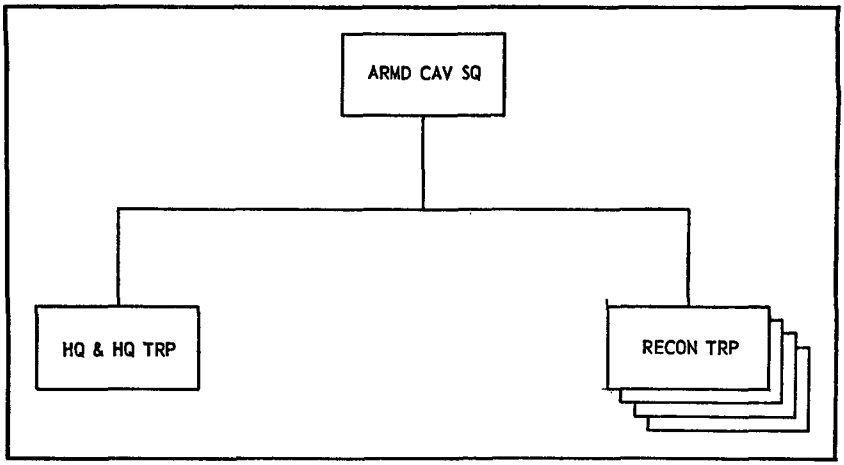



*Figure 2. Organization, armored cavalry squadron, armored division.*

tenance platoon, squadron personnel section, squadron support platoon, squadron medical section, and squadron reconnaissance and surveillance platoon (fig. 4).

## 10. Squadron Headquarters

The squadron headquarters contains the necessary personnel to command and control the squadron. These are the squadron commander, executive officer, adjutant (S1), intelligence officer (S2), operations officer (S3), logistics officer (S4), communication officer, S3 air, maintenance officer, surgeon, and sergeant major. For duties and responsibilities of the squadron commander and his staff, see paragraphs 68–89, FM 17–1.

## 11. Headquarters Troop Headquarters

The troop headquarters of headquarters troop is organized to provide administrative, supply, maintenance, and mess facilities for the troop and for squadron headquarters personnel.

*a. Troop Headquarters Section.* The troop headquarters section includes the troop commander, the first sergeant, and a driver. The troop commander may be designated as squadron headquarters commandant. He may be required to assume temporarily the duties of any member of the staff.

*b. Administrative, Mess, and Supply Section.* The troop administrative, mess, and supply section clothes, equips, and feeds personnel of the troop and of squadron headquarters, and prepares administrative data for the troop. It includes the supply sergeant, the mess steward, cooks, a troop clerk, and a driver. This section is transported in cargo trucks and trailers.

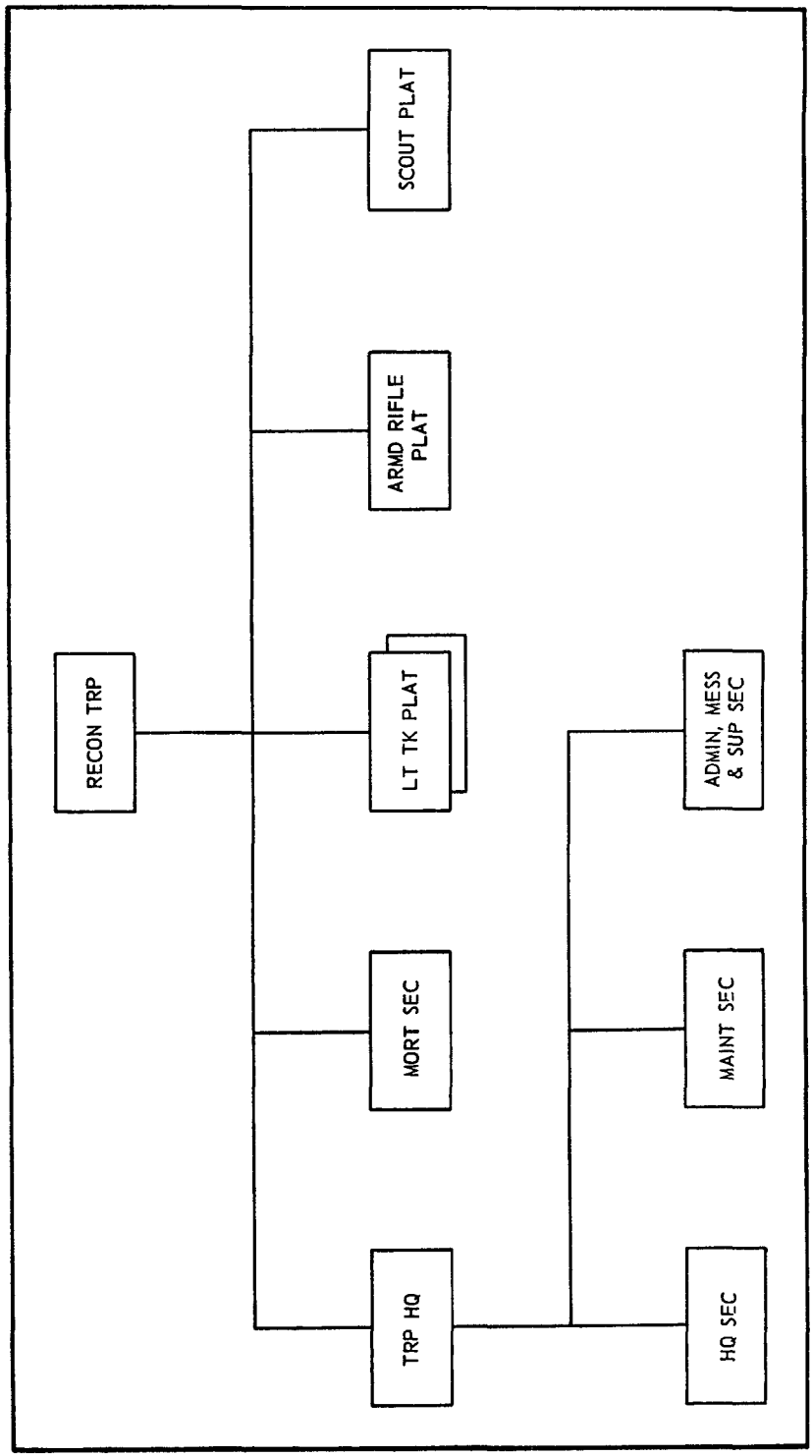



*Figure 3. Organization, reconnaissance troop, armored cavalry squadron, armored division.*

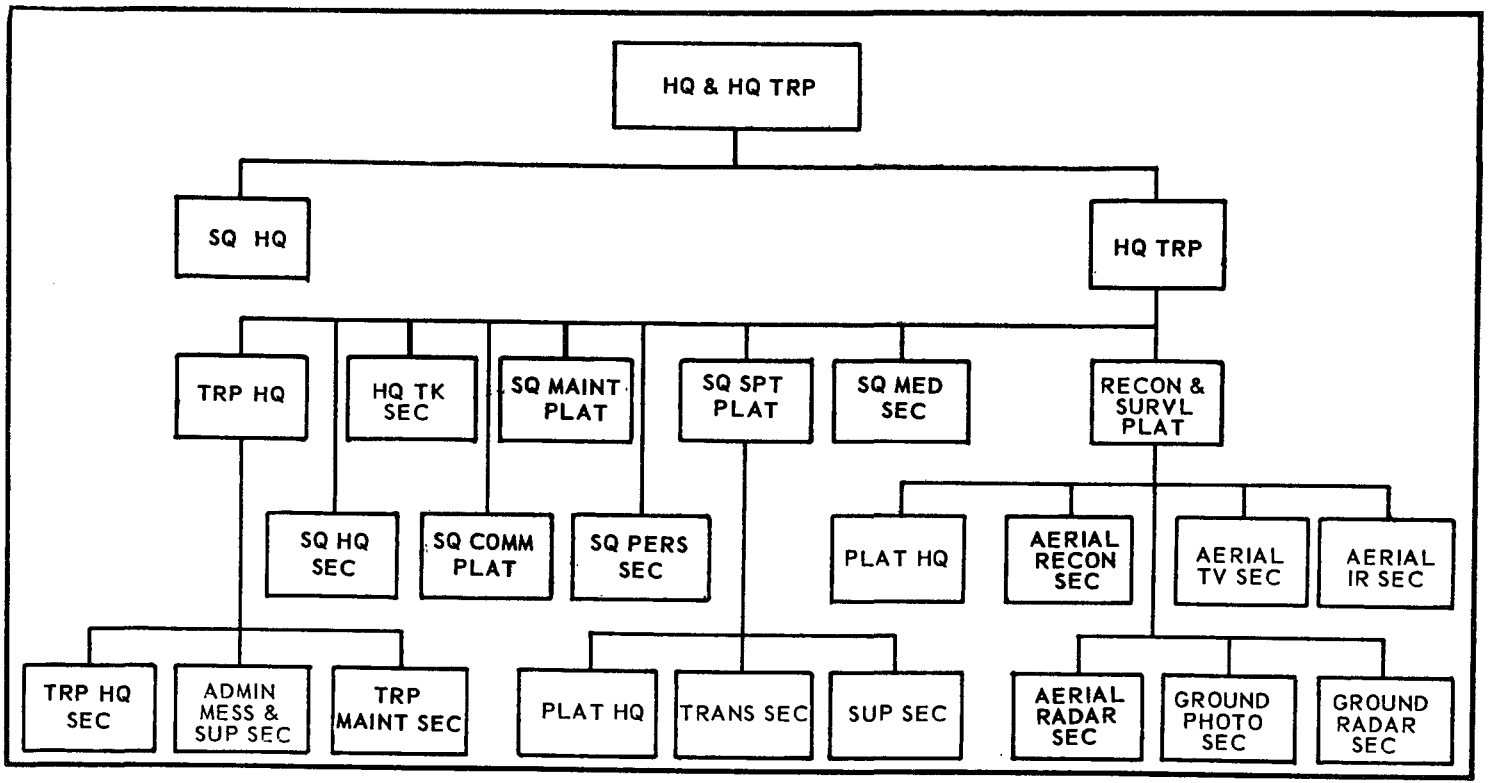



*Figure 4. Organization, headquarters and headquarters troop, armored cavalry squadron, armored division, and infantry division cavalry squadron.*

*c. Maintenance Section.* The troop maintenance section is commanded by a warrant officer, who is the troop maintenance officer. It includes the maintenance sergeant and necessary mechanicsl. This section has the function of keeping all headquarters troop vehicles, armament, and communication equipment operating at maximum efficiency.

## 12. Squadron Headquarters Section

The squadron headquarters section provides the bulk of the enlisted personnel for the staff sections and part of the vehicles and equipment needed for control of the squadron. This section also contains the liaison officers (see par. 88, FM 17–1, for duties). Enlisted personnel include an intelligence sergeant and assistant, an operations sergeant and assistant, a mail clerk, a clerk typist, and drivers for section vehicles. Transportation includes armored personnel carriers and necessary general-purpose vehicles.

## 13. Headquarters Tank Section

The headquarters tank section includes personnel for the operation of the light-gun tanks used by the squadron commander, his staff, the artillery liaison officer, and the forward air controller when one is present.

## 14. Squadron Communication Platoon

The squadron communication platoon, commanded by the squadron communication officer, contains sufficient specialist personnel, equipment, and organic transport to establish and maintain the communication system. The communication chief supervises the assignment and activities of the platoon's radioteletype and CW radio operators and the message-handling, wire, and maintenance personnel. The platoon is transported in armored personnel carriers and light trucks.

## 15. Squadron Maintenance Platoon

The squadron maintenance platoon is organized and equipped to perform second-echelon maintenance, recovery and evacuation of vehicles, and resupply of parts for weapons and vehicles of the squadron. The platoon is commanded by the squadron maintenance officer, who is assisted by a warrant officer. He has radio communication with the squadron S4 and unit maintenance section, using the squadron logistical net. Details of operation of the maintenance platoon are contained in FM 17–50.

## 16. Squadron Personnel Section

The squadron personnel section contains a warrant officer and the necessary enlisted personnel to prepare and maintain the personnel records, rosters, correspondence, and reports of the squadron. The per-

sonnel section relieves organic and attached elements of as much paper work as possible. During combat operations, the section normally joins the division administrative center, located at the division headquarters rear echelon.

## 17. Squadron Support Platoon

*a. General.* The support platoon is organized into a platoon headquarters and two sections: transportation section and supply section. The platoon has the personnel, vehicles, and equipment to furnish the transportation and supply support required by the squadron to sustain itself for limited periods of combat.

*b. Platoon Headquarters.* Platoon headquarters consists of a platoon leader and a driver. The platoon leader controls the squadron field trains. He has radio communication with the transportation section leader and the squadron S4, using the squadron logistical net or, in emergencies, the squadron command net.

*c. Transportation Section.* The transportation section has the personnel and trucks necessary to transport all types of supplies from division supply points to troops of the squadron. The transportation section commander has radio communication with the support platoon leader and the squadron S4, using the squadron logistical net (see par. 22*c*). During operations the bulk of the transportation section will be a part of the squadron trains.

*d. Supply Section.* The supply section operates under the control of a warrant officer. The section is charged with the responsibility of receiving and consolidating supply requests from the troops, and with the preparation of requisitions. The section is further responsible for the procurement, storage, and issuance of supplies within the squadron, and supervision of property and supply records for all elements of the squadron.

## 18. Squadron Medical Section

*a.* The medical section, an integral part of headquarters troop, provides unit medical service and also medical support for other units within the squadron area. It furnishes emergency medical treatment, establishes and operates a squadron aid station, and evacuates casualties to the squadron aid station for sorting and temporary care. It conducts technical instruction in first aid, field sanitation, and related subjects for units of the squadron, and conducts medical and sanitary inspections. The squadron medical section may be augmented, when necessary, by personnel, vehicles, and equipment of the division medical battalion.

*b.* The normal allocation of medical support to each reconnaissance troop is as follows:

(1) One medical aid-evacuation team consisting of one aid man and one ¼-ton ambulance with driver.

(2) One aid man for each scout and armored rifle platoon.

## 19. Squadron Reconnaissance and Surveillance Platoon

*a.* The squadron reconnaissance and surveillance platoon consists of a platoon headquarters, aerial reconnaissance section, aerial television section, aerial infrared section, aerial radar section, ground photographic section, and ground radar section. The division aviation company furnishes three observation and three utility aircraft to the platoon. The platoon normally operates under squadron control, but may be placed in support of a troop or some other element of the division when required.

*b.* For details of organization and employment of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon, see paragraphs 156–180.

# Section III. INFANTRY DIVISION CAVALRY SQUADRON

## 20. General

The infantry division cavalry squadron consists of a headquarters and headquarters troop and three reconnaissance troops (fig. 5).

## 21. Reconnaissance Troop, Infantry Division Cavalry Squadron

The reconnaissance troop of the infantry division cavalry squadron is composed of a headquarters section and three integrated reconnaissance platoons (fig. 6).

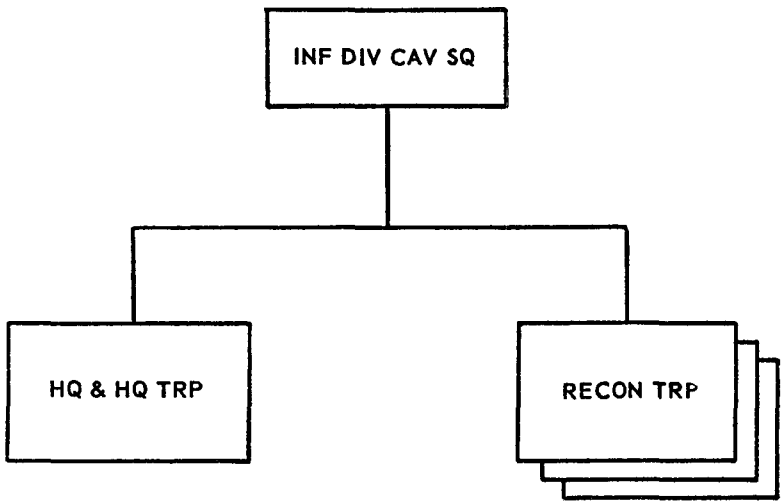



*Figure 5. Organization, infantry division cavalry squadron.*

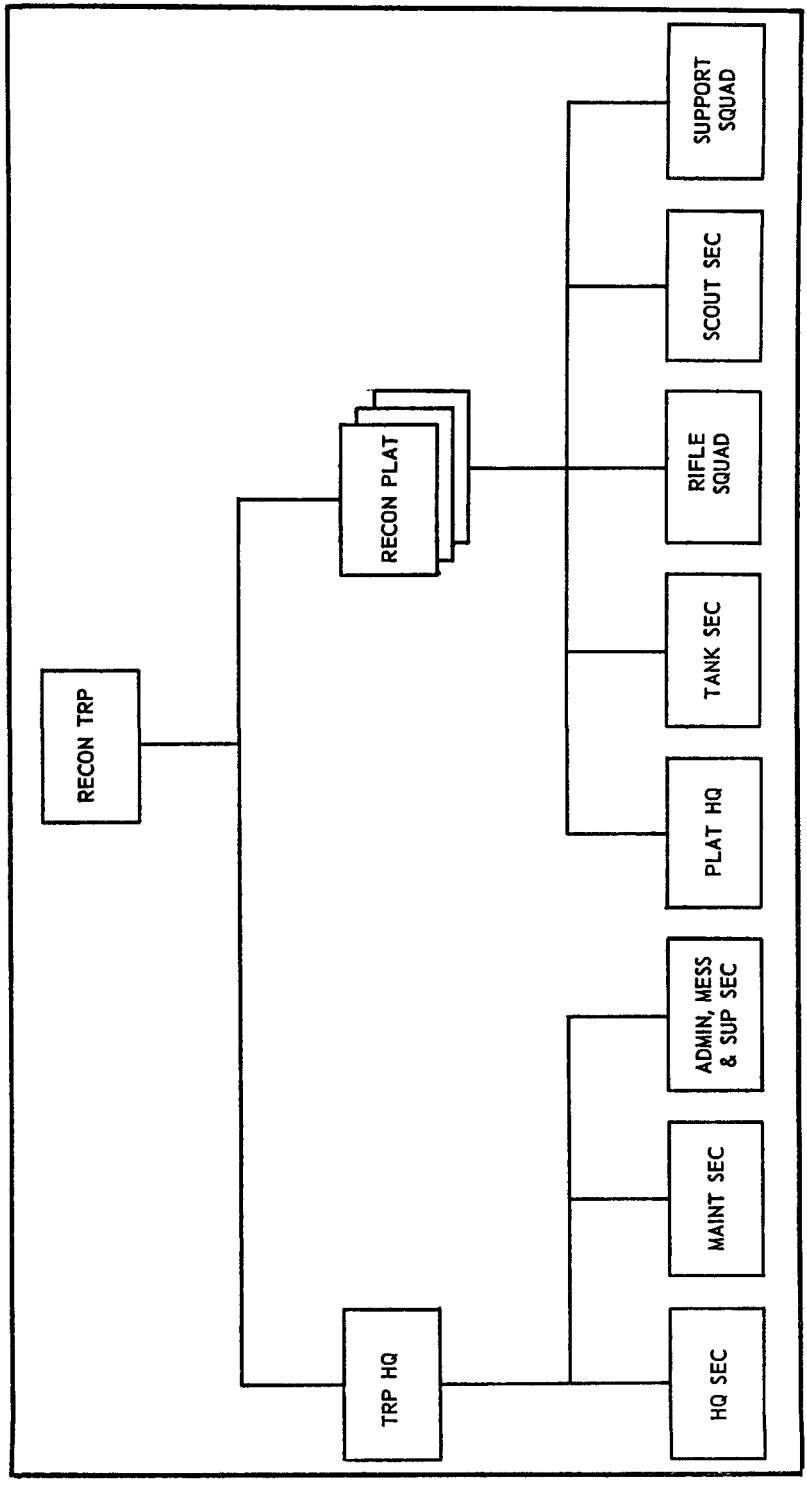



*Figure 6. Organization, reconnaissance troop, infantry division cavalry squadron.*

## 22. Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, Infantry Division Cavalry Squadron

Except for certain differences in the total strength and amount of equipment, the functions and organization of headquarters and headquarters troop, infantry division cavalry squadron, are the same as for the unit in the armored division (pars. 9–19).

*a.* Since the infantry division cavalry squadron has only three reconnaissance troops, the majority of the components of its headquarters and headquarters troop have fewer personnel and vehicles and less equipment than those of the unit in the armored division.

*b.* The headquarters tank section of the infantry division cavalry squadron has two light-gun tanks instead of four as found in the armored cavalry squadron.

*c.* No radio is provided in the transportation section.

*d.* The normal allocation of medical support from the squadron medical section to each reconnaissance troop is as follows:

(1) One ¼-ton ambulance with driver.

(2) One aid man for each reconnaissance platoon.

# CHAPTER 3

# FACTORS AFFECTING EMPLOYMENT

## 23. General

The successful employment of armored cavalry units is dependent upon the commanders' careful and continuous consideration of certain influencing factors. These factors are the mission, enemy, terrain and weather, and troops available (sometimes referred to as the factors of METT) (pars. 40–44, FM 17–1).

## 24. Mission

The armored cavalry unit may be assigned one or more of a wide variety of missions (par. 4). Once assigned by higher headquarters, the mission becomes the paramount factor, all other factors being considered with respect to their effect on the accomplishment of this mission. The mission assigned determines the task organization, combat support, formation, and scheme of maneuver that will be required.

## 25. Enemy

As one of the higher commander's primary information-collecting agencies, an armored cavalry unit directs a large part of its efforts toward the collection of information of the enemy. Similarly, security missions assigned to armored cavalry units are directly related to the enemy—his location, strength, composition, and disposition. The employment of an armored cavalry unit in its role as an economy force must include the considerations that such units are not organized or equipped to engage and defeat enemy heavy armor units, that all personnel do not possess armor protection, and that units thus engaged require additional combat support from nonorganic agencies.

## 26. Terrain and Weather

Due to the nature of their training and the characteristics of much of their equipment, armored cavalry units are somewhat less restricted than most armor units by extremes of terrain and weather. This characteristic frequently results in the assignment of a mission, particularly as an economy force, which requires operations in an area considered highly restrictive to armor. A fundamental requisite for successful armored cavalry operations is the continuous application of terrain evaluation and appreciation.

## 27. Troops Available

The armored cavalry squadron or reconnaissance troop commander has at his disposal a closely integrated team of combined arms capable of conducting virtually any type combat action. Though limited to a degree by the absence of armor protection for certain elements, and by a somewhat reduced antitank capability, armored cavalry, through maximum use of its mobility and flexibility, can frequently successfully fulfill missions out of proportion to its apparent capability.

# CHAPTER 4

# COMBAT SUPPORT

## 28. General

Armored cavalry units may, depending upon their assigned mission and the agencies available, be supported by artillery, engineers, tactical air, Army aviation, and tactical atomic weapons (pars. 57–67, FM 17–1).

## 29. Artillery Support

*a.* Armored cavalry units, when operating within range of artillery supporting other elements of the division, normally are provided supporting fires by that artillery. Division artillery provides artillery forward observers to armored cavalry units for the purpose of requesting and adjusting artillery fires. In addition to normal fires artillery may be used to deliver chemical (including smoke) and atomic shells and to furnish battlefield illumination.

*b.* Frequently, missions assigned to armored cavalry units make it necessary for them to operate beyond the effective range of available direct-support artillery. Under such circumstances, artillery units normally are attached to the armored cavalry units. In addition, the armored cavalry unit may be given a priority for tactical air support during such operations.

## 30. Engineer Support

*a.* The majority of reconnaissance and security missions assigned to armored cavalry units are performed without direct assistance of engineers. The training of armored cavalry units should include sufficient instruction in pioneer work and demolitions to permit them to perform minor engineer functions without reliance on engineer support.

*b.* Engineer support is normally provided to armored cavalry units that are engaged in economy-force missions in offensive, defensive, or retrograde operations or in major missions, such as a covering force. Due to the nature of armored cavalry operations and the extended distances involved, engineer forces operating with armored cavalry normally are attached.

## 31. Tactical Air Support

*a.* Armored cavalry units engaged in a deep or extended reconnaissance or security mission normally have tactical air support available. Such an operation may frequently be a high-priority effort to locate tactical atomic targets and as such may be given a priority on the use of the available tactical air. An Air Force forward air controller working with the armored cavalry squadron advises the squadron commander on matters pertaining to tactical air. In addition, the forward air controller controls the strikes that are flown in support of the squadron. Close coordination must be maintained between the forward air controller, the artillery liaison officer, and organic fire-support agencies to insure a rapid exchange of information and an effective integration of supporting fires. The forward air controller remains with the command post or command group until a target is designated and a strike requested; he then moves to a position from which he can best observe the target and direct the aircraft.

*b.* Targets that are beyond the range or capability of supporting weapons are designated as air targets. Suitable targets for supporting aircraft include enemy armor, enemy columns, targets out of range of artillery, enemy strongpoints, and enemy communication centers. Tactical air may also perform visual, photographic, weather, or electronic reconnaissance missions; illuminate the battlefield; provide aerial supply or resupply; perform evacuation missions; and make 24-hour-a-day all-weather light bombardment attacks.

*c.* A bomb line is established by higher headquarters for the purpose of giving the Air Force clearance to engage all targets beyond this line. The bomb line changes with the situation, and the squadron commander must know the location of the bomb line at all times; he recommends changes in the location of the bomb line to fit his squadron situation.

## 32. Army Aviation Support

*a.* Army aviation, both fixed and rotary wing, usually is available to facilitate the operations of an armored cavalry squadron. These Army aviation elements are provided by higher headquarters and may be either attached or in direct support. The use of Army aviation is integrated into the tactical operations of each echelon, from platoon to squadron.

*b.* Six airplanes, three utility and three observation, are provided to support the operations of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon.

*c.* Supporting aircraft from the division aviation company are accompanied by sufficient ground personnel to insure maintenance, resupply, and the establishment of an airstrip near the squadron command post.

*d.* Attached or supporting Army aviation may be used to—

(1) Extend the range of reconnaissance.

(2) Verify information.
(3) Support the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon.
(4) Provide security through reconnaissance.
(5) Assist in control and communication of the squadron.
(6) Provide flights for command reconnaissance and liaison.
(7) Provide courier and messenger service.
(8) Transport rifle and scout elements to remote or otherwise inaccessible areas.
(9) Provide resupply and evacuation of personnel casualties.

## 33. Atomic Weapons Support

The allocation of atomic weapons and the authority to employ them normally is retained at a headquarters higher than squadron; however, under certain tactical conditions, such as when the armored cavalry squadron is serving as the covering force for the division, tactical atomic weapons may be employed solely on the information provided by and at the request of the armored cavalry squadron.

# CHAPTER 5

# COMMUNICATION AND LIAISON

## 34. General

Within armored cavalry units, radio is the primary means of communication. Radio provides the commander and his subordinates with the best means of communication for command, control of fire support, and contact with higher headquarters. The communication systems within the squadrons of the armored and infantry divisions are essentially the same.

## 35. Command Post Radio Communication

The squadron headquarters operations, intelligence, air request, and logistical armored personnel carriers normally are located in the squadron command post area. These vehicles are equipped with medium-power AM and FM radio facilities to assist the squadron staff sections in performing their duties.

*a.* To assist the operations section in planning, coordinating, and recording squadron combat operations, the radio facilities in the operations and intelligence armored personnel carriers are operated in the following radio nets:

(1) *Squadron command net FM.* The FM radio facility in the operations armored personnel carrier is the net control station of the squadron command net FM. This net links the squadron commander, fire-support representatives, the staff, and the troops. The squadron commander uses this net to command and control the troops and attached units.

(2) *Squadron command net AM.* The AM radio facility in the operations armored personnel carrier is the net control station for the squadron command net AM. This net provides a long-range communication link between the command post and the troops. It is particularly well suited for transmitting detailed messages.

(3) *Division intelligence net RTT.* The radioteletype facility in the intelligence armored personnel carrier is operated in the division intelligence net RTT. This net is used by the intelligence officer for reporting and receiving intelligence information.

(4) *Division command net FM.* The FM radio facility in the operations armored personnel carrier also operates in the division command net FM. This net provides an FM communication link between the squadron command post and division.

*b.* To assist in planning and coordinating tactical air support, the operations section is provided an armored personnel carrier containing a medium-power AM set to communicate with the combat command and division fire-support control agencies. This radio is used primarily to transmit air request traffic on the division air request net. The vehicle is also equipped with a UHF air-to-ground radio, a mounted FM radio, and a back-pack FM radio. These two types of radio sets may be operated in conjunction with each other, utilizing retransmission. This facility permits the forward air controller with the squadron to communicate with tactical aircraft by using any FM radio in the squadron. This vehicle also contains an AM receiver to monitor the division warning broadcast net AM.

*c.* The squadron logistics officer is provided an armored personnel carrier which operates in the following nets:

(1) *Division logistical net.* (In the armored division, this is an RTT net; in the infantry division, it is an AM net.) This net gives the squadron S4 a long-range link to the division G4 and technical services. It is used primarily to transmit administrative and logistical traffic.

(2) *Squadron logistical net FM.* The FM radio facility in the logistical armored personnel carrier is the net control station of the squadron logistical net. This net provides the squadron S4 with voice communication to the support platoon leader. The troops, and attached or supporting units, operate in this net as required to transmit administrative and logistical traffic.

*d.* The communication platoon's armored personnel carrier is equipped with a medium-power AM (voice, CW, and radioteletype) radio for operation in the division command net RTT. This equipment gives the squadron commander a long-range AM link with the division commander. This vehicle also contains FM radio equipment which may be operated in the squadron and division command nets FM.

*e.* Squadron liaison officers are equipped to operate in the command net FM of the unit with which they are performing liaison and within their own squadron command net FM. In addition, the liaison officer who operates at the next higher headquarters is equipped with AM radio equipment, mounted in a ¾-ton truck, for operation in the squadron command net AM.

*f.* Since the control communication facilities for the squadron and the terminating radio facilities to division are located in the command

post area, it is essential that the command post be located for good radio communication.

## 36. Command Group Radio Communication

*a.* The squadron commander and operations officer are equipped with vehicular-mounted, medium-power radio equipment that permits them to operate in the squadron and division command nets FM.

*b.* The artillery liaison officer is also equipped with vehicular-mounted, medium-power FM radio equipment to permit him to operate in the

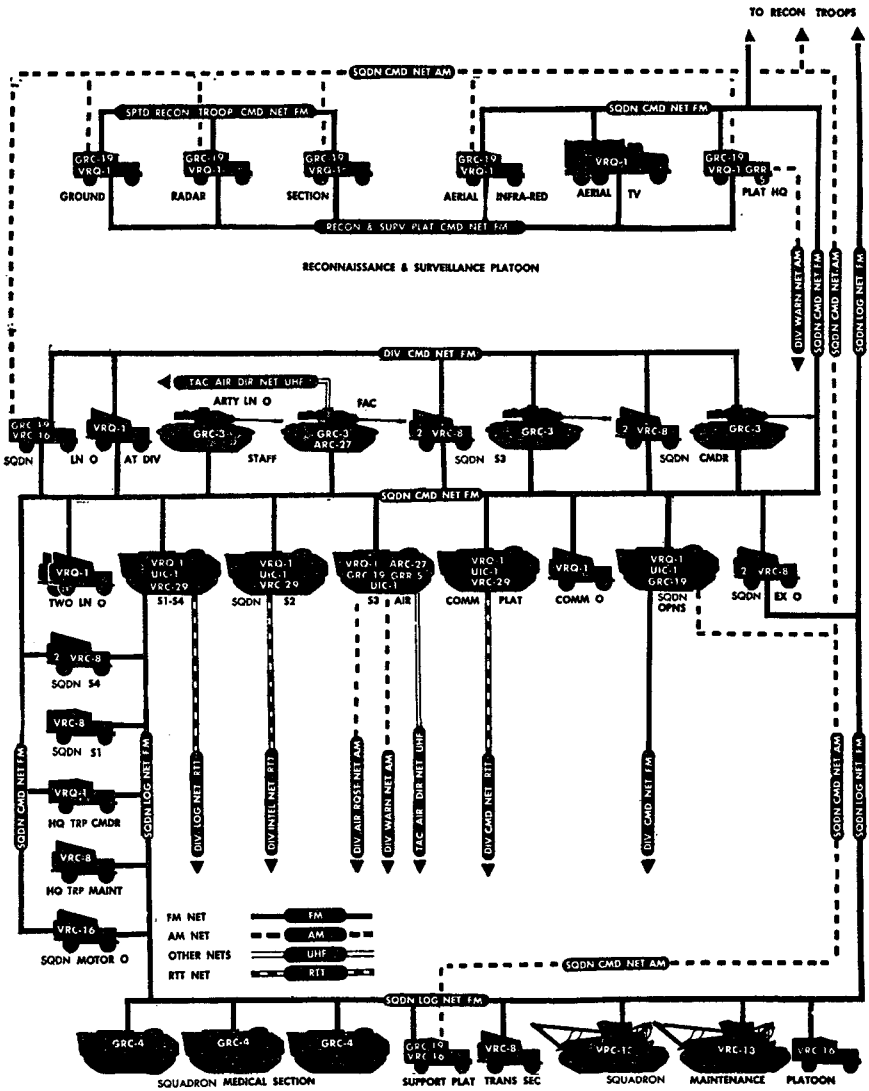



*Figure 7. Type radio net diagram, headquarters and headquarters troop, armored cavalry squadron, armored division.*

squadron command net and a supporting artillery battalion fire direction net. He operates in the squadron command net to coordinate artillery fires with squadron operations. He operates in an artillery fire direction net to determine the availability of artillery fires and coordinate the forward observers.

*c.* The forward air controller is equipped with a vehicular-mounted, medium-power FM radio set for operation in the squadron command

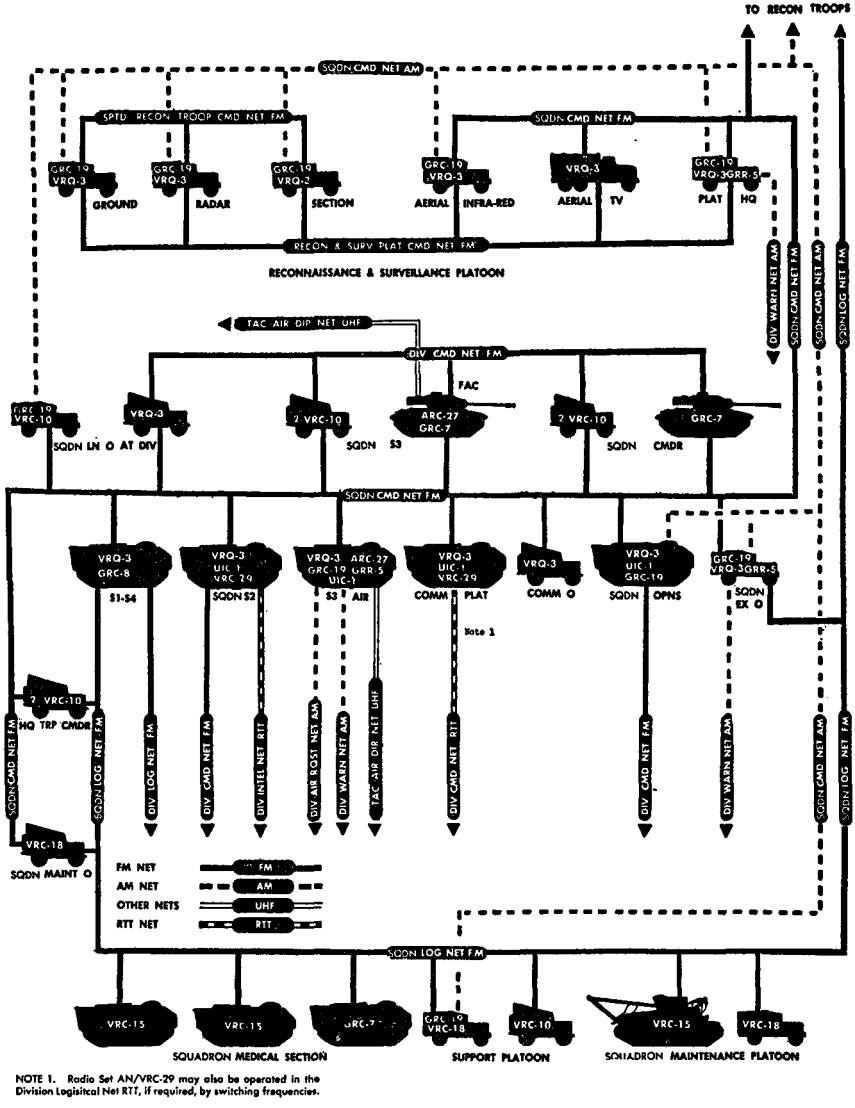



*Figure 8. Type radio net diagram, headquarters and headquarters troop, infantry division cavalry squadron.*

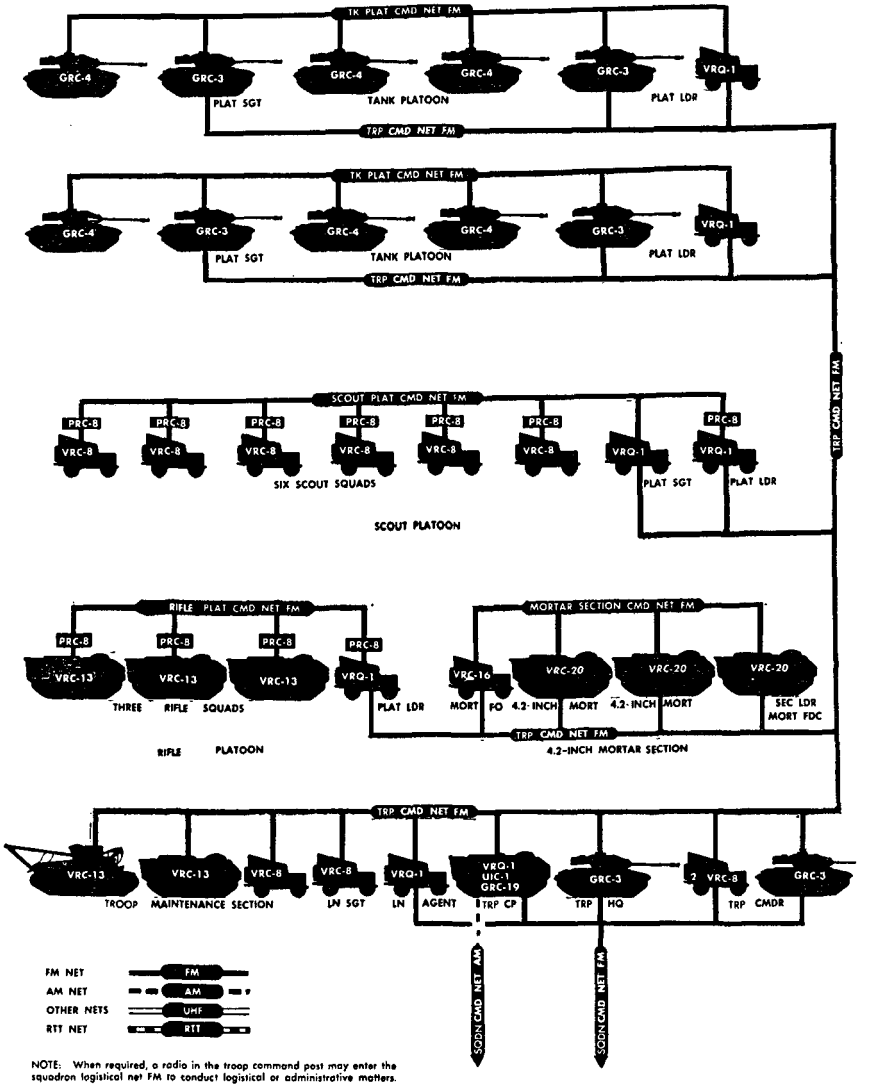



*Figure 9. Type radio net diagram, reconnaissance troop, armored cavalry squadron, armored division.*

net. He is also equipped with a UHF ground-to-air set for communication in the tactical air direction net. The forward air controller coordinates tactical air support with squadron operations on the squadron command net.

## 37. Radio Net Diagrams

Figures 7–10 show typical radio net diagrams for the squadrons and troops of the armored and infantry divisions.

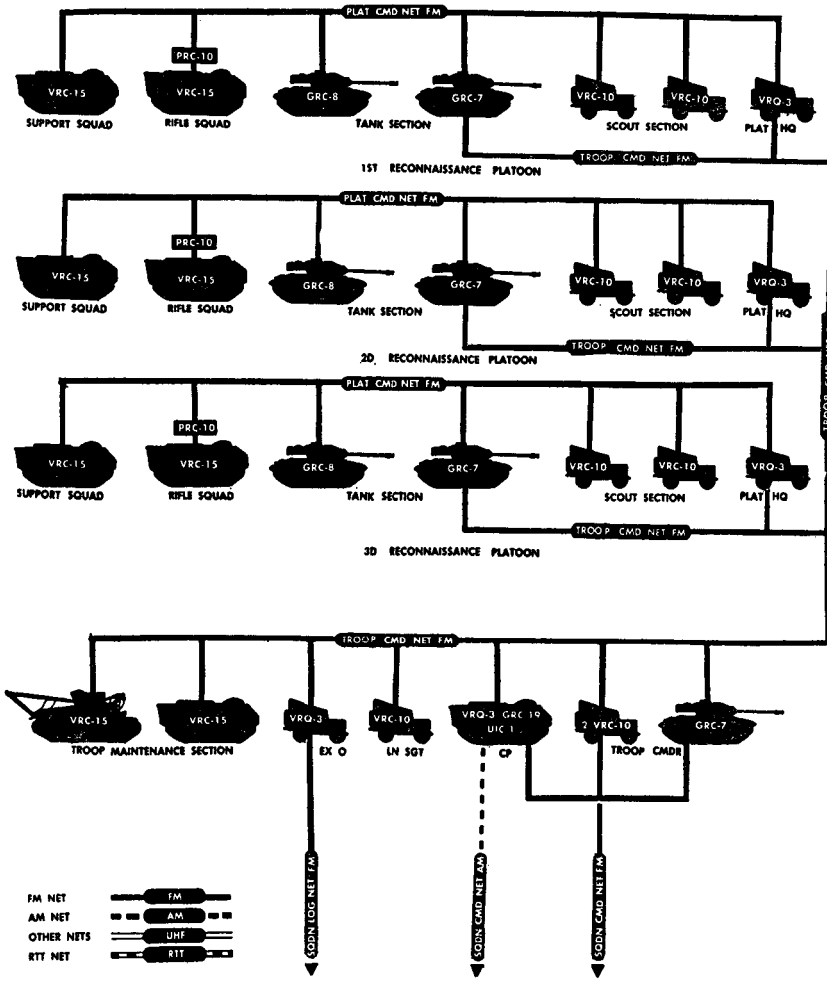



*Figure 10. Type radio net diagram, reconnaissance troop, infantry division cavalry squadron.*

## 38. Wire Communication System

The squadron wire system is installed and operated by the squadron communication platoon. This system is installed whenever time will permit and normally is utilized during periods of radio or listening silence, in defensive or stabilized operations, and in assembly areas. Wire lines are installed to each organic troop and attached unit. Lateral wire lines are installed to adjacent units wherever possible to increase flexibility. Local wire lines are installed to the staff sections as required. Wire lines from supporting units are integrated into the squadron wire system. A wire team from the division signal battalion installs wire lines from the division main command post to the squadron whenever feasible. Figures 11 and 12 show typical wire net diagrams for the squadrons of the armored and infantry divisions.

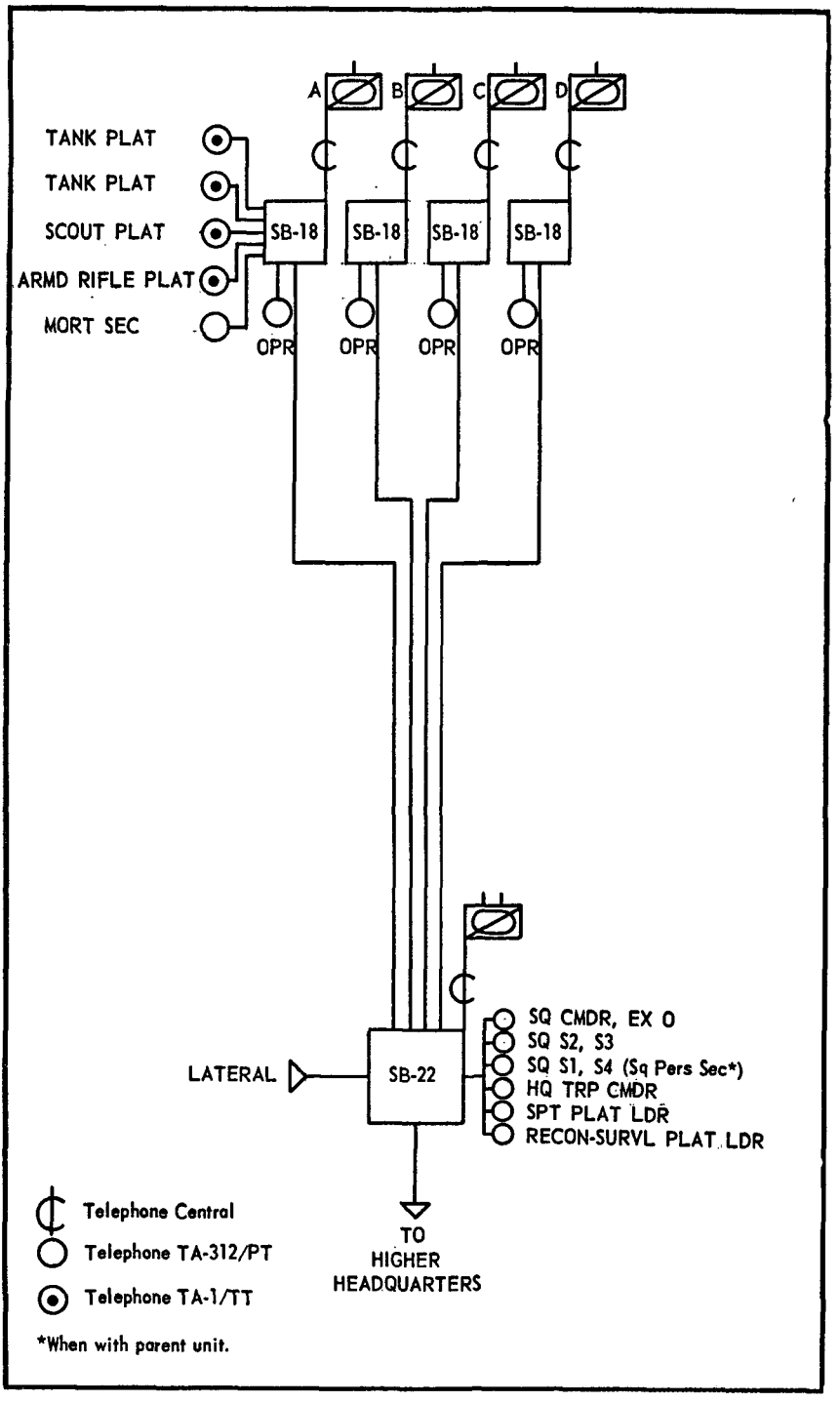



*Figure 11. Type wire net diagram, armored cavalry squadron, armored division.*

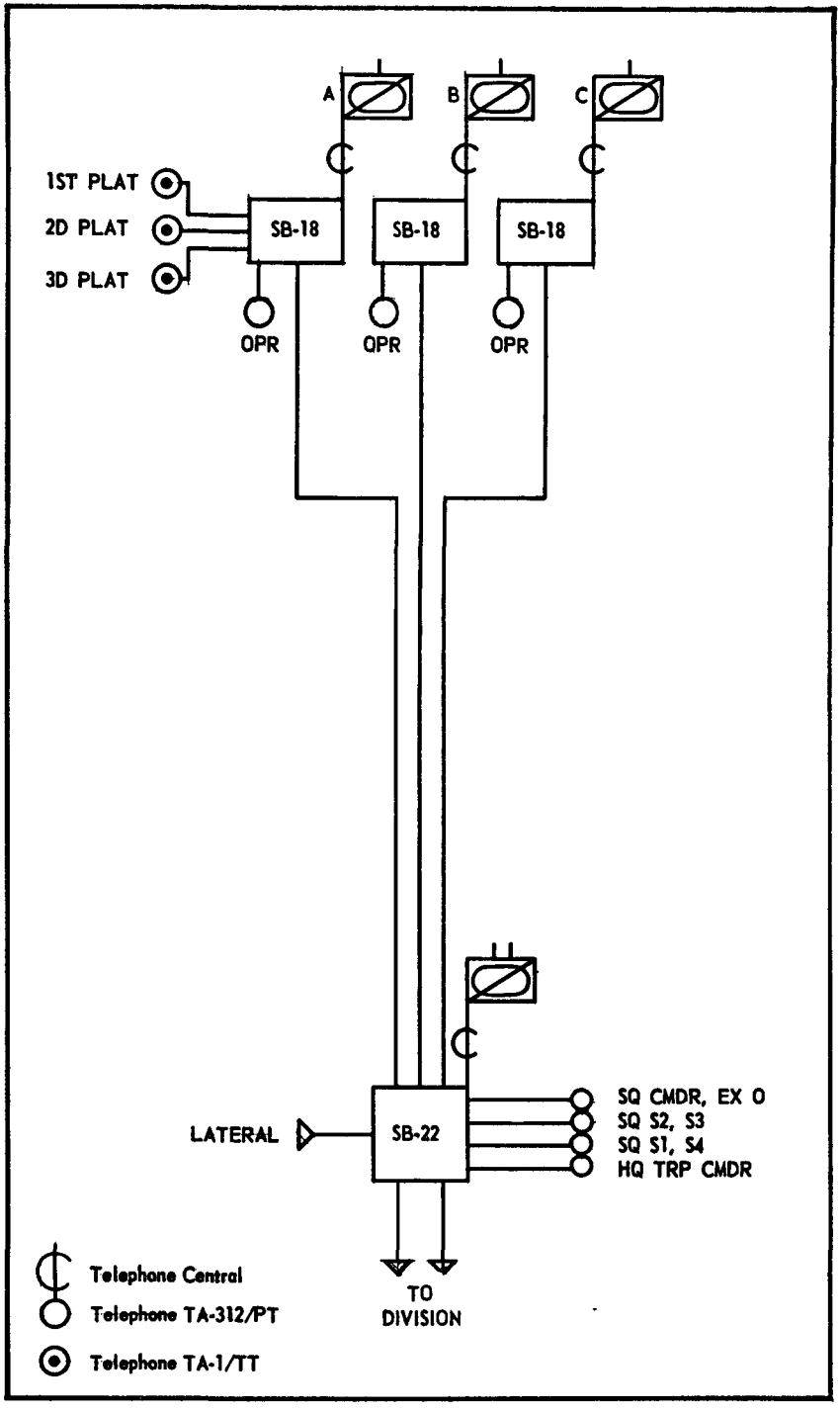



*Figure 12. Type wire net diagram, infantry division cavalry squadron.*

## 39. Employment of Messengers

Mounted messengers are used by the squadron headquarters to provide special and scheduled messenger service to all subordinate elements of the squadron. The mounted messengers normally are controlled by the message center except during marches, when they are decentralized to the squadron staff sections. Mounted messengers are a fast, reliable means of transporting bulky documents over short distances. Division headquarters normally operates special and scheduled messenger service to the squadron.

## 40. Supplementary Communication Means

Sound and visual communication are used to the maximum. Identification panels are used to identify vehicles and ground positions to friendly aircraft. Prearranged meanings are assigned in the SOI extract to pyrotechnic, light, flag, and sound signals. Generally, these are used to direct movement of small elements and for identification. Visual signals should, wherever possible, be screened from enemy observation to keep from alerting the enemy to impending action. Sound signals are used chiefly to spread an alarm, attract attention, and transmit short messages of prearranged meaning.

# PART TWO

# PLATOON AND SECTION

# CHAPTER 6

# GENERAL

## Section I. GENERAL

### 41. Purpose and Scope

Part two of this manual is a discussion of tactics and techniques employed by various platoons, sections, and squads of armored cavalry units and by those armored cavalry type units (platoon and section) which are organic to other armor and infantry units. Each type of platoon is covered by a separate chapter; chapter 12 covers the mortar section and squad.

### 42. Types of Platoons and Sections

Armored cavalry units have several types of organic combat platoons and sections. Five general types of armored cavalry platoons and two separate types of sections are found in unit tables of organization:

*a.* The integrated reconnaissance platoon.

*b.* The light-gun tank platoon.

*c.* The armored rifle platoon.

*d.* The scout platoon.

*e.* The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon.

*f.* The scout section.

*g.* The mortar section.

### 43. Employment of Armored Cavalry Units

*a.* The accomplishment of their three basic combat roles—reconnaissance, security, and economy-of-force missions—frequently requires that armored cavalry units engage in offensive, defensive, or retrograde actions. Armored cavalry units must be capable of participating in each of these types of actions as part of a larger force or independently, frequently at extended distances from other units.

*b.* Regardless of the level at which the integration of combined arms occurs, either at platoon level (as with the armored cavalry units organic

to the infantry division) or at troop level (as with armored cavalry units of the armored division), the basic techniques of employment are generally the same. The tank, armored rifle, scout, and mortar elements must be capable of being employed alone or as part of a combined-arms team.

## Section II. ORGANIZATION AND CAPABILITIES, PLATOONS AND SECTIONS

### 44. Organization of Integrated Reconnaissance Platoon

The integrated reconnaissance platoon consists of a platoon headquarters, a scout section, a tank section, a rifle squad, and a support squad (fig. 13). This platoon is organic to the following units:

*a.* The reconnaissance troop of the infantry division cavalry squadron.

*b.* The headquarters company of the infantry division battle group.

### 45. Organization of Light-Gun Tank Platoon

The light-gun tank platoon includes five light-gun tanks and a ¼-ton truck (fig. 14). Either the platoon leader's tank or the ¼-ton truck may serve as platoon headquarters. The light-gun tank platoon is organic to the reconnaissance troop of the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division.

### 46. Organization of Armored Rifle Platoon

The armored rifle platoon consists of a platoon headquarters and three rifle squads (fig. 15). Each rifle squad consists of a squad leader, two fire teams, and a driver. Each fire team consists of a fire team leader, an automatic rifleman, and three riflemen. The ¼-ton truck will normally serve as the platoon headquarters; however, the platoon leader may ride in one of the armored personnel carriers. The armored rifle platoon is organic to the reconnaissance troop of the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division.

### 47. Organization of Scout Platoon

The scout platoon consists of a platoon headquarters and three scout sections (fig. 16). Each scout section consists of two squads of six men mounted in ¼-ton trucks. The scout platoon is organic to the following units:

*a.* Reconnaissance troop of the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division.

*b.* Headquarters company of the—

(1) Armored division armor battalion.

(2) Infantry division armor battalion.

(3) Armored infantry battalion.

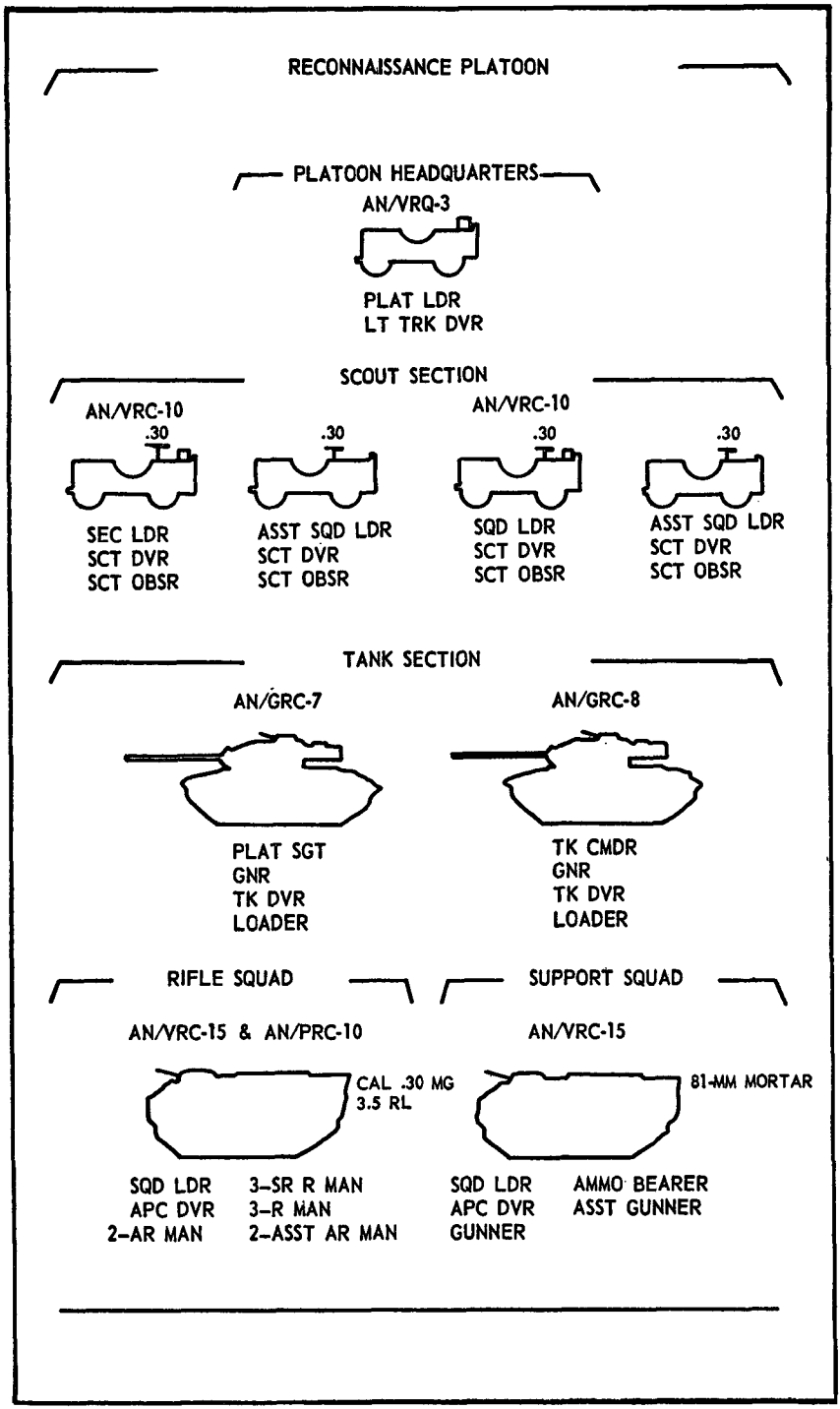



*Figure 13. Manning chart of the reconnaissance platoon.*

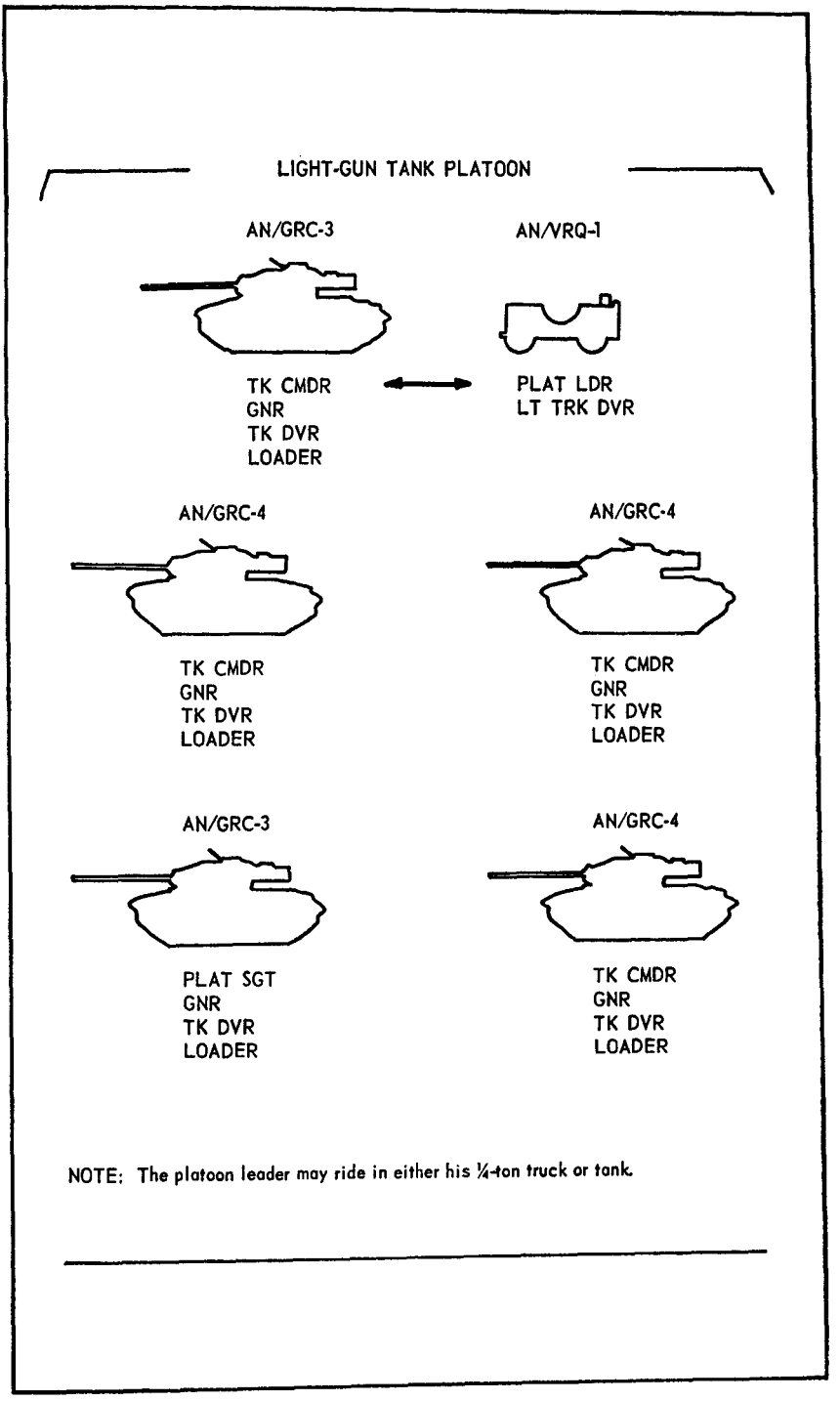



*Figure 14. Manning chart of the light-gun tank platoon.*

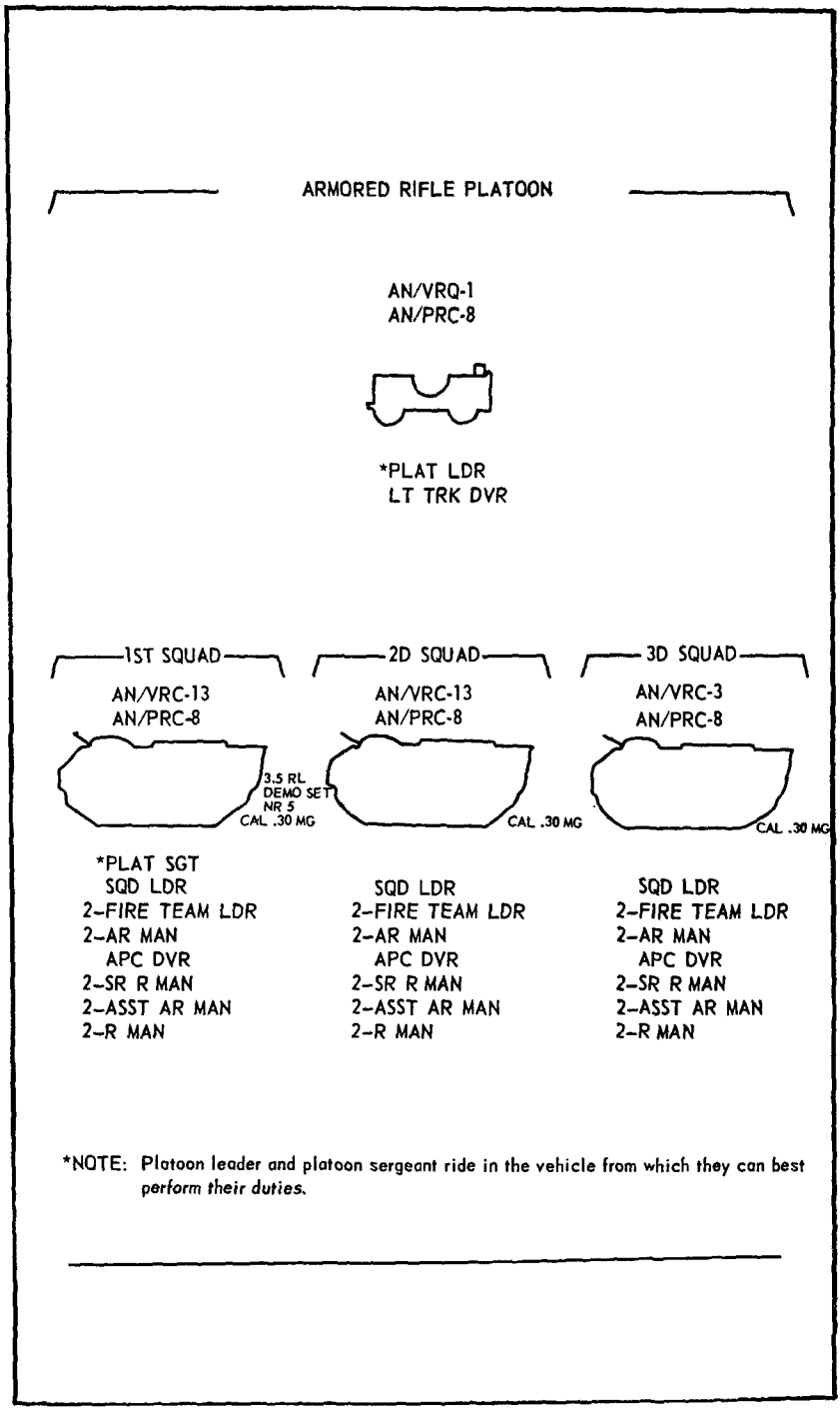



*Figure 15. Manning chart of the armored rifle platoon.*

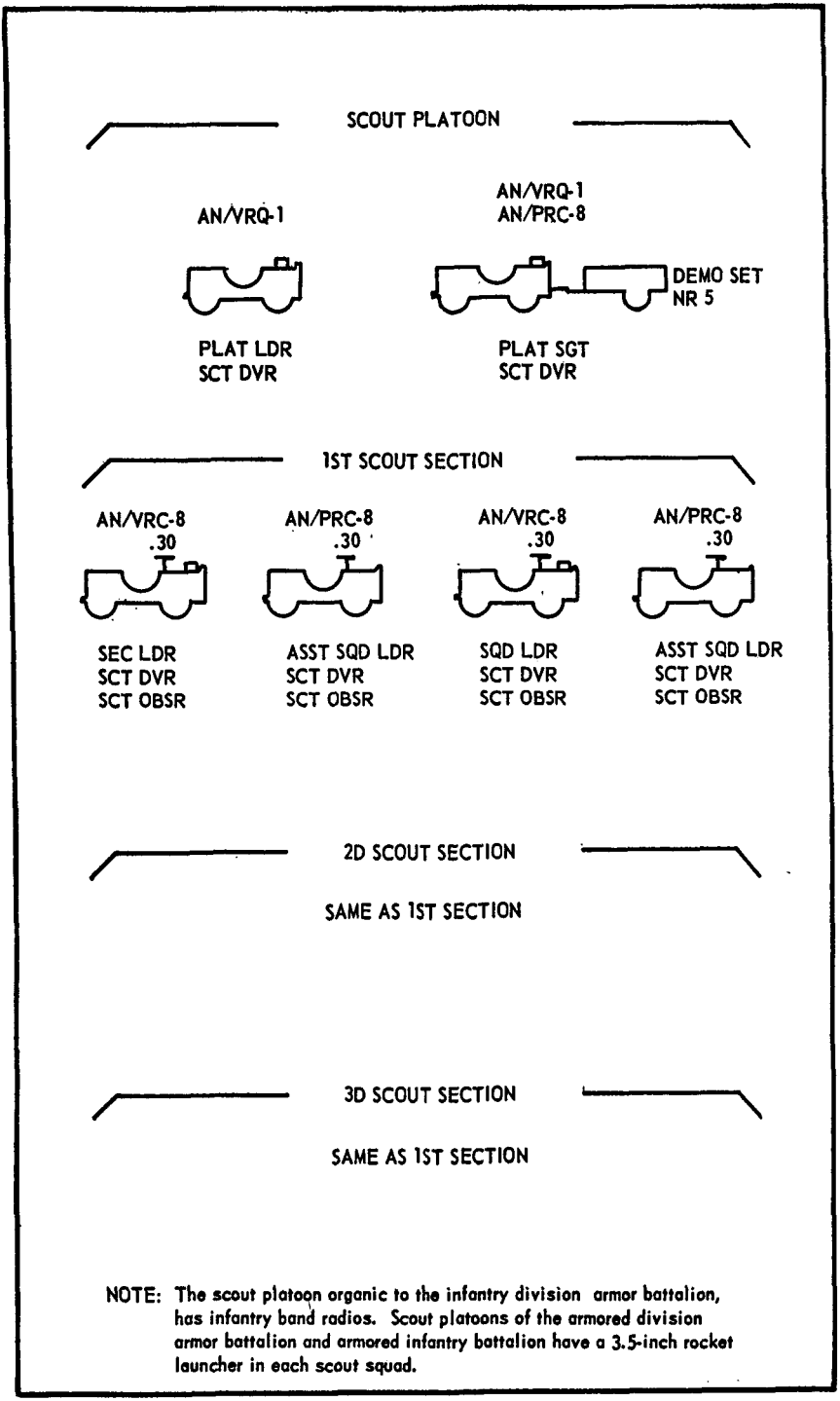



*Figure 16. Manning chart of the scout platoon.*

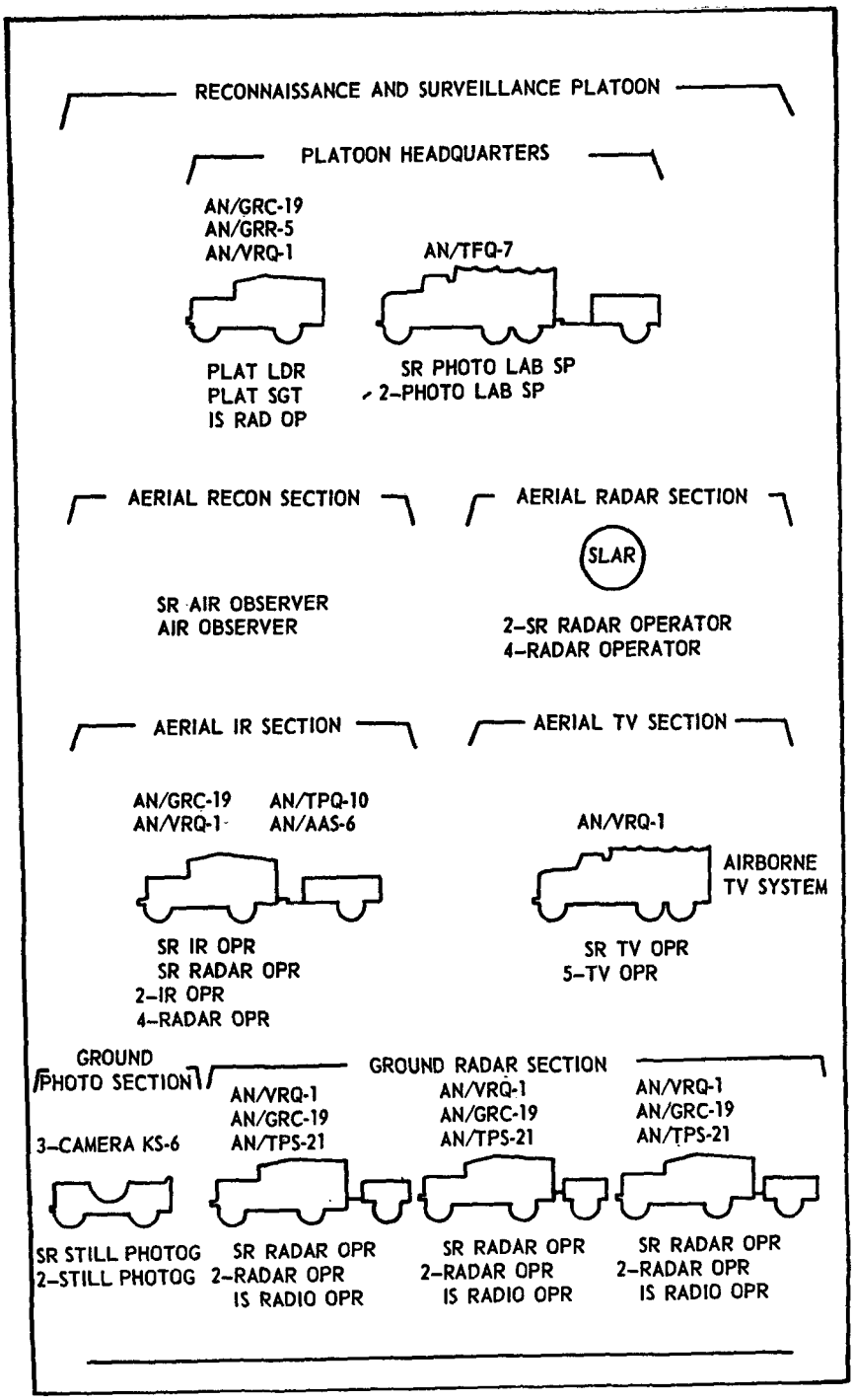



*Figure 17. Manning chart of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon.*

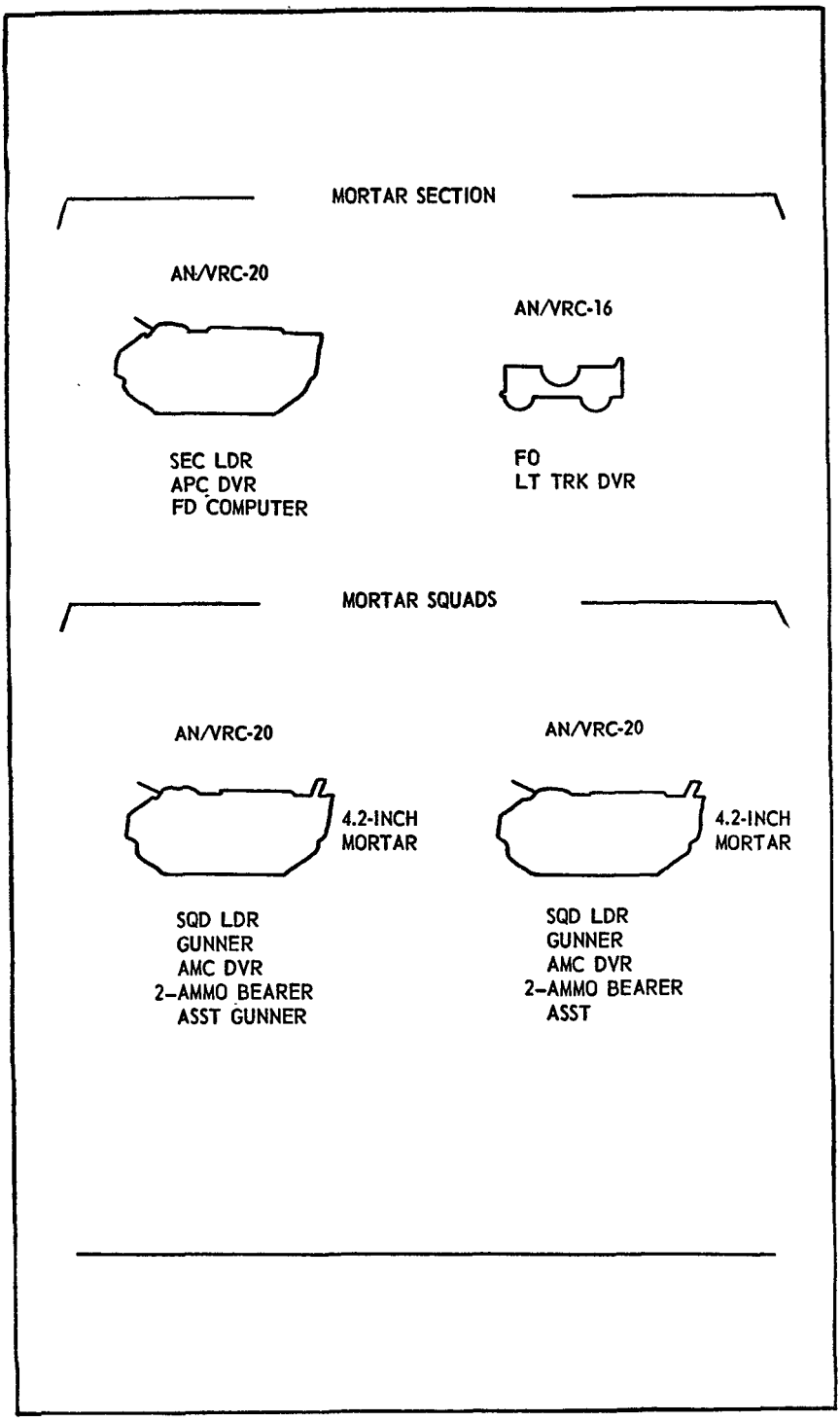



*Figure 18. Manning chart of the mortar section.*

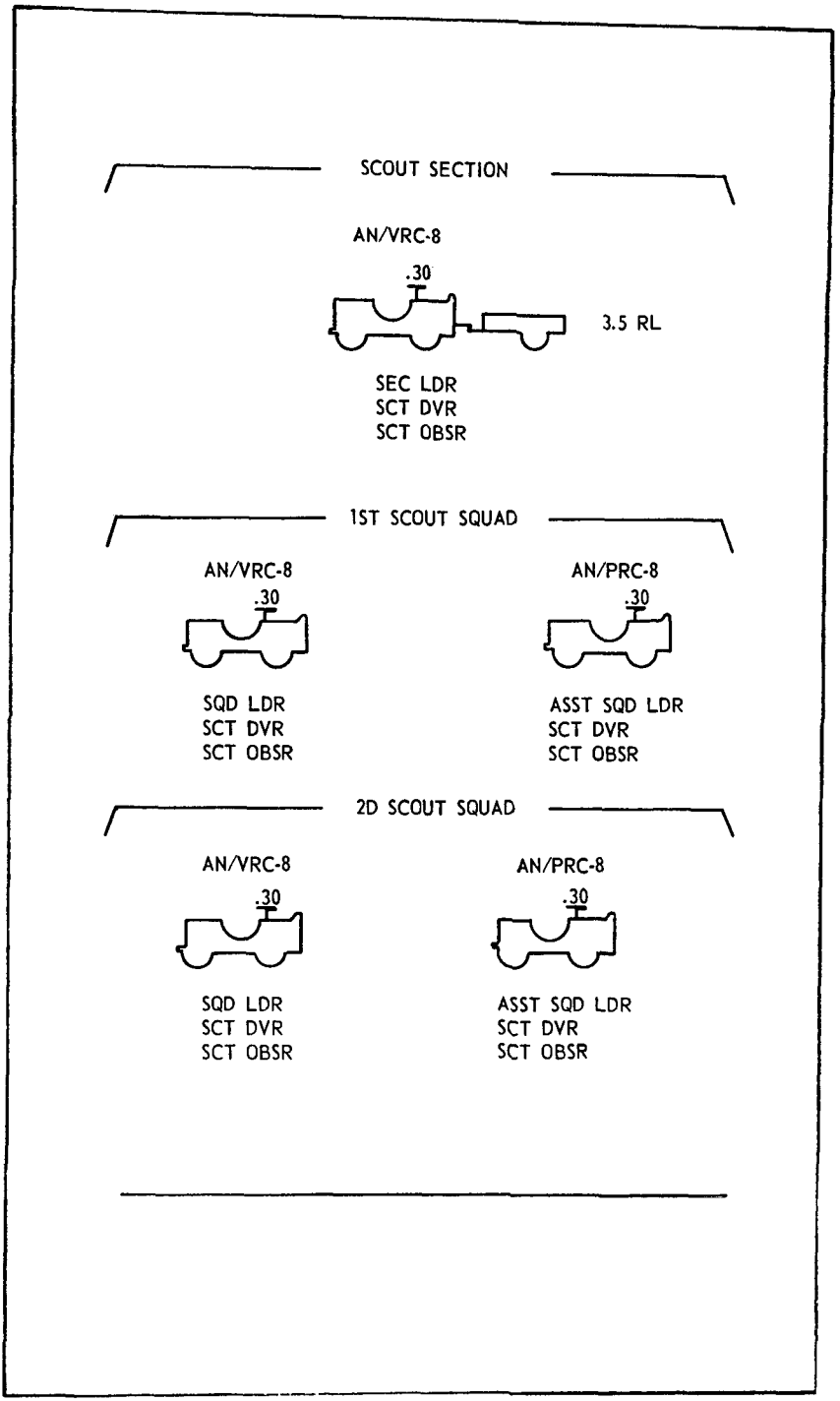



*Figure 19. Manning chart of the scout section, headquarters company, combat command.*

## 48. Organization of Reconnaissance and Surveillance Platoon

The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon consists of a platoon headquarters, aerial reconnaissance section, aerial television section, aerial infrared section, aerial radar section, ground photo section, and ground radar section (fig. 17). The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon is organic to headquarters troop of the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division and the infantry division cavalry squadron.

## 49. Organization of Mortar Section

The mortar section consists of two mortar squads and a fire direction center, which are transported in an armored personnel carrier, a ¼-ton truck, and two armored mortar carriers (fig. 18). For tactical control and operation, the armored personnel carrier is the section headquarters and fire direction center (FDC), the ¼-ton truck is used by the forward observer, and each armored mortar carrier mounts a 4.2-inch mortar and carries a mortar squad. The mortar section is organic to the reconnaissance troop of the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division.

## 50. Organization of Scout Section, Combat Command

The scout section which is organic to headquarters company of the armored division combat command consists of a section headquarters and two scout squads, each consisting of six men mounted in two ¼-ton trucks (fig. 19).

# Section III. DUTIES OF PERSONNEL, PLATOONS AND SECTIONS

## 51. General

The leaders of armored cavalry units must be capable of employing the personnel and equipment for which they are responsible. Personnel at platoon and section level must be able to perform with speed and daring in any situation. Each leader must be capable of employing his unit as part of a combined-arms team and must understand the employment of platoons, sections, and squads with which his unit normally will work.

## 52. Duties of Platoon Leaders

The platoon leader is responsible to the troop commander for the discipline, training, and control of his platoon; its maintenance and equipment; and its success in battle. He must master platoon and troop tactics and prepare himself to meet the many problems of combat leadership. He must be proficient in the employment of the platoon's weapons. Finally, he must know the men of his platoon in order that each may be most effectively used in the accomplishment of the mission.

## 53. Duties of Platoon Sergeants

The platoon sergeant is second in command of the platoon and is responsible to the platoon leader for the conduct of the platoon. He may command elements of the platoon as directed by the platoon leader and must always be prepared to assume command of the platoon in the absence of the platoon leader. He maintains a constant check on the status of gasoline and ammunition as well as class II and IV supplies. He requests supplies and supervises their distribution.

## 54. Duties of Section and Squad Leaders

Section and squad leaders are responsible for the training, discipline, tactical employment, and control of the personnel of their units. They are responsible for the maintenance and efficient operation of all vehicles and equipment which are organic to their units. Each section and squad leader must insure that his unit is able to function effectively by itself and as part of a combined-arms team.

## 55. Duties of Tank Commanders

The tank commander directs the movement of the tank, the laying and firing of all tank weapons, the maintenance and resupply of the tank, and first-aid treatment and evacuation of wounded tank crew members. He is responsible to the platoon leader for the tactical employment of the tank and the training and discipline of the crew.

# *Section IV.* PLATOON TASK ORGANIZATION

## 56. General

*a.* The organization of armored cavalry units at platoon level can be varied to meet the requirements of the mission, enemy, terrain, and troops available (METT).

*b.* The reconnaissance troop of the armored division can fight as organized or with platoon-size combined-arms teams. In the execution of various missions, the troop may be organized into platoon teams of varying types. The troop often employs the tank, armored rifle, and scout platoons as TOE platoons under troop control. However, when the platoons are so employed, elements of each platoon may be shifted to support other platoons as required by the situation. The habitual formation of the same type platoon teams reduces the flexibility of organization for combat. The platoon team commander normally is the leader of the platoon to which other units are attached. Platoon teams often very closely resemble the reconnaissance platoon which is organic to the infantry division; however, there may be a noticeable difference in tank strength.

*c.* The organization of the reconnaissance platoon of the infantry division permits immediate execution of missions requiring a platoon team. The troop commander may group like elements of each platoon (tank, armored infantry, scout, and mortar), or he may regroup elements to form tank-heavy or infantry-heavy platoon teams. When platoons of like elements are formed, they are employed in a manner similar to that of the TOE platoons of the reconnaissance troop of the armored division.

*d.* Chapter 7, which discusses the armored cavalry platoon team, is applicable to the reconnaissance platoon of the infantry division and to the platoon teams which may be organized by a reconnaissance troop of the armored division.

## 57. Organization of Platoon Teams By Reconnaissance Troop, Armored Cavalry Squadron

*a.* Platoon teams are organized when required so that the mission will be accomplished more effectively and rapidly. The mission and terrain are the dominant factors which will normally govern the organization of platoon teams; however, all factors of METT (mission, enemy, terrain, and troops available) must be considered before a final decision is made concerning the composition of each platoon.

*b.* Within the integrated reconnaissance troop, a wide variety of platoon teams may be organized. The existence of four platoon headquarters within the troop does not dictate that four platoon teams will habitually be organized. These platoon headquarters provide the troop commander with flexibility in the type as well as in the number of platoon teams that can be formed. The organization of three platoon teams may result in one platoon headquarters not being fully utilized. This extra platoon headquarters, in addition to assisting in the control and supervision of its detached elements, can frequently assist the troop commander in many other ways. Figure 20 depicts a reconnaissance troop organized into three platoon teams, two commanded by tank platoon leaders and the third by the armored rifle platoon leader. Each team has one scout section attached. As is frequently the case, the scout platoon headquarters in this example is not used to command a platoon team. The scout platoon headquarters may be employed by the troop commander to augment the scout capability of one or two of the teams, to establish liaison or radio relay, or on other missions.

## 58. Task Organizations, Reconnaissance Troop, Infantry Division Cavalry Squadron

*a.* Task organizations which are formed by the reconnaissance troop of the infantry division are based on a consideration of the factors of

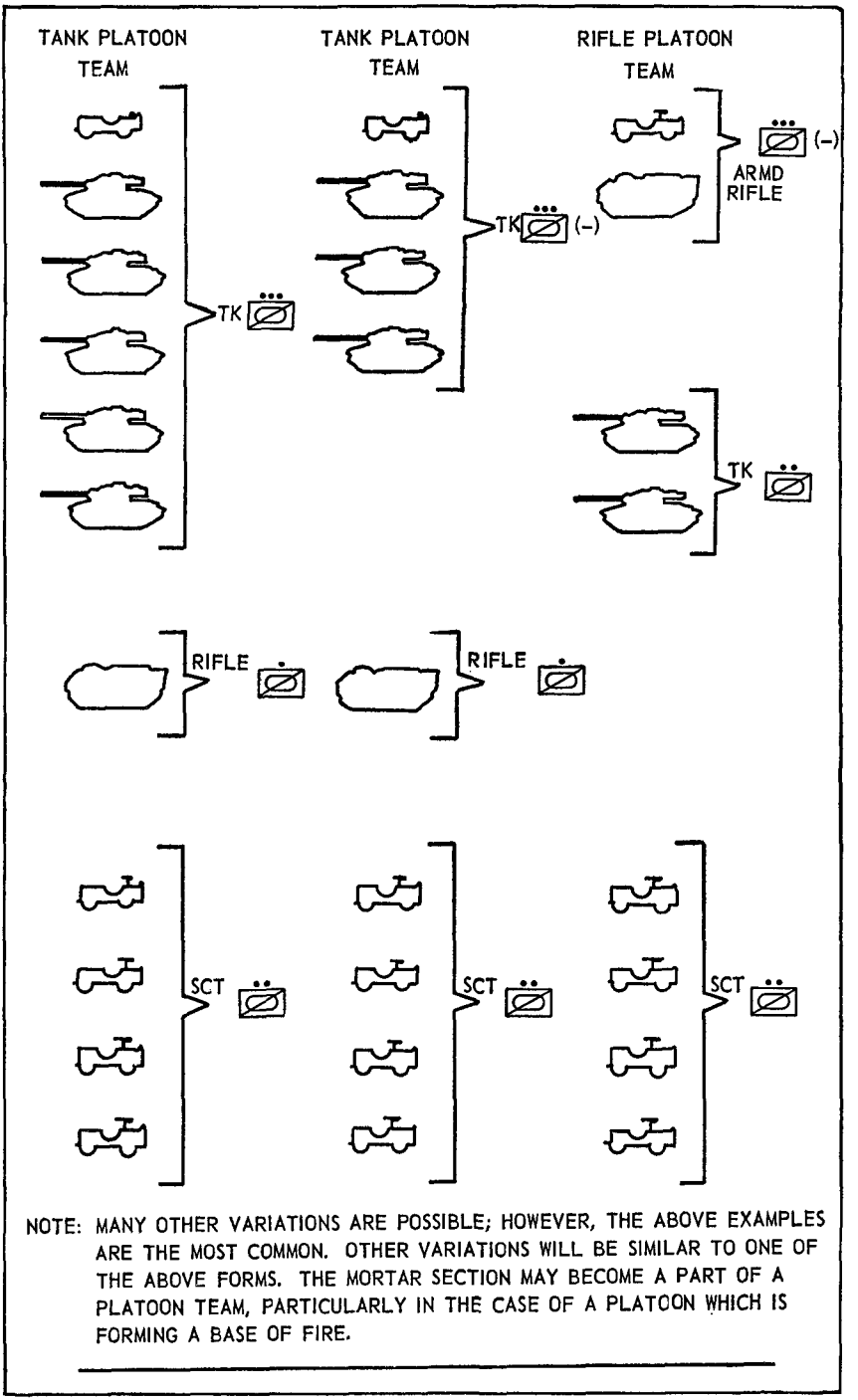



*Figure 20. Examples of platoon teams which may be organized by the reconnaissance troop of the armored division.*

METT. The ability to group like elements rapidly is insured by thorough training and adoption of standing operating procedures.

*b.* Grouping like elements within the troop provides—

(1) A tank platoon of six tanks.

(2) An armored rifle platoon of three squads.

(3) A mortar section of three mortars.

(4) A scout platoon of three scout sections.

Provisional platoons of tanks, armored infantry, and scouts are commanded by personnel designated by the troop commander for the particular operation or as covered in the unit SOP.

# CHAPTER 7

# ARMORED CAVALRY PLATOON TEAM

## Section I. GENERAL

### 59. General

The tactics and techniques of the armored cavalry platoon team are applicable both to the integrated reconnaissance platoon of the infantry division and to the platoon teams organized by the reconnaissance troop of the armored division (pars. 56 and 57). Where the term *platoon team* is used in this chapter, it applies to both type organizations.

### 60. Employment of Platoons

When the troop is assigned a reconnaissance or security mission on a broad front, it normally accomplishes the mission by semi-independent platoon action. In this situation, combined-arms teams of tanks, armored infantry, and scout elements are employed. The platoons of the reconnaissance troop, armored division, are organized into combined-arms platoon teams. The integrated reconnaissance platoon, infantry division, normally is employed as organized.

### 61. Training Requirements

All leaders of armored cavalry units must be trained in the employment of combined-arms teams. Each section and squad of the reconnaissance troop must be trained to combine its fighting characteristics with those of all other elements in the troop. Unit SOPs must be developed to provide communication, command, and efficient integration when elements are attached or detached to form platoon teams.

## Section II. PLATOON TEAM IN ATTACK

### 62. General

*a.* See chapter 8, FM 17–1, for a discussion of the fundamentals of attack, techniques of employing tanks and armored infantry, control measures, passage of lines, night attacks, and other operations requiring additional consideration.

*b.* When employed on a semi-independent mission, the armored cavalry platoon team normally includes tank, armored infantry, and scout elements. The team frequently is required to attack in the execution of a reconnaissance, security, or delaying mission.

## 63. Plan of Attack By Platoon Team

*a.* The plan of attack includes the plan of maneuver and the fire-support plan. Prior to completing his plan of attack, the platoon leader conducts a reconnaissance and completes his estimate. During the reconnaissance, maximum use must be made of available scouts. The platoon team plan of attack is designed to effect teamwork and coordination between elements of the platoon team and to make effective use of available supporting fires. The platoon team leader normally employs a maneuvering force and a base of fire. The plan must be simple and must include certain essential details:

(1) The composition and location of the base of fire, targets to be fired upon, and control measures for lifting or shifting its fire.
(2) The composition of the maneuvering force, the route it will follow to the objective, and the method of advance.
(3) Security during the attack, actions on the objective, and provisions for resuming the advance.

*b.* Fire support normally is provided by the mortars organic to the troop and available supporting artillery. For control of this fire, a forward observer may be with the platoon team; however, all personnel of the platoon team must be proficient in requesting and adjusting mortar and artillery fire.

## 64. Composition of Maneuvering Force, Platoon Team Attack

*a.* The maneuvering force should contain maximum available combat power. It usually seeks to strike the enemy on the flank or rear rather than to penetrate the position. The armored cavalry platoon team normally uses tanks and armored infantry in the maneuvering force. If a dismounted maneuvering force is required, it may consist of armored infantry and scouts. Scouts, however, may also be used in the attack to provide security for the maneuvering force or as part of the base of fire. When scout elements accompany the maneuvering force to provide flank security, they may also assist in the movement of the force by selecting covered and concealed routes. In determining whether to include mounted scout elements in the maneuvering force, due consideration must be given to the lack of armor protection provided by their ¼-ton trucks. Often the nature of the enemy resistance will dictate that the scout elements be used initially in the base of fire.

*b.* Normally, the platoon team leader accompanies the maneuvering force, controlling it directly.

*c.* Figure 21 illustrates the composition of typical maneuvering forces.

## 65. Composition of the Base of Fire, Platoon Team Attack

*a.* The base of fire usually consists of available supporting artillery and organic mortars. The base of fire may include tanks, armored

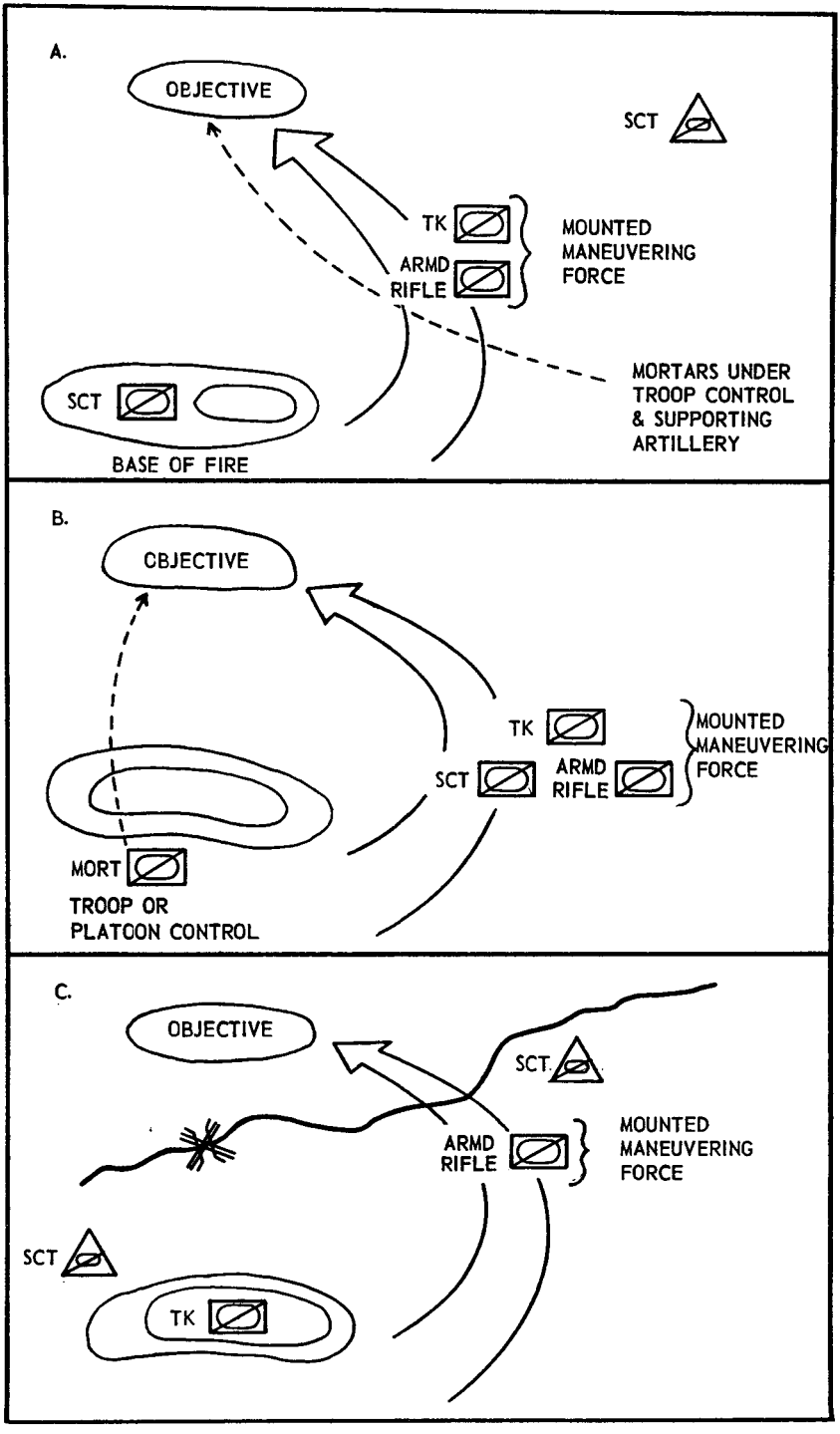



*Figure 21. Composition of the maneuvering force.*

infantry, or scout elements. For conditions under which these elements may be placed in the base of fire, see paragraph 241, FM 17–1.

*b.* Normally, the base of fire is controlled by the platoon sergeant or the second ranking individual of the platoon team.

## 66. Supporting Fires, Platoon Team Attack

*a.* Supporting fires must be arranged for by the platoon team leader. If mortars are attached (or organic) to the platoon team, direct liaison is made with the mortar unit leader; however, if they are under troop control, the platoon team leader normally will request their fires through the troop commander. Supporting artillery fires are requested by the artillery forward observers working with the troop. The platoon team leader may request artillery support through the troop commander. Under certain circumstances, the platoon team leader may request supporting fires by direct communication with supporting artillery units.

*b.* Elements of the base of fire open fire on order. When the fire is masked by the maneuvering force, it is lifted or shifted to the flanks or rear. The fire is controlled by radio, observation, or prearranged signals. Tanks and automatic weapons in the base of fire may be moved when necessary to obtain better fields of fire or to avoid enemy fire. The plan of attack should insure that the maneuvering force will be in position to fire on the objective before supporting fires are lifted. When the fires are lifted or shifted, direct-fire weapons must be prepared to displace forward according to prearranged signal or plan. Mortars normally do not displace forward until the objective has been overrun.

## 67. Conduct of Maneuvering Force, Platoon Team Attack

*a.* The maneuvering force closes with the enemy, using fire and movement.

*b.* The maneuvering force advances as rapidly as the situation will permit. When possible, the maneuvering force uses a route that provides good cover and concealment and that permits it to advance close to the objective before employing fire and movement.

*c.* See paragraphs 276 and 277, FM 17–1, for the general techniques of employing tanks and armored infantry as a team.

*d.* When scouts are a part of the maneuvering force, they may reconnoiter the route of advance and provide flank security, or they may act as riflemen. When the route of advance is covered and allows wheeled vehicle movement, the scout element may reconnoiter the route to the objective until the last covered position is reached and then provide additional fire support or flank security.

## 68. Actions on Objective, Platoon Team

*a.* When the objective is taken, it is consolidated, and the platoon team is reorganized in preparation for subsequent action (par. 281, FM 17–1).

*b.* The objective should be consolidated in the minimum amount of time. Consolidation is expedited by the following:

(1) Instructions for the consolidation of the objective should be included in the attack order.

(2) Scout elements are immediately sent to the front and flanks to provide security. They maintain contact with enemy forces and reconnoiter routes along which the attack will be continued.

(3) Tank and infantry elements are positioned to repel counterattack, to continue the advance, or to defend the position, as required by the unit mission.

(4) Organic fire-support elements are displaced for continuation of the advance or for defense. Further requests for fire support by artillery and other fire-support agencies may also be made at this time.

*c.* The actions taken by the platoon team in the reorganization may include—

(1) All squads and sections report the status of personnel and equipment.

(2) Casualties, prisoners, and damaged equipment are evacuated.

(3) Personnel, equipment, and ammunition are redistributed as necessary.

(4) The platoon team leader immediately reports the status of his platoon team to the troop commander.

## 69. Resumption of Advance, Platoon Team

As a result of the platoon team leader's continuous estimate of the situation, his knowledge of the higher commander's plan, and his mission, a formation is adopted which will enable the platoon team to readily resume operations. Frequently the platoon team reorganizes while continuing to move, and continues to advance without halting after taking an objective. In such a case, continued movement will allow little opportunity for physical shifting of personnel or equipment between elements of the platoon team. However, the platoon team leader should call for status reports from each section. At the first favorable opportunity, he makes any necessary changes to insure the operational effectiveness of his platoon team.

## 70. Employment of Platoon Team as Part of a Larger Force in Attack

The armored cavalry platoon team or the integrated reconnaissance platoon may be required to participate in an attack as part of the troop. Normally, the troop attack requires the massing of tanks and armored infantry. In such a situation, the platoon teams must expect a change in task organization and be prepared to reorganize on the move. This normally is accomplished by moving elements of the platoon team to locations designated by the troop commander. For a detailed discussion of the troop attack, see paragraphs 205–219.

# Section III. PLATOON TEAM IN DEFENSE

## 71. General

*a. General.* The platoon team operating alone is limited in its ability to conduct a prolonged defense; however, in the conduct of some missions it may be required to defend an area for a limited time. Defense may be an assigned mission or may be forced by enemy action.

*b. Types of Defense.* Regardless of the type defense in which it participates, the actions of the platoon team in organizing a defensive position are essentially the same.

*c. Fundamentals of Defense.* The platoon team leader organizes and conducts the defense through application of the basic considerations discussed in paragraph 349, FM 17–1.

*d. Situations Requiring Defense Independently.* Typical situations in which the platoon team may be required to defend by itself are as follows:

(1) In the accomplishment of reconnaissance missions, the platoon team may be required to defend at night or when attacked by enemy forces.

(2) In the accomplishment of security missions, the platoon team may be required to defend by establishing blocking positions or roadblocks.

(3) During all operations which are conducted on a broad front, the platoon team may be required to defend in place until a new mission is received, until daylight, or until the troop has permission to consolidate.

## 72. Platoon Team Defensive Position, General

*a. General.* The techniques employed by the armored cavalry platoon team in establishing a platoon defensive position generally apply to all defensive situations.

*b. Reconnaissance and Selection of Positions.* The platoon team leader, accompanied by his section and squad leaders, makes a reconnaissance of the area to be defended. Based on this reconnaissance, he formulates his plan.

*c. Command and Control.* The platoon team leader may be assigned boundaries, limiting points, or contact points by the troop commander. Radio, pyrotechnics, and visual signals are the means of communication which the platoon team leader will normally use for control measures. Signals are used for identifying friendly troops, opening fire, lifting and shifting fires, and moving to supplementary or alternate positions.

*d. Fire Planning.* Detailed plans must be made for fires of automatic weapons, tanks, mortars, and all other available fire-support agencies. The platoon team leader assigns specific areas of responsibility and sectors of fire to each element of the platoon team.

## 73. Occupation and Preparation of Platoon Team Defensive Position

*a.* The platoon team leader assigns specific areas of responsibility to the elements of the platoon team. Security to the front and flanks of the position is provided by establishing observation posts to give early warning of enemy approach. Patrols are used to cover areas not under observation from the observation posts.

*b.* The platoon team defensive position is organized around the tank section(s). The primary position selected for the tank section(s) covers the most likely avenues of enemy approach into the position. Supplementary positions are selected to cover other possible approaches, with special emphasis on approaches suitable for enemy armor, since tanks are the principal antitank weapon of the platoon team. Each tank provides its own close-in or local security; therefore, at least one man is required to be in the turret of each tank and alert at all times. During darkness and periods of limited visibility, the platoon leader may require the section leader(s) to position the tanks closer together for better defense and protection. A range card is prepared for each tank.

*c.* Rifle squads are located to provide the maximum amount of firepower to the front and flanks of the position and to protect the tanks from hand-carried enemy antitank weapons. The platoon team leader designates a primary position for the rifle squad(s) and assigns sectors of fire to be covered. The rifle squad leader reconnoiters the primary position and selects primary and alternate positions for the machine guns, automatic rifle teams, and individual riflemen in the squad. These teams are placed so they can fire across the front and the flanks of the platoon defensive position. If possible, armored personnel carriers should be employed in the squad areas. Their vehicular machine guns can be used to increase the long-range, close-in, and final protective

fires of the platoon. The 3.5-inch rocket launcher is sited to cover the most likely avenues of enemy armor approach. All personnel dig in or use cover provided by the terrain. Range cards are prepared for the automatic weapons. Squad leaders position themselves where they can best control the actions of the squads. At least one man at each machine gun and automatic rifle position is required to be alert at all times. The organization of the rifle squad position may change at night, when the rifle squad may close in for better defense and protection.

*d.* The scout sections may provide security or be employed as additional riflemen.

(1) When the scout section is employed to provide security for the platoon team position, it operates OPs or conducts patrols. In using the scout section for platoon team security, however, the platoon team leader should weigh very carefully the factors involved in the existing situation. Oftentimes the crew in one ¼-ton truck is sufficient to give adequate warning of enemy approach while the remainder of the scout section is employed to add strength to the platoon team defensive position.

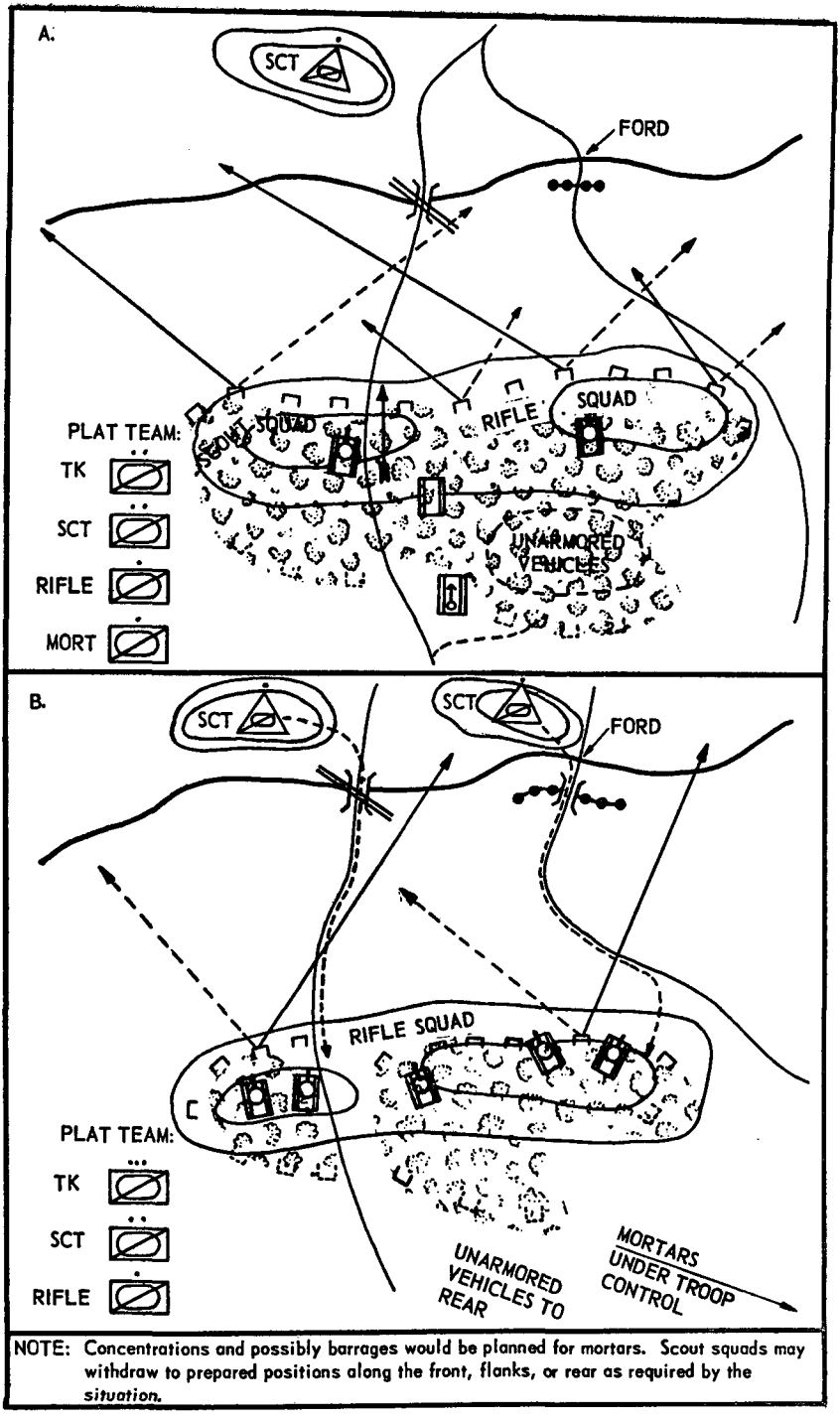
(2) When scout elements are employed as additional riflemen in organization of the platoon team position, they should be employed as units.

*e.* Mortars provide the close indirect-fire support for the platoon team whether attached, organic, or under troop control. They are normally located to the rear of the position and are responsible for rear security. When the platoon team is occupying part of the troop sector, the mortars normally are employed under troop control. When mortars are a part of the platoon team, the platoon team leader designates primary and supplementary positions, and the mortar leaders select alternate positions.

*f.* See figure 22 for descriptive illustrations of a typical platoon team defensive position. Illustration A is more typical of a platoon team defensive position organized at a distance from the troop proper than illustration B.

*g.* Unarmored vehicles of the platoon team (¼-ton trucks), when not employed in a security mission, should be located to the rear of the position in well-concealed and defiladed positions. The armored carriers should be in defiladed positions.

*h.* The platoon team is capable of preparing obstacles and installing minefields. The use of demolitions for the destruction of bridges, felling trees, and cratering roads should be considered by the platoon team leader. If authority is received through the troop commander, the platoon team may install minefields (normally protective) in areas where the enemy may be held and which can be covered by platoon direct-fire weapons. Smoke may be used to neutralize enemy observation and to




NOTE: Concentrations and possibly barrages would be planned for mortars. Scout squads may withdraw to prepared positions along the front, flanks, or rear as required by the *situation.*

*Figure 22. Armored cavalry platoon team establishing a defensive position.*

create confusion in the enemy attacking force. The platoon team continues to strengthen the position as long as it is occupied.

## 74. Employment of Platoon Team as Part of a Larger Force in Defense

*a.* When the platoon team participates in defense as part of a larger force, it may be employed, as part of the security force, as part of a troop defensive position, as part of a striking force, or as part of a reserve.

*b.* When the platoon team is employed as part of a troop position, it organizes a platoon team defensive position as discussed in paragraphs 72 and 73, and its relationship to the troop position is as discussed in paragraphs 222 and 223. The platoon team leader must be prepared to coordinate fires with adjacent units, to assume lateral responsibilities as designated by boundaries, and to coordinate his efforts with the troop commander in securing all-round defense for the troop.

*c.* When the platoon team is employed as part of the striking force or security force, it performs its mission in conjunction with the troop.

## 75. Blocking Positions and Roadblocks by Platoon Team

*a. Blocking Positions.* The platoon team may be given a mission to establish a blocking position, or it may do so on the platoon team leader's initiative in carrying out various forms of security missions. A blocking position is organized to deny the enemy access to a given area or to prevent further advance of the enemy in a given direction. Emphasis is placed on preventing the enemy force from approaching from a given direction. A blocking position may consist of a roadblock, or it may consist of a platoon team defensive position which covers a general avenue of enemy approach.

*b. Roadblocks.* In woods, in very broken terrain, and in areas of deep snow-covered terrain, the movement of vehicles is largely restricted to roads; therefore, roadblocks are especially important to the platoon team in carrying out many of its assigned missions. Before establishing a roadblock, the platoon team leader should consider all available means to obstruct, delay, and canalize enemy movement. Natural obstacles, mines, booby traps, wire, demolitions, and logs are the normal means available (FM 31–10). In addition, the element of surprise and the platoon team's ability to cover an obstacle by fire must be considered. The roadblock usually incorporates obstacles covered by fire; however, if time or the lack of obstacle material prevents the platoon team from physically placing an obstacle on the road, it establishes the roadblock by firepower alone. Having selected the point or area along a road

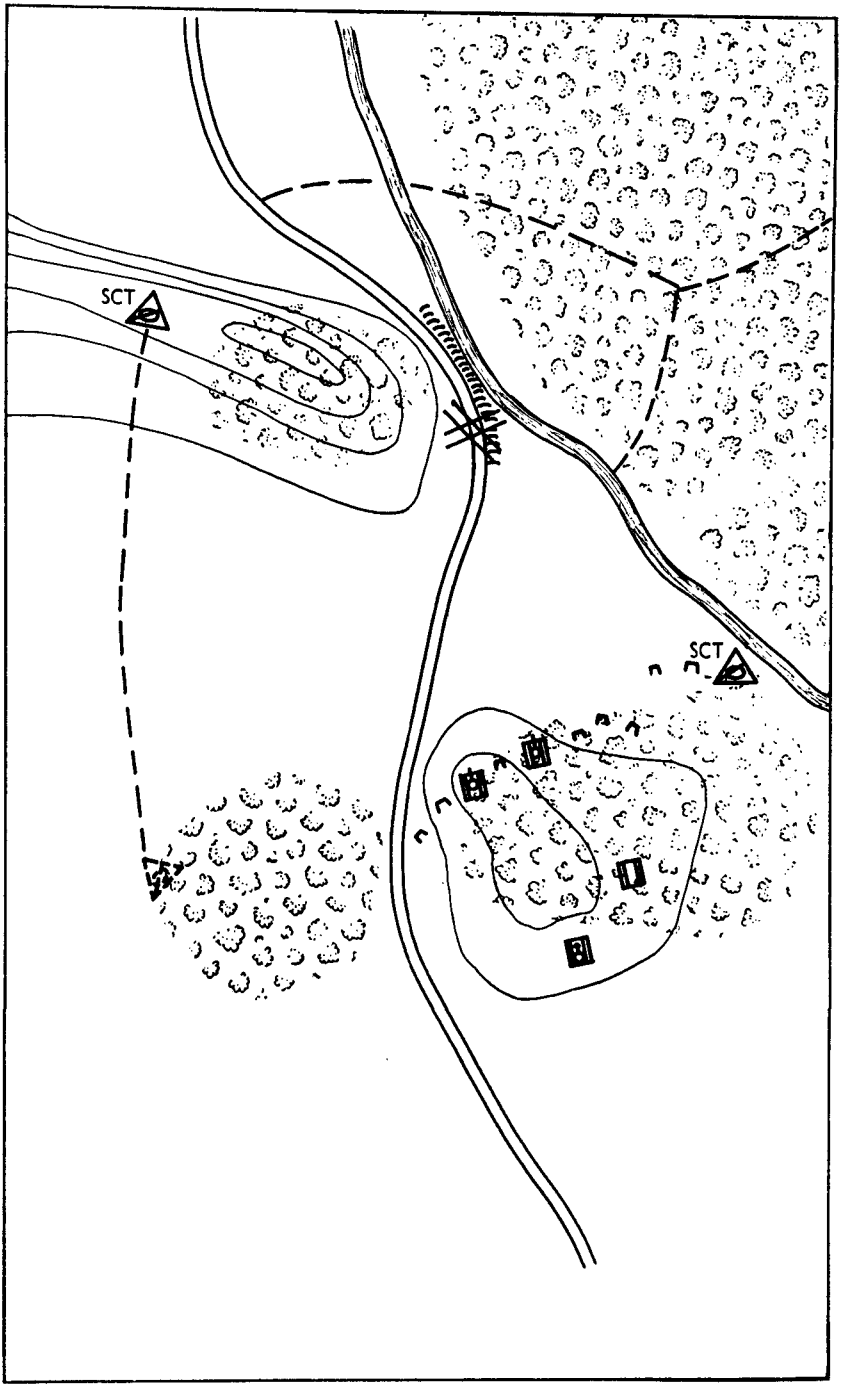



*Figure 23. Typical roadblock which the armored cavalry platoon team may establish.*

where the roadblock will be established, the platoon team leader must select positions for each element of the platoon team and allot tasks for preparing the position and developing an obstacle.

(1) Scouts normally are used to secure the flanks and to assist in covering bypass routes which the enemy may use to avoid the obstacle.

(2) Tanks are positioned to cover the roadblock (or the particular point or area of road) and routes which the enemy may use to bypass the obstacle.

(3) Armored infantry normally are used to construct artificial obstacles as a first priority mission and then provide close protection for the tank elements of the platoon team.

(4) If mortars are available, they plan fires to prevent the enemy from passing a designated point along the road and to prevent his movement along bypass routes. Figure 23 illustrates a typical roadblock which the platoon team may establish.

## Section IV. PLATOON TEAM IN DELAYING ACTION

### 76. General

*a.* The armored cavalry platoon team conducts a delaying action when specifically assigned a delaying mission, and it frequently conducts a delaying action in the accomplishment of a security mission. Delaying action by the platoon team is a retrograde movement by which it seeks to delay the advance of an enemy force. Maximum punishment must be inflicted on the enemy; however, the platoon team must not become decisively engaged in combat. See chapter 10, FM 17–1, for a complete discussion of fundamentals, planning, and conduct of delaying action. The platoon team can delay most effectively by occupying successive positions along a single route, which should be designated as the route of withdrawal.

*b.* Conditions under which a platoon team may be required to conduct a delaying action as a semi-independent force are as follows:

(1) When the troop is performing a security mission and a platoon team has a separate avenue of enemy approach to cover.

(2) When the troop is conducting delaying action and the platoon team has a separate zone or route of withdrawal.

(3) When the platoon team encounters an advancing superior enemy force during a reconnaissance mission.

### 77. Reconnaissance and Selection of Platoon Team Delaying Positions

*a.* The platoon team leader must reconnoiter all terrain within his assigned zone or along his route of withdrawal in order to select platoon

team delaying positions. He makes maximum use of all favorable terrain between troop delaying positions. He normally must depend very heavily on a map reconnaissance and directions received from the troop commander in selecting platoon team positions. Sections and squads are disposed to cover the main avenue of approach to the delaying position, and plans are made to cover any other likely approaches. The most important factors to consider in selecting delaying positions are—

(1) Critical terrain.

(2) Observation and fields of fire.

(3) Cover and concealment.

(4) Obstacles across front and flanks.

(5) Avenues of enemy approach.

(6) Routes for withdrawal and for lateral movement.

*b.* The platoon team leader normally makes a personal reconnaissance of the initial delaying position. This position is usually determined by enemy contact. As the platoon team prepares the initial delaying position, the platoon sergeant is sent to reconnoiter and plan the next successive position selected. If possible, the platoon team leader checks the position reconnoitered by the platoon sergeant. The platoon sergeant normally uses the platoon team leader's command vehicle (¼-ton truck), with its driver and one or more men from a rifle squad. An entire rifle squad may be included in the reconnaissance party if limited pioneer work at the position will materially improve the delaying characteristics of the position. Radio contact is maintained with the platoon team leader to effect necessary coordination. When the platoon team arrives at the next delaying position, the platoon sergeant guides the section and squad leaders to their positions and briefs them on the organization of the position.

## 78. Coordination and Control of Platoon Team in Delaying Action

The platoon team leader must insure that coordination is maintained with adjacent units and with other units to his rear. This may be accomplished by radio or by making contact at designated contact points. Within the platoon team, coordination is maintained by efficient use of scouts and the various means of communication. Control of all elements of the platoon team in a delaying action is essential but difficult, and is insured only by the close personal supervision of the platoon team leader. The platoon team leader must withdraw from the delaying position on order from the troop commander or according to instructions previously received.

## 79. Platoon Team Occupation and Organization of Delaying Position

Each platoon team position is organized around the tank elements. Tanks are placed on terrain features which dominate likely avenues of approach, which permit long-range fires, and which facilitate covered withdrawal. The occupation of each delaying position is very similar to the occupation of a platoon team defensive position (fig. 24). Basic factors which the platoon team leader must consider in occupying a delaying position include:

*a.* Primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.

*b.* Preparation of range cards.

*c.* Security.

*d.* Coordination with other elements.

## 80. Employment of Platoon Team Elements in Delaying Action

*a. Scouts.* The scout section is employed to the front and flanks to provide early warning of enemy approach and to adjust long-range supporting fires.

*b. Tanks.* Tanks provide long-range direct fire and antitank defense for the platoon team. A tank section is employed as a unit, and its tanks are positioned to provide mutual support by fire. Tanks are placed to cover likely avenues of hostile armor approach.

*c. Rifle Squads.* The rifle squad is positioned to provide close-in protection for the tanks and to cover obstacles with fire. Automatic weapons normally are placed on each flank of the position.

*d. Mortars.* Mortars provide indirect-fire support; they may be under either troop or platoon team control. If the mortars are under platoon team control, they are located to the rear of the position and are responsible for rear security.

*e. Platoon Team Headquarters.* The platoon team leader may control the platoon team from a tank or an armored personnel carrier. He should position himself where he can best control the action of the platoon team. His position will be affected by the order of withdrawal within the platoon team.

## 81. Actions of Platoon Team Elements in Delaying Action

The platoon team leader informs the troop commander of the specific positions occupied. He insures that each squad and section makes maximum use of all available time to—

*a.* Position tanks in hull defilade.

*b.* Coordinate all fires.

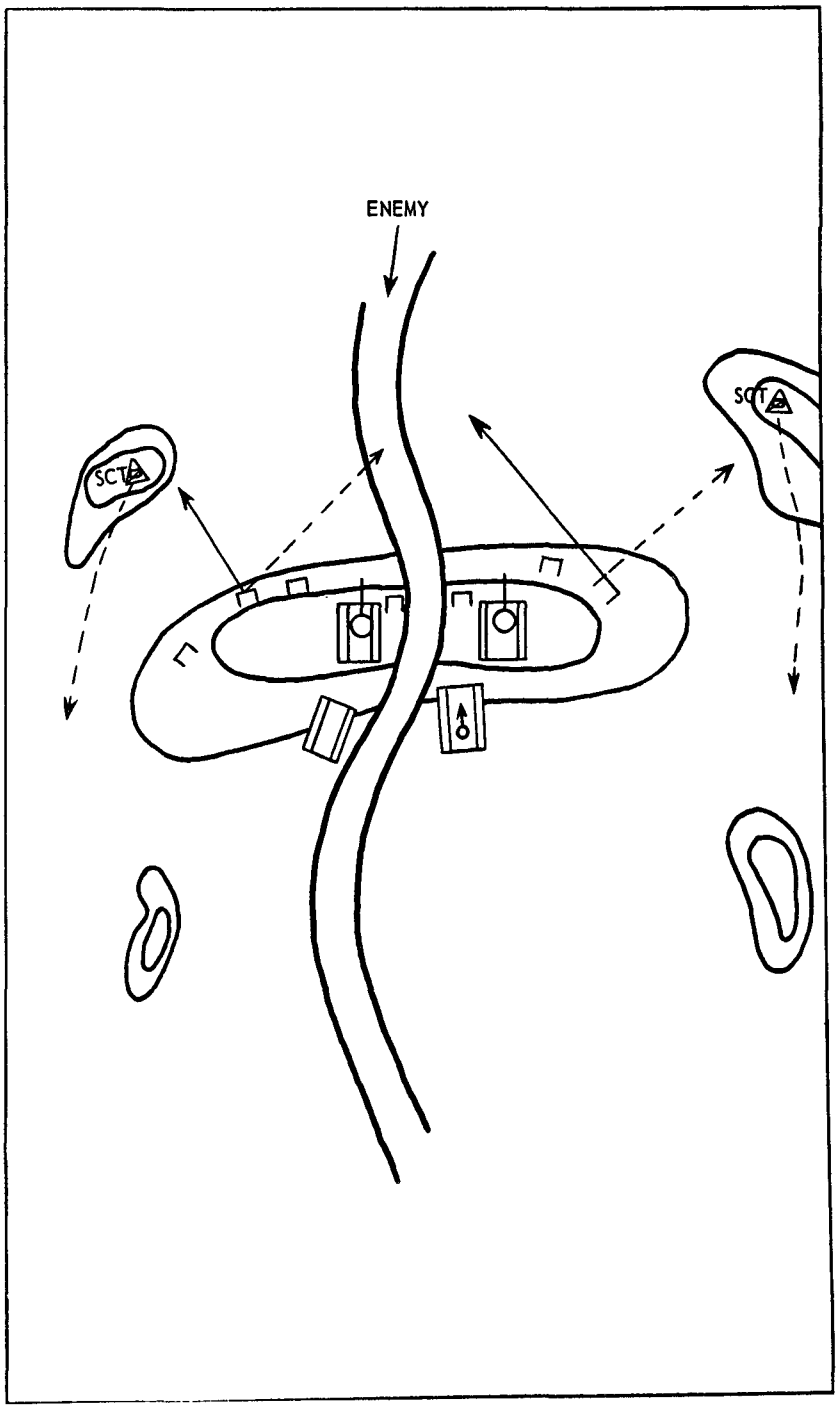



*Figure 24. Organization of platoon delaying position.*

*c.* Clear fields of fire.

*d.* Prepare individual foxholes and emplacements for automatic weapons.

*e.* Camouflage positions.

*f.* Prepare range cards for the mortars, tank guns, and automatic weapons.

*g.* Construct obstacles and roadblocks, covered by fire whenever possible.

*h.* Lay mines in accordance with unit SOP and higher authority.

*i.* Coordinate with adjacent units.

*j.* Select and reconnoiter *covered* routes of withdrawal for each vehicle to the platoon team route of withdrawal.

## 82. Actions of Platoon Team on Delaying Position

In a delaying action, successive positions are occupied for sufficient periods of time to cause the enemy to halt, develop the situation, and deploy for an attack. The troop commander must always be kept informed of the platoon team situation to insure the issuance of orders for the withdrawal of the unit before it becomes too heavily engaged. Visual contact with the enemy should not be broken. Scouts, working in conjunction with available Army aircraft, normally maintain this contact. Elements of the platoon team conduct their parts of the delaying action as follows:

*a. Scouts.* The scout section initially is employed well forward to detect and give early warning of enemy approach. It remains in visual contact with the enemy and directs supporting long-range fire. As the enemy approaches the platoon team delaying position, the scout section withdraws by squads to the flanks. The scout squads remain concealed and do not reveal their positions by firing, except to defend or extricate themselves. They maintain visual contact with the enemy, and also report any attempt by the enemy to by-pass or envelop the position.

*b. Mortars.* The mortars deliver long-range harassing fire on the enemy and assist in maintaining rear security.

*c. Tank Section.* As the enemy approaches the delaying position, the tanks open fire at maximum effective range. This fire is delivered to cause early deployment of the enemy and to inflict maximum casualties.

*d. Rifle Squad.* The rifle squad employs its individual and automatic weapons to protect the tanks from dismounted enemy patrols and infiltrators and also to cover obstacles. The rifle squad withholds its fire until the enemy is within effective range of small arms. Maximum use should be made of the caliber .50 machine gun because of its long-range capability in comparison with other small arms.

## 83. Platoon Team Withdrawal to Next Delaying Position

The platoon team holds each delaying position until forced to withdraw by enemy action or to conform to the withdrawal of other friendly units. In either case, the authority to withdraw must be obtained from the troop commander. If the platoon team is forced to withdraw by enemy action, the platoon team leader must inform the troop commander in sufficient time to obtain authority to withdraw before becoming decisively engaged. He must keep the troop commander informed as the situation progresses so that the troop commander has detailed knowledge of the situation and can make a quick decision. The platoon team may withdraw from the delaying position as a unit or by squads and sections. In either case, the withdrawal is accomplished as follows:

*a. Platoon Team Leader.* The platoon team leader normally withdraws with the last element to leave the position.

*b. Tank Section.* Normally the tank section withdraws as the last element of the platoon team. If the terrain is heavily wooded, or observation is otherwise restricted, the rifle squad covers the withdrawal of the tank section.

*c. Rifle Squad.* When the terrain provides good observation, the rifle squad normally withdraws before the tank section.

*d. Mortars.* The mortars withdraw after maximum assistance has been given the withdrawal of other elements of the platoon team, normally at approximately the same time as the rifle squad.

*e. Scouts.* The section leader controls the withdrawal of the scout squads. He withdraws the scout squads on the flanks so that at least one squad has visual contact with the enemy at all times.

## 84. Platoon Team in Reserve, Delaying Action

The platoon team may function as a reserve for the troop. Frequently the platoon team will be positioned in depth on a successive or alternate troop delaying position and be required to function as a reserve. When acting as a reserve, the platoon team may be required to establish a blocking position, launch a limited-objective attack, support the withdrawal of other platoons by fire, or reinforce or replace a portion of the delaying force.

## 85. Employment of Platoon Team as Part of a Larger Force, Delaying Action

When the troop has been assigned a narrow zone and two or more platoon teams are used on a single route of withdrawal, they must work in close cooperation with each other in occupying each delaying position. If successive positions are occupied by two or more platoon teams, duplication of effort is prevented by coordinating fires, security, and close

supervision by the troop commander. When platoon teams leapfrog to alternate positions, responsibility for enemy contact must be passed from one platoon team to the other, and the selection of platoon delaying positions is more closely controlled and coordinated by the troop commander.

## 86. Ambush by Platoon Team in Delaying Action

*a.* An ambush is extremely effective in the conduct of a delaying action. However, the frequency with which the armored cavalry unit employs an ambush is limited by enemy action and terrain. The unit must be capable of destroying the enemy force which it intends to ambush. If the enemy force is too large, the unit may become so heavily engaged that it will be unable to withdraw. The delay of the enemy, not his destruction, is the primary consideration. An ambush prepared by the armored cavalry platoon team to effect delay should be organized to insure that the leading vehicles of an enemy column are engaged. If possible, fire should also be brought to bear on vehicles farther back in the column to delay their subsequent employment against the ambush position (fig. 25).

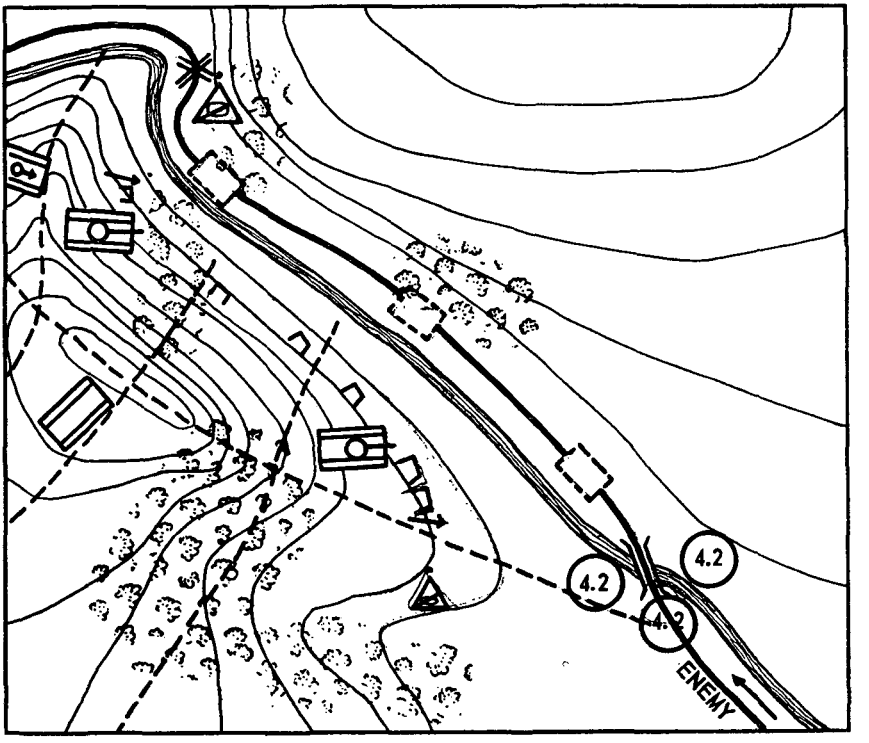



*Figure 25. Organization of platoon ambush position in close terrain.*

*b.* Elements of the platoon team are positioned to deliver maximum fire on the enemy force being ambushed. Tanks are positioned to deliver direct fire on all vehicles within the ambush. The rifle squad is positioned to prevent the escape of dismounted enemy troops. The scout section may be placed forward to provide security and where it can fire within the ambush position. This section also may assist in sealing off the enemy troops by firing on elements farther back in the enemy column. The mortars deliver indirect fire to the rear of the ambush position to prevent escape of enemy troops and to prevent reinforcements from coming to their assistance.

## Section V. PLATOON TEAM IN RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS

### 87. General

*a.* In executing reconnaissance missions, the armored cavalry platoon team obtains information by surveillance, stealth, and infiltration whenever possible; however, it will fight when necessary in order to gain information of the enemy and area of operations. When required to fight for information, the platoon team conducts offensive, defensive, or delaying actions as described in paragraphs 62–86.

*b.* The platoon team must be able to perform reconnaissance in conjunction with supporting Army aircraft and elements of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon.

*c.* Occasionally the platoon team conducts semi-independent or independent reconnaissance missions. Situations which may require this are—

(1) When the troop is performing a security mission and the platoon team is required to perform reconnaissance between the troop and the force being protected.

(2) When the platoon team is given a separate reconnaissance mission by the troop commander, such as reconnaissance of a route or zone over which the troop or squadron expects to move.

(3) When the troop is assigned a reconnaissance mission of routes or areas which are widely separated.

*d.* Information of the enemy and terrain must be reported accurately, and it must be timely. The spot report form (app. III, FM 17–1) should be used by all elements in reporting enemy information. An SOP should be developed to expedite reports concerning the terrain, such as those which may be required during an engineer-type route reconnaissance.

*e.* An aggressive search for information of the enemy provides a great measure of security for the platoon team. Individuals must be designated to observe to the front, to the flanks, and to the rear. Vehicular

weapons must be manned. Lateral reconnaissance is performed as directed by the platoon team leader. Proper distance and interval are maintained. Vehicles are dispersed and concealed at halts, and observers are posted to prevent surprise. Air sentinels are designated to give timely warning of the approach of hostile aircraft. Upon the approach of aircraft, vehicles will disperse and seek cover or concealment. Aircraft are not fired on unless they attack.

*f.* See paragraphs 141–159, FM 17–1, for the basic fundamentals and techniques of reconnaissance operations.

## 88. Route Reconnaissance by Platoon Team

*a. General.* In route reconnaissance (par. 148, FM 17–1), the platoon team leader uses the designated route to move the bulk of the platoon team. The frontage which the platoon team covers is determined by the critical terrain features which dominate the assigned route. In unusual situations, more than one route may be assigned the platoon team, and in this case routes also determine the frontage. Either scouts or tanks usually lead the formation (figs. 26 and 27).

(1) A tank section may lead the formation, with scouts employed on the flanks, when the platoon team is approaching a known enemy position or when it is necessary to insure the uninterrupted advance of the platoon team against small arms fire and artillery fire.

(2) A scout section may lead the formation when very little enemy action has been encountered and stealth is of primary importance; or when fields of fire are short, terrain is favorable for enemy ambush of tanks, and natural obstacles are prevalent. Maximum use should be made of the scout section's capability for rapid, quiet movement in order to accomplish the mission with as much secrecy as possible.

When engineer route reconnaissance must be performed (to determine the condition of roads and bridges and other engineer data), engineers accompany the platoon team or follow in support. All elements of the platoon team must have a working knowledge of engineer route reconnaissance as explained in FM 5–36. FM 5–34 also may serve as a useful aid. All conditions which are likely to affect the movement of friendly elements are reported.

*b. Movement During Reconnaissance.* The distance between vehicles varies with the terrain and the unit SOP. As far as possible, visual contact between succeeding elements should be maintained. The distance between elements must permit the platoon team to move at maximum speed and, at the same time, minimize the possibility of involving the entire platoon team in an ambush or a trap, or exposing all elements to

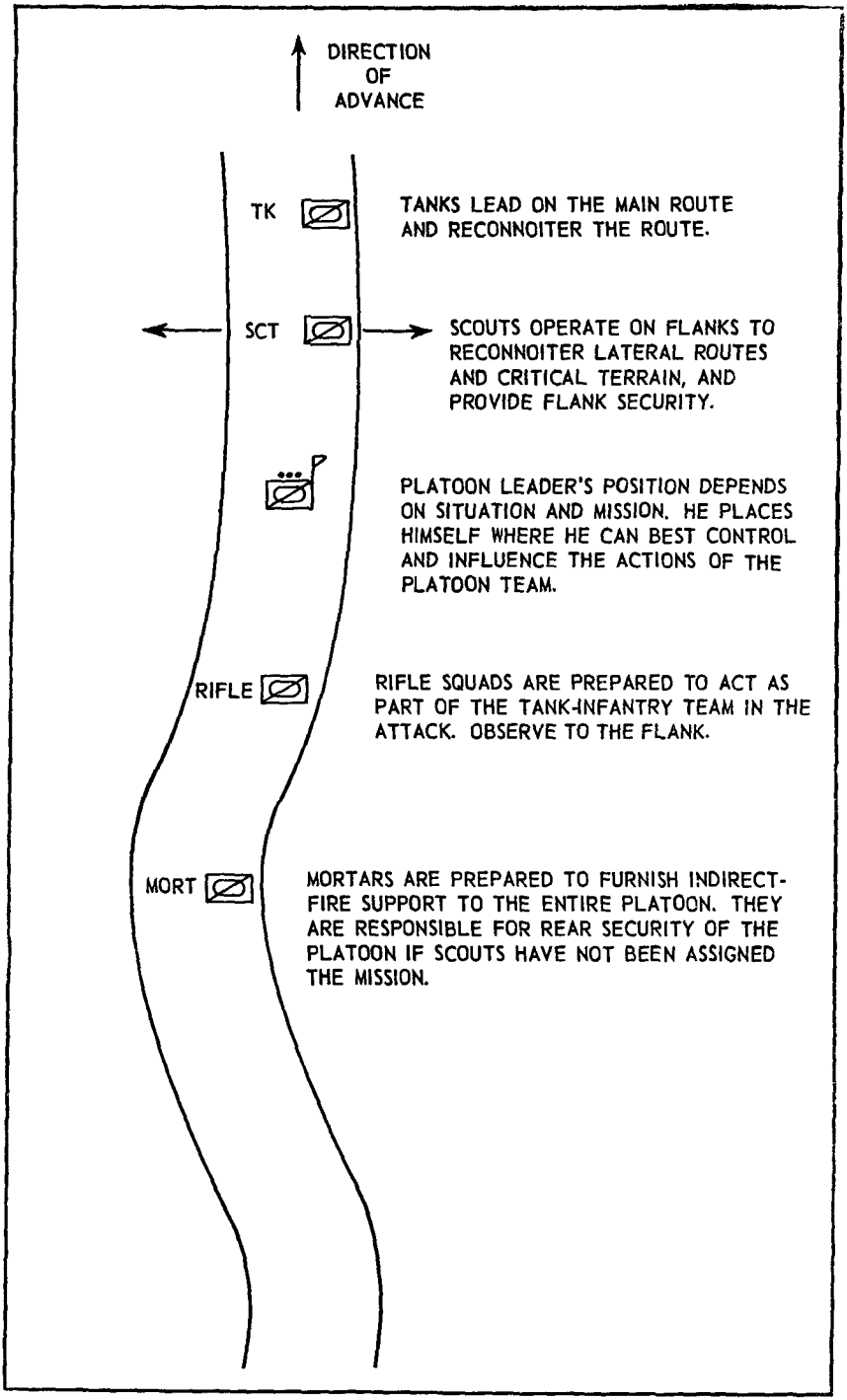



*Figure 26. Armored cavalry platoon team conducting reconnaissance—tank section leading.*

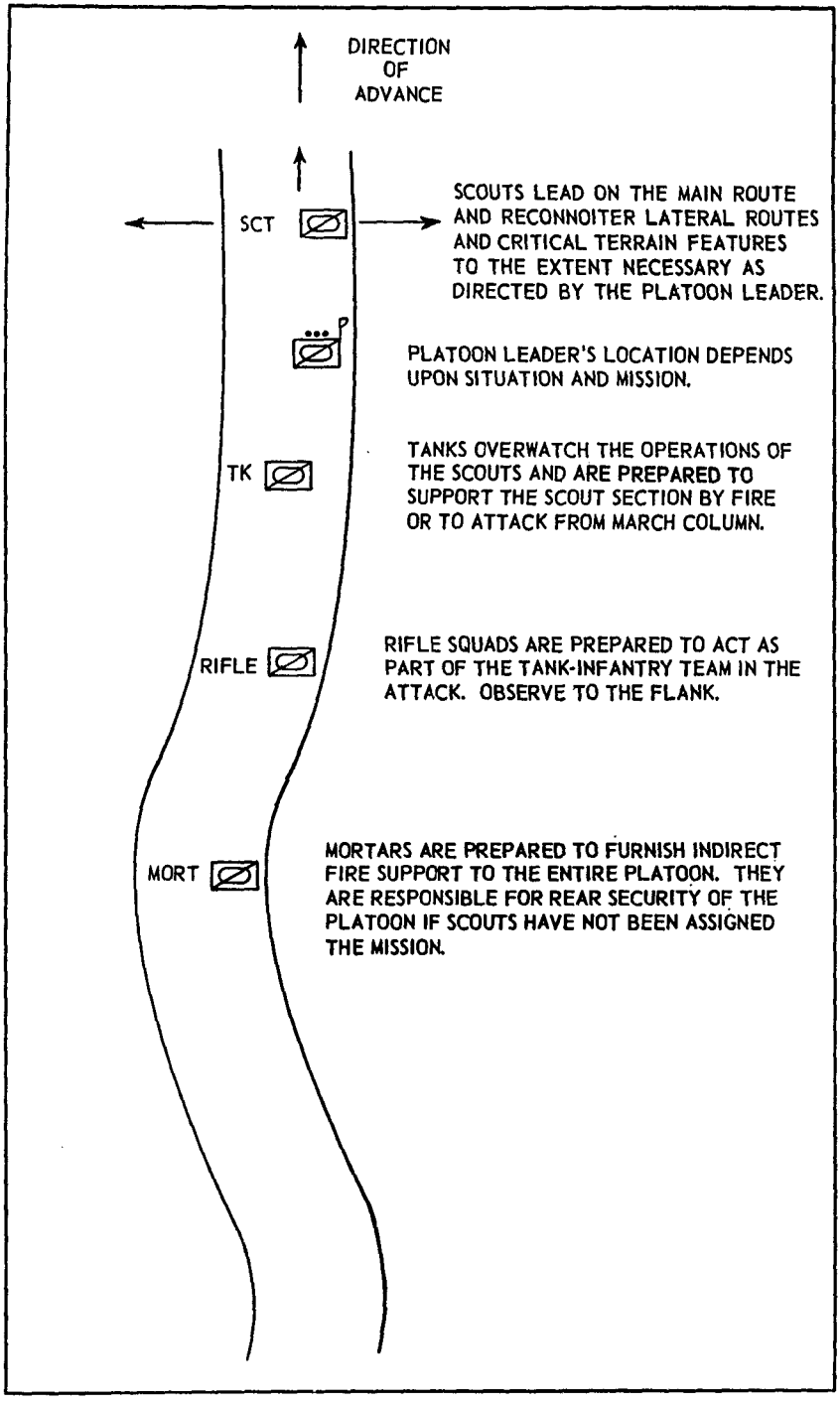



*Figure 27. Armored cavalry platoon team conducting reconnaissance—scout section leading.*

enemy fire at one time. Normally, the leading elements of the platoon team (tanks and scouts) advance by bounds from one point of observation to another (pars. 124 and 125). Bounding elements are covered by elements which immediately follow, or possibly by elements working on the flanks. Very seldom will enemy contact be so remote that leading elements can move along the assigned route without advancing by bounds. Critical terrain features on the flanks are reconnoitered by scouts. The extent to which lateral roads are checked is directed by the platoon team leader in conformance with the enemy situation and the rate of advance desired or prescribed. Leading elements are shifted to meet varying situations along the route of operation as shown by figure 28.

*c. Development of Situation.* When enemy contact is made or an obstacle is encountered, the situation must be developed quickly. Action must be taken to determine the enemy's location, strength, composition, and dispositions. Special effort is made to determine the flanks of the enemy position. Attack, mounted and dismounted reconnaissance, and reconnaissance by fire are the actions normally taken to develop the situation. Whenever the terrain permits, scout elements and/or tank elements reconnoiter the enemy position by mounted reconnaissance and reconnaissance by fire. If the terrain and enemy fire restrict vehicular movement, the position is reconnoitered by dismounted patrols from the scout sections or rifle squads. Those scout, tank, and armored infantry elements which are not performing the mobile reconnaissance, cover and assist the movement of other elements. When the resistance cannot be overcome by an attack, the platoon team leader seeks a bypass route to continue the mission. When a bypass has been found, a report should be rendered on the section of the route which the platoon team has been unable to reconnoiter, and permission should be requested to bypass. The reconnaissance must be kept moving.

## 89. Zone Reconnaissance by Platoon Team

*a. General.* The armored cavalry platoon team can most effectively perform zone reconnaissance (par. 149, FM 17–1) within a zone containing no more than one major route. The bulk of the platoon team advances in column on the best road within the zone, while scout elements perform reconnaissance of other roads and terrain features between the assigned boundaries. Factors which determine the width of the platoon team zone are the pattern of the road net, terrain features, anticipated enemy action, and the time available to accomplish the mission. The platoon team frontage is determined by the assigned boundaries. Elements of the platoon team advancing in column are positioned according to the principles noted for route reconnaissance (figs. 26 and 27).

*b. Movement During Reconnaissance.* Movement of the platoon team on the main route is generally the same as that for route reconnaissance.

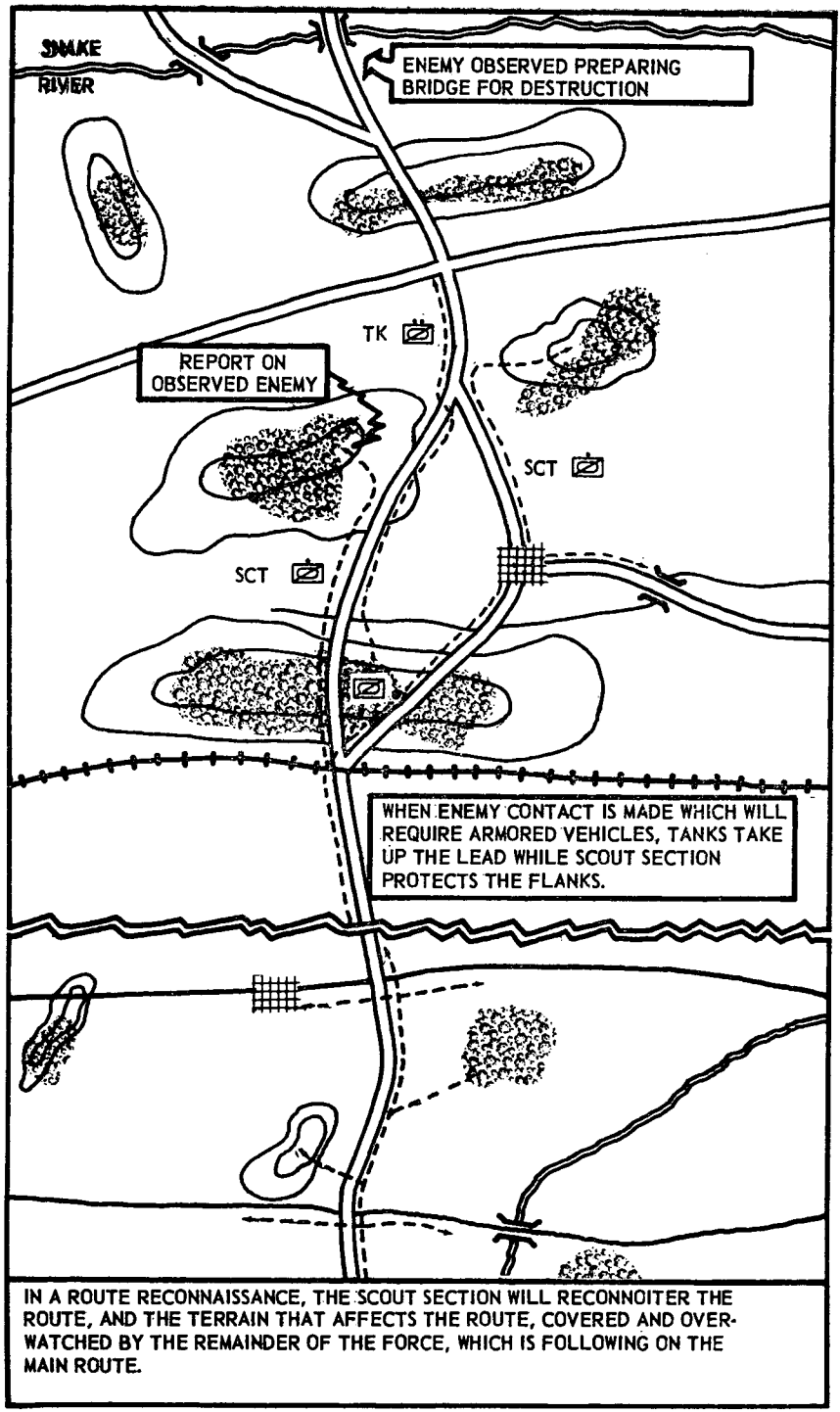



*Figure 28. Armored cavalry platoon team executing route reconnaissance.*

Movement is slower, because zone reconnaissance is more thorough and time-consuming. Scout elements must be given time to reconnoiter to the platoon team's established boundaries and to reconnoiter all critical terrain features within the zone. Less important terrain features are reconnoitered as thoroughly as time permits or the situation requires. During a zone reconnaissance, scout elements more often are required to move along the flank or flanks of the platoon team column and do not have time to work laterally from the main route as shown in figure 29.

*c. Development of Situation.* When enemy contact is made or an obstacle is encountered, the situation is developed in the same manner as for route reconnaissance. Since the platoon team leader is usually more concerned with gathering information of enemy locations or suitable routes within his zone, his freedom to bypass is greater than for route reconnaissance.

## 90. Area Reconnaissance by Platoon Team

*a. General.* The armored cavalry platoon team conducts an area reconnaissance (par. 150, FM 17–1) by first moving over the most direct route to the area to be reconnoitered. The reconnaissance is then conducted using the same general technique as that used for a zone reconnaissance. Usually the platoon team leader is permitted to select the route to the area; however, he may be directed to follow a specific route. The platoon team leader should also select the best entrance to the area if it can be approached from several directions.

*b. Movement to the Area To Be Reconnoitered.* In moving from the position where the mission was assigned to the area to be reconnoitered, the platoon team assumes a formation which will permit rapid, secure movement. This formation is basically the same as that which the platoon team would use for route reconnaissance. Enemy resistance which is met while moving to the area must be quickly overrun or bypassed.

*c. Movement During Reconnaissance.* See figure 30.

## 91. Reconnaissance by Fire by Platoon Team

*a. General.* In an attempt to cause the enemy to disclose his presence by movement or by return fire during any combat situation, elements of the platoon team may make use of reconnaissance by fire (par. 151, FM 17–1). Situations in which the platoon team might use reconnaissance by fire during reconnaissance missions are as follows:

(1) When time does not allow complete reconnaissance coverage of all terrain features which could contain enemy positions.

(2) When the platoon team is confronted by a likely enemy position which it must pass in full view or must enter, and time does not allow envelopment or dismounted reconnaissance.

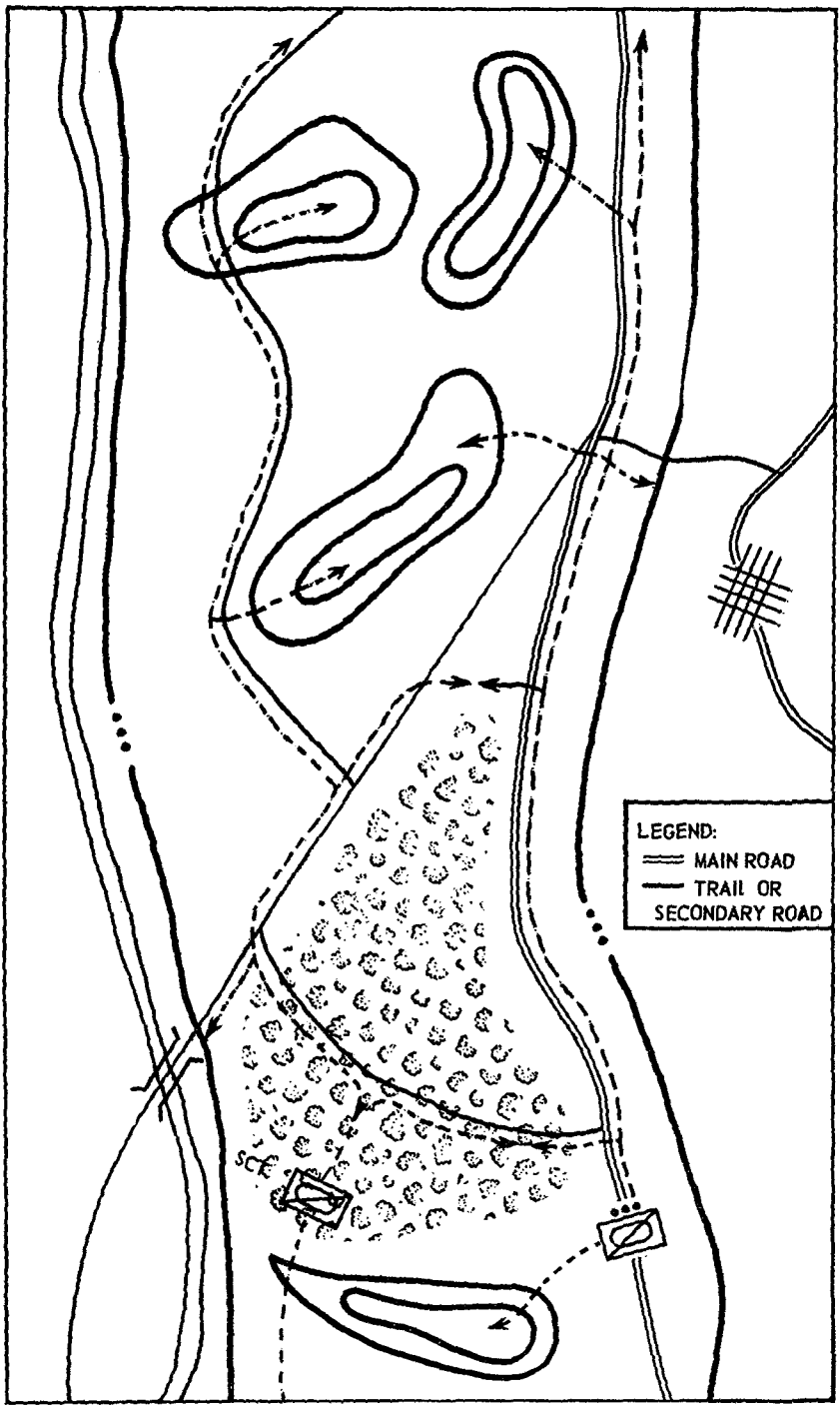



*Figure 29. Armored cavalry platoon team executing zone reconnaissance.*

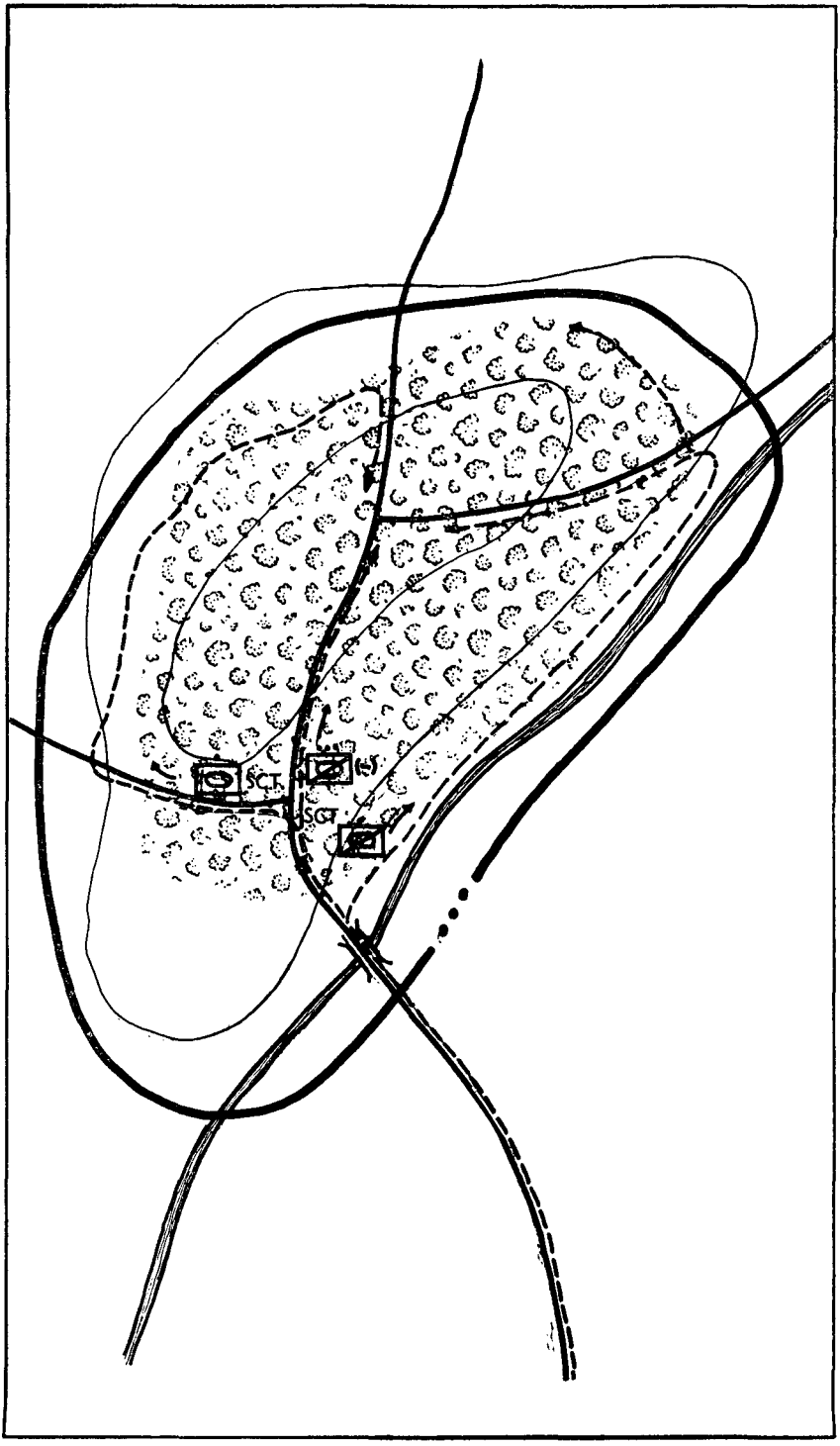



*Figure 30. Armored cavalry platoon team executing area reconnaissance.*

*b. Reconnaissance by Tank Fire.* The machine guns are normally used in preference to the main gun for reconnaissance by fire. The main gun may be used sparingly in areas where enemy armored forces have been encountered or expected, the intent being to draw enemy tank fire. The coaxial machine gun can be effectively used for reconnaissance by fire at ranges up to 700 yards. The cupola-mounted machine gun can be effectively used at greater ranges than the coaxial machine gun. Both may be used at short ranges. The tank crew is better protected from return fire than other elements of the platoon team. Coupled with scouts to observe the effect, tanks provide an excellent means of conducting reconnaissance by fire.

*c. Reconnaissance by Scout and Armored Infantry Small Arms Fire.* The small arms of the scout sections or the rifle squads can be used to conduct reconnaissance by fire. The armored personnel carrier machine gun can also be used. Scout machine guns are effective at short ranges, and coordination can be easily maintained between the firing element and the observing element.

*d. Reconnaissance by Mortar Fire.* When the platoon team does not want to disclose its position, reconnaissance by mortar fire can be used in an attempt to cause the enemy to disclose his presence by movement alone. After scouts have selected a point from which to observe the selected impact area, fire is delivered by mortars from a defiladed area.

## 92. Employment of Platoon Team as Part of a Larger Force Conducting Reconnaissance

*a.* The armored cavalry platoon team often is employed as part of a larger force which is conducting a reconnaissance mission. If the reconnaissance frontage is very great, the platoon team executes semi-independent reconnaissance missions as previously mentioned; however, if the frontage is so narrow that two or more platoon teams may be on a single route, more thorough coordination is necessary. The composition of each platoon team may be changed by the force commander to meet each situation.

*b.* During the course of a reconnaissance mission, the larger force may be required to form its task organization into platoon teams to conduct the reconnaissance effectively. Each team will be directed to perform its part of the reconnaissance mission as discussed in paragraphs 245–251. Platoon teams may be formed as—

(1) Balanced teams on secondary routes which are very close to the main route.
(2) A scout-heavy team as the leading team.
(3) A tank-heavy or armored-infantry-heavy team to provide an attack element.
(4) A tank-heavy team as the leading element.

## Section VI. PLATOON TEAM IN SECURITY MISSIONS

### 93. General

*a.* Armored cavalry platoon teams frequently are organized to accomplish security missions. The frontages over which armored cavalry units normally operate require platoon teams to act semi-independently in the accomplishment of most security missions.

*b.* See paragraphs 160–178, FM 17–1, for the basic fundamentals and techniques to be used by security forces.

### 94. Platoon Team as Advance Guard

*a. General.* To accomplish an advance guard mission, the platoon team normally consists of tank, armored infantry, and scout elements. However, situations may arise which require other variations of the platoon team. A platoon team usually operates as an advance guard for the reconnaissance troop.

*b. Formation.* The platoon team employs an advance-to-contact formation very similar to the formation used in performing route reconnaissance (par. 88). Tank and armored infantry elements advance in column until contact is made, while scout elements perform flank security or perform as lead elements. When enemy contact is imminent, tanks should be the leading element. Mortars should be under troop control.

*c. Conduct.* The platoon team must move rapidly and aggressively to maintain the prescribed interval between itself and the main body. The rate of march of the main body and the distance between the platoon team and the main body will be prescribed by the troop commander. The leading elements of the platoon team normally move by bounds. When an enemy force is encountered (normally direct fire from an enemy position), the platoon team leader should immediately move the platoon team to the most favorable position for employment, report the enemy contact to his higher headquarters, develop the situation, choose a course of action, and report the situation which has been developed and his course of action. The platoon team attacks and destroys the enemy force if possible, although care must be taken to avoid defeat before the main force can intervene.

### 95. Platoon Team as Flank Guard

*a. General.* The platoon team may expect to perform flank security missions more frequently than other types of security missions. It normally executes a flank guard mission as part of a larger force; however, it may be required to provide flank security for the troop or squadron. A platoon team may provide flank guard security for the troop or squadron while the latter is on a security or other type mission.

*b. Platoon Team as Part of a Troop Conducting Flank Guard.*

(1) When the platoon team is the leading element of a troop conducting flank guard, it has a threefold mission: secure the troop route of advance, maintain contact with the main body, and reconnoiter the area between the flank of the main body and the troop route of advance. The platoon team leader normally assigns a scout section the mission of maintaining contact with the main body and of reconnoitering the area between the main body and the troop route of advance. Contact is maintained by radio and by physical contact. The section executes zone reconnaissance between the flank of the main body and the troop route of advance. The remainder of the platoon team moves on the troop route of advance, employing advance guard tactics.

(2) When the platoon team is not the leading element, it moves in column formation along the troop route of advance as directed by the troop commander. Each platoon team is responsible for its own flanks. The platoon team must be prepared to seize and occupy blocking positions uncovered by the leading element. When directed to occupy a blocking position, the platoon team establishes a defensive position suitable for delaying action. Contact is established with adjacent units, and observation posts are established. If the platoon team is attacked, it holds the position until authorized to withdraw by the troop commander.

*c. Platoon Team as a Separate Flank Guard.* A platoon team may provide flank security for a larger unit by occupying a series of blocking positions that dominate likely avenues of enemy approach into the flank. The platoon team normally governs its movement on the advance of the main body; however, it may move at the direction of the main body commander. The platoon team can effectively occupy one blocking position at a time. Additional coverage of the flank can be obtained by establishing observation posts and working in conjunction with Army aircraft. If the advance of the main body is against light resistance and the movement is characterized by frequent halts of short duration, the platoon team moves by bounds along its selected route.

## 96. Platoon Team as Rear Guard

*a. Platoon Team as Part of a Troop Conducting Rear Guard.* As part of a troop providing rear guard, the platoon must be prepared to conduct delaying action (pars. 76–86). The platoon team may occupy a portion of a troop delaying position or may establish a platoon delaying position. The platoon leader organizes the delaying position around the tank elements, and uses scouts to reconnoiter to the rear and flanks.

*b. Platoon Team as a Separate Rear Guard for an Advancing Force.* The platoon team may provide the rear guard for an advancing troop or squadron. When the main body is advancing, the platoon team detects or delays hostile forces attacking the rear of the main body, protects the trains, and collects stragglers. The platoon team follows the main body at a distance prescribed by the main body commander and usually moves on the same route of advance. Scout elements are best used to the flanks to detect enemy forces which attempt to move between the platoon team and the main body.

*c. Platoon Team as a Separate Rear Guard for a Withdrawing Force.* When the platoon team provides rear guard for a withdrawing troop or squadron, it employs delaying action tactics and withdraws by bounds. The rate of movement is based on that of the main body or on prearranged plans. The platoon team executes the rear guard mission by moving along the route over which the main body has moved, keeping itself between the main body and the enemy. The platoon team leader selects a series of delaying positions along the route and withdraws by bounds from one delaying position to the next. The area to the flanks must be kept under surveillance by scouts and available Army aircraft to prevent an enemy force from bypassing a platoon team delaying position. The platoon team leader maintains communication with the main body to insure that his movement is governed by that of the main body and to insure timely reports of enemy actions. The platoon team normally keeps at least one delaying position behind the main body.

## 97. Platoon Team as Screening Force

*a. General.* The platoon team may be used as a screening force when an extended frontage cannot be secured in force by the troop or squadron. When assigned this type mission, the platoon team protects an area or a body of troops from surprise by observing and reporting enemy activity. Within its capability, it destroys small patrols that enter the screen. The platoon team employs a screening technique when it is a part of an outpost system.

*b. Planning and Conduct.* The platoon team leader establishes a series of observation posts, covering the platoon team sector by observation. He uses patrols between the observation posts. Normally, tank elements are used to counter small enemy patrols rather than to establish an observation post. They are held centrally, or they may be positioned to cover a likely avenue of armor approach. The tanks also support the OPs by fire and assist in their withdrawal if necessary. Each OP should have radio communication, transportation, at least three men, and an automatic weapon. The number of OPs established is normally based on the number of scout and rifle squads available. When more OPs must be established, available support (mortar) squads and a portion of a rifle

squad mounted in the platoon team leader's ¼-ton truck can be used. When a support squad is present, it is located near the center of the platoon team position, where it can provide fire support as well as man an OP. Helicopter-lifted observation posts may be established on critical points at a considerable distance from the platoon team screen. The platoon team accomplishes its mission by observing, reporting, and maintaining contact with hostile forces. The platoon team leader maneuvers his OPs in order to maintain contact. Figure 31 illustrates typical platoon team dispositions for a screen mission.

## 98. Platoon Team as Rear Area Security Force

*a. General.* The platoon team protects rear-area units and installations, or guards lines of communication and supply, when conducting a rear area security mission.

*b. Rear Area Units and Installations.* When the larger armored cavalry force is conducting any one of its primary missions, the platoon team may be organized to protect a command post or a unit trains area. The platoon team may also be assigned a separate installation to protect as part of a rear area security force. Supply or atomic weapon delivery sites may be the type installation protected under these circumstances. Normally the platoon team accomplishes this type mission by patrolling and by establishing observation posts which cover all approaches to the unit or installation, using screening techniques.

*c. Rear Area Lines of Communication and Supply.* The platoon team may be given the mission of securing a supply route or escorting the trains of a larger unit. The platoon team may secure a supply route by patrolling as a unit or by establishing observation posts along the route, using scout elements, and patrolling the route with the remainder of the platoon team. When escorting trains, the platoon team may travel at the head of the column, or it may be interspersed throughout the column.

## 99. Platoon Team in Rear Area Security as Part of a Larger Force

*a. General.* When the platoon team participates in rear area security as part of a larger force, it may be employed as a security, reconnaissance, attack, or defense element.

*b. Protecting Lines of Communication.* The larger force may be given the mission of securing a supply route or escorting trains of a larger unit along a designated route. In the performance of this type mission, the platoon team may be required to—

(1) Patrol the assigned route.

(2) Protect a sector of the route by establishing a series of observation posts.

(3) Act as the reserve, or as part of the reserve.

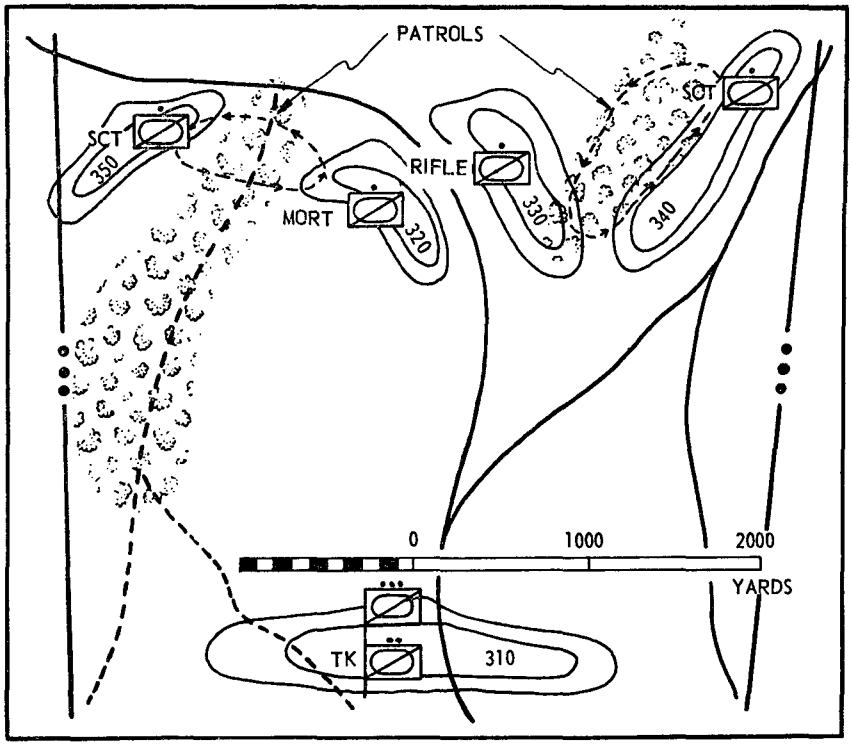



*Figure 31. Armored cavalry platoon team—scout section, tank section, rifle squad, support squad—employed as a screening force.*

(4) Lead a trains column along the route.

(5) Follow or take a position within the trains column.

*c. Protecting Units and Installations.* The larger force may be given the mission of securing a particular unit or installation. In the performance of this type mission the platoon team may be required to—

(1) Screen a sector of the perimeter.

(2) Act as part of the reserve or striking force.

*d. Protecting Rear Areas Against Airborne Attack.* The larger force may be given the mission of protecting a rear area against airborne attack. In the performance of this type mission the platoon team may be required to—

(1) Outpost and patrol likely drop zones.

(2) Act as part of a central reserve.

# CHAPTER 8

# LIGHT-GUN TANK PLATOON AND SECTION

## 100. General

*a.* The light-gun tank platoon of the armored cavalry squadron is very similar to the medium-gun tank platoon discussed in FM 17–33. The light-gun tank platoon utilizes the smallest tank of the tank family and is organized and equipped for missions requiring speed and maneuverability.

*b.* Light-gun tank sections of the reconnaissance platoon, infantry division, also operate along the lines discussed in FM 17–33. See also chapter 7 and part three.

## 101. Employment of Light-Gun Tank Platoon

*a.* The light-gun tank platoon is the principal offensive element of the armored division reconnaissance troop. The tank possesses great firepower, shock action, and mobility, and provides armor protection for its crew. The tank platoon is employed to gain decisive results for the troop.

*b.* In the performance of its missions, the platoon may operate as a unit or as part of a platoon team. When operating as part of a platoon team, the platoon is normally reinforced with other units to form a combined-arms team. The size and composition of the platoon team depend upon the mission and the frontage assigned. The normal attachments are scout and armored infantry elements.

*c.* The light-gun tank platoon is employed—

(1) To lead the attack whenever possible.
(2) To support the advance of other units by direct fire.
(3) To perform mounted reconnaissance as part of a platoon team.
(4) To support a dismounted attack by destroying or neutralizing enemy weapons.
(5) To establish roadblocks.
(6) To destroy enemy tanks.
(7) To constitute the unit's primary counterattack force.
(8) As a security detachment, with or without reinforcements.

*d.* The light-gun tank platoon leader should bear the following factors in mind when applying the techniques of operation covered in FM 17–33 to his unit. The light-gun tank platoon—

(1) Is more frequently attached in less than platoon strength.
(2) Has an organic ¼-ton truck from which the platoon leader may control the platoon.
(3) Will often face superior armor when it is confronted by enemy tanks.
(4) Is more frequently used on reconnaissance and security missions.
(5) More frequently works with less than a platoon of armored infantry as a tank-infantry team.
(6) Must move faster, farther, and more continuously.
(7) Frequently operates more independently.

*e.* For a discussion of the methods of employing the light-gun tank platoon as part of the troop, see part three.

## 102. Tank Platoon in Attack

Normally, the light-gun tank platoon attacks as part of the reconnaissance troop. When forming the nucleus of a platoon team it often attacks alone. The platoon is employed as a unit whenever possible.

## 103. Tank Platoon in Defense

The light-gun tank platoon is rarely employed independently in defensive missions. It normally is reinforced with scout and armored infantry elements and defends as part of the troop.

## 104. Tank Platoon in Delaying Action

The light-gun tank platoon seldom conducts a delaying action alone. The platoon normally functions as a part of the troop, or as part of an armored cavalry platoon team.

## 105. Tank Platoon in Reconnaissance Missions

In the execution of reconnaissance missions, the light-gun tank platoon normally advances behind scout elements along a route which allows it to move quickly to support the scouts should enemy forces be encountered which cannot be overrun or bypassed. The platoon normally functions as organized or as part of an armored cavalry platoon team. Reconnaissance frontages may frequently require the tank platoon to detach a section.

## 106. Tank Platoon in Security Missions

In the execution of a security mission, the light-gun tank platoon normally functions as part of the troop. The platoon can be employed with or without reinforcements. Security frontages may frequently require the platoon to detach a section.

# CHAPTER 9

# ARMORED RIFLE PLATOON AND SQUAD

## 107. General

*a.* The armored rifle platoon of the armored division reconnaissance troop is similar to the armored rifle platoon discussed in FM 17–20.

*b.* The rifle squad of the reconnaissance platoon, infantry division, also operates along the lines discussed in FM 17–20. See also chapter 7 and part three.

## 108. Employment of Armored Rifle Platoon

*a.* The armored rifle platoon constitutes the armored infantry element of the troop. Its armored personnel carriers provide armor protection to the mounted squads and enable the squads to accompany tanks in a rapid advance.

*b.* The platoon may be employed as a platoon or may be organized into a team of armored infantry, tanks, and scouts. On occasion, it may operate as an independent dismounted force or participate in air-lifted operations. For detailed discussion of the operations of an armored rifle platoon, see FM 17–20. The size and composition of the platoon team depend upon the mission and the frontage assigned.

*c.* The armored rifle platoon may—

(1) Accompany tanks in offensive action.

(2) Close with and destroy dismounted enemy.

(3) Participate in reconnaissance and security missions.

(4) Reduce and establish obstacles, supported by tanks and other elements.

(5) Organize and defend ground, supported by other elements.

(6) Be air-lifted to seize critical terrain or to perform reconnaissance.

(7) Perform security or reconnaissance on terrain which is not accessible to other elements because of water or other obstacles.

(8) Perform limited pioneer and demolition work.

*d.* The armored rifle platoon leader should bear the following facts in mind when applying the techniques of operation covered in FM 17–20 to his unit. The armored rifle platoon of the reconnaissance troop—

(1) Is more frequently attached in less than platoon strength.

(2) Has an organic ¼-ton truck from which the platoon leader may control the platoon.

(3) Does not have an organic machine gun squad.

(4) Is more frequently used on reconnaissance and security missions.

(5) Must move faster, farther, and more continuously.

(6) Frequently operates more independently.

*e.* For a discussion of the methods of employing the armored rifle platoon as part of the troop, see part three.

## 109. Armored Infantry Units in Attack

*a.* Normally the armored rifle platoon attacks as part of the reconnaissance troop. The platoon is employed as a unit whenever possible.

*b.* A separate rifle squad attacks as part of an armored cavalry platoon team, or as part of a provisional armored rifle platoon.

## 110. Armored Infantry Units in Defense

*a.* The armored rifle platoon normally is employed as part of the troop. The platoon is employed as a unit whenever possible; however, squads may be detached to form armored cavalry platoon teams.

*b.* A separate rifle squad defends as part of an armored cavalry platoon team.

## 111. Armored Infantry Units in Delaying Action

*a.* The armored rifle platoon normally conducts delaying action as part of the troop. Squads of the platoon frequently are detached to form several armored cavalry platoon teams.

*b.* A separate rifle squad delays as part of an armored cavalry platoon team.

## 112. Armored Infantry Units in Reconnaissance Missions

*a.* In the execution of reconnaissance missions, the armored rifle platoon normally advances behind scout elements along a route which allows it to move quickly to support the scouts should enemy forces be encountered which cannot be overrun or bypassed. The platoon normally functions as part of the troop or as part of an armored cavalry platoon team. Helicopters may move the platoon to envelop enemy positions. Reconnaissance frontages may frequently require the platoon to detach squads.

*b.* A separate rifle squad performs reconnaissance as part of an armored cavalry platoon team.

## 113. Armored Infantry Units in Security Missions

*a.* In the execution of a security mission, the armored rifle platoon normally functions as part of the troop. The platoon can be employed with or without reinforcements. Security frontages may frequently require the platoon to detach one or two squads.

*b.* A separate rifle squad provides security as part of an armored cavalry platoon team.

## 114. Armored Infantry Units in Patrolling

*a.* Patrols are small tactical units employed to gain information and to insure security. The armored rifle platoon is capable of performing mounted, dismounted, and helicopterborne patrol missions in combat. Patrols are classified as combat patrols and reconnaissance patrols. See FM 21–75 for a discussion of patrol fundamentals and techniques.

*b.* The size of each patrol conducted by an armored rifle platoon generally depends on the factors of METT (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, and troops available). The number of dismounted patrols which the platoon can organize is dependent on the required size of each patrol, required communication, and the platoon strength. When there is a requirement for mounted patrolling, one or more armored personnel carriers may be used. When a mounted patrol is employed to provide security, to perform reconnaissance, or as a combat patrol, it normally contains tank and scout reinforcements unless water obstacles require a vehicular swimming capability. In conjunction with the establishment of observation posts by the platoon, mounted patrols may be employed to maintain contact and provide security between OPs. In this case, a squad or a squad fire team normally conducts the mounted patrol in the squad armored personnel carrier.

*c.* The disposition of vehicles for dismounted patrolling must be carefully considered. The driver provides individual vehicle security when an entire squad is on a dismounted patrol. In addition, vehicles must be protected by some portion of the troop when their crews are not present. If the mission of a dismounted patrol requires stealth and secrecy, the dismounted point must be located far enough to the rear to prevent detection.

## 115. Armored Infantry Units Establishing Observation Posts

The selection and techniques of operation of observation posts are discussed in detail for the scout platoon (pars. 126–128) and are generally applicable to armored infantry. In establishing an observation post, the rifle squad and scout squad have similar capabilities. The rifle squad normally establishes one OP; however, two OPs may be established by

employing one squad fire team with the ground portable radios, and the other squad fire team with the vehicular-mounted radio.

## 116. Armored Infantry Units in Pioneering

*a. General.* Elements of the armored rifle platoon frequently are required to perform pioneer work in conjunction with their assigned mission. Pioneer work consists of rough and hasty engineering work in the field, including demolition, to facilitate the movement of friendly troops or to impede the movement of hostile troops. The ability to perform pioneer work during delaying actions, security missions, and defense is particularly important. When armored infantry are specifically ordered to perform pioneer work, they normally are required to install protective and/or defensive minefields, construct log obstacles, blow craters, detroy small bridges and buildings, clear mines and demolitions, disrupt transportation or communication systems, or destroy equipment and supplies. Obstacles are sited not only to obstruct and delay the enemy, but also to surprise, disrupt, and confuse him. They compel him to exercise caution and to dismount and reconnoiter all locations where an obstacles might be placed. Armored rifle platoon leaders and squad leaders should make frequent references to FM 5–34 for information concerning pioneer work.

*b. Equipment.* Organic equipment which the armored infantry can effectively use to perform pioneer work includes—

(1) Axe, shovel, and machete.

(2) Demolition equipment set number 5.

(3) Gasoline cans.

(4) Armored personnel carrier (for transportation of all available pioneer equipment and materials).

*c. Demolitions.* Demolition work must be well coordinated with all elements concerned. A priority of demolition work, based upon the terrain and enemy, should be established. Armored infantry may use demolitions most effectively in constructing abatis, blowing bridges, and cratering roads.

*d. Mines.* Armored infantry frequently may install protective and/or defensive minefields when authorized to do so. Minefield records and reports must be made according to FM 20–32.

## 117. Helicopterborne Operations by Armored Infantry Units

*a.* The armored rifle platoon or squad may be transported by air in helicopters which are organic to higher headquarters. In the performance of assigned missions, armored infantry may be air-landed behind enemy lines or may be withdrawn by air from behind enemy lines (pars. 152–155).

*b.* In any situation which requires the armored infantry unit to be transported by air, the following items must be considered:

(1) Standard unit loading plans must be prepared in advance. These must be sufficiently flexible to permit rapid changes based on the aircraft assigned for a particular mission.

(2) Tactical integrity of units should be maintained.

(3) Personnel and equipment not required for the mission should be left behind.

(4) Speed in loading and unloading aircraft must be developed.

(5) Unit leaders must be familiar with landing site requirements and with air-ground visual communication.

# CHAPTER 10

# SCOUT PLATOON AND SECTION

## Section I. GENERAL

### 118. General

The missions and characteristics of all scout platoons and scout sections are generally the same, regardlesss of the type unit to which they are organic. They are all assigned missions which require attack, defense, delaying action, and reconnaissance and security operations. The frequency of particular type missions and the speed with which they are performed will depend somewhat upon the type parent unit. This chapter discusses the techniques applicable to all scout platoons and sections.

### 119. Employment of Scout Platoon

*a.* The scout platoon which is organic to the armored division reconnaissance troop can be employed most effectively as a unit; however, in some situations the mission will require that sections be detached and attached to other platoons to form armored cavalry platoon teams. The scout platoon is capable of receiving attachments of tanks and armored infantry to form a platoon team.

*b.* The scout platoon which is organic to units other than the reconnaissance troop normally is employed as a unit. It may be reinforced with tanks and armored infantry to enable it to accomplish assigned missions.

### 120. Employment of Scout Section

The scout section normally is employed as a unit. Although the mission assigned to a scout section may require that its squads be separated, the section leader should be allowed to control the action of both squads whenever possible. The scout section is capable of operating in conjunction with a combined-arms team. The following factors which affect this capability must be taken into consideration:

*a.* The vehicles of the scout section contrast sharply with the armor-protected and full-track vehicles of other elements of the combined-arms team with which the section will normally be operating.

*b.* The wheeled vehicles of the scout section are limited in their cross-country mobility. Under certain conditions, the scout elements may not

be able to accompany the tracked vehicles, but will be required to follow another route to the assigned objective.

*c.* Battle conditions, such as enemy artillery and small-arms fire and the use of atomic weapons, may also prevent these vehicles from operating in areas where armor-protected carriers and tanks can operate with a reasonable degree of safety.

*d.* Maintenance is not as time-consuming, and the fuel requirements are not as great, for wheeled vehicles as they are for the tracked vehicles with which the scout elements will be working; therefore, the scout elements can be expected to move farther and for longer periods of time.

### 121. Training of Scout Units

To perform their normally assigned missions, scout platoons and sections must be trained to accomplish the following:

*a.* Function as a unit with or without detachments.

*b.* Form the nucleus or act as part of a combined-arms team.

*c.* Function as dismounted riflemen or machine gun squads.

*d.* Establish observation posts and conduct patrols.

*e.* Perform pioneer work.

*f.* Function as an air-transported unit.

### 122. Loading of Equipment of Scout Units

Detailed planning of the loading of equipment within each scout squad is essential to insure combat efficiency. Weapons, radios, supplies, and personal equipment must be loaded carefully so that they are secure and are accessible when needed, and so that personnel can ride in the most comfortable manner. Packs, radios, machine gun and ground mount, ammunition, rations, rocket launcher, and individual weapons must have specific places and, if necessary, a method of tie-down. Since there are differences in the items of equipment authorized to scout squads, each squad should make its own loading plan to suit its equipment and needs.

## Section II. COMBAT OPERATIONS OF SCOUT UNITS, GENERAL

### 123. General

The techniques used by scout platoons and sections in accomplishing their missions should be standardized as much as possible. However, the techniques must be used flexibly to meet the situations encountered. This section prescribes techniques which may be used by scout elements in performing attack, defense, delay, reconnaissance, and security operations.

## 124. Ground Movement to Contact by Scout Units

*a. General.* The scout platoon and scout section frequently may be required to lead an advance to contact in the performance of their missions, either alone or as part of a larger force. Ground movement to contact by scout elements combines mounted movement with dismounted movement to insure stealth, security, observation, and protection against enemy observation and fire. All scout elements must master the technique of ground movement.

*b. Formations.* Figure 32 illustrates several basic formations which the scout platoon and scout section can use effectively during movement. The formation must remain flexible so that each new situation may be met effectively. The relation of the formation to the parent unit will be dictated by the mission—front, flank, or rear.

*c. Movement by Bounds.* Mounted scout elements work in pairs and move by bounds. This applies to vehicles within the squad, to squads within the section, or to sections within the platoon. When enemy contact is imminent, one element (preferably an element with radio communication) remains stationary and covers the movement of the other with observation and weapons (fig. 33). This procedure assists in spotting enemy fire, furnishes fires to cover the movement of leading vehicles, and insures rapid transmission of information. The basic techniques of movement employed by a scout squad are as follows:

(1) Before moving, the scout element must determine its next position and the most favorable route to it. During movement, the scout elements must move as rapidly as the situation will permit, and must be on the alert for enemy traps, cover, and routes of withdrawal to cover and concealment.

(2) When approaching a position which will afford new areas of observation, the commander of the leading vehicle should stop his vehicle and dismount to prevent enemy forces beyond the position from detecting his presence. At this time, the fundamentals of individual movement as discussed in FM 21–75 must be followed. When the position is secure, the overwatching scout elements are motioned forward.

(3) Personnel must be trained not to be vehicle-bound. To provide security when the vehicle is stationary and to prevent enemy detection, personnel must dismount frequently.

(4) The distance of each bound is determined by the nature of the terrain and the range at which the covering element can effectively support the bounding element. This distance usually should not exceed 700 yards when only small-arms fire is available for support, but may be considerably extended if tanks are supporting.

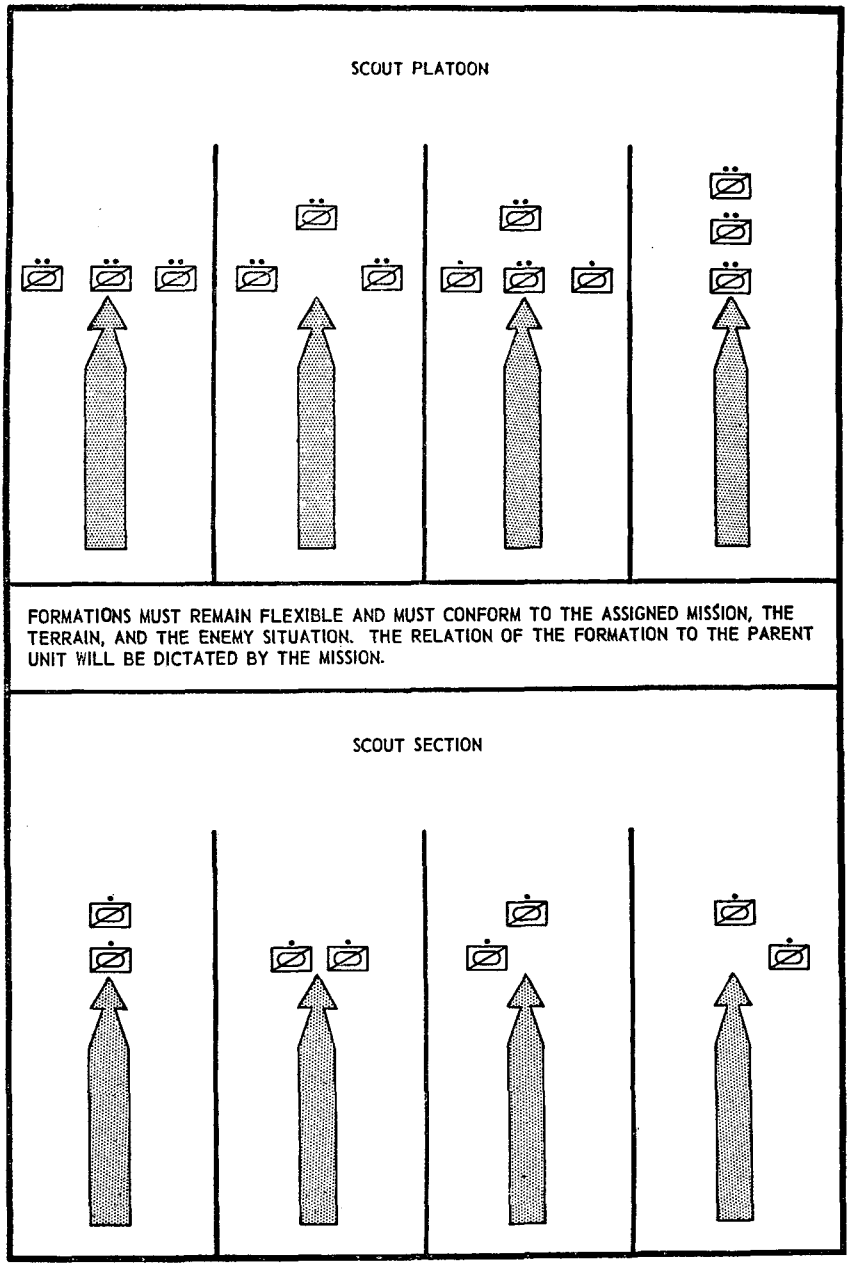



*Figure 32. Scout platoon and scout section formations.*

(5) The planning and movement of each bound must be rapid; however, it should not be so hasty that efficiency of operation and coordination between elements are lost.

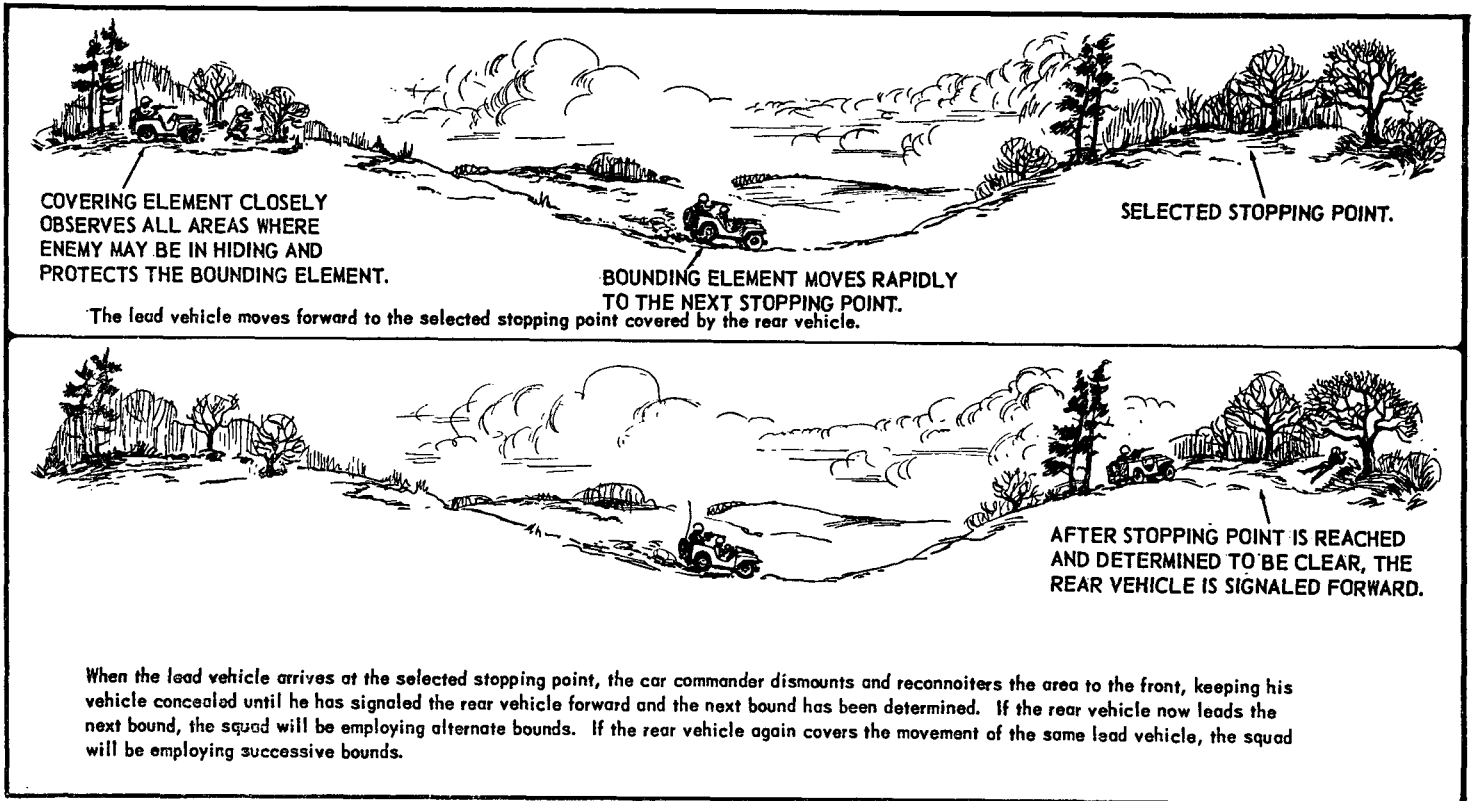



*Figure 33. Scout squad moving by bounds.*

(6) When covering elements have been signaled forward, they should take the shortest and fastest route forward to avoid delaying the continuance of movement.

(7) Movement will be oriented on the enemy, the main body, or terrain features, as directed by the commander and the mission.

When a squad, section, or platoon moves dismounted (normally in patrols), it should apply the formations and principles described in FM 21–75 and FM 17–20. All scout personnel must be skilled map readers, able to maintain direction of movement during all conditions of visibility and over all forms of terrain.

## 125. Successive and Alternate Bounds

Vehicles within a squad (fig. 33), squads within a section, or sections within a platoon may execute the advance by successive or alternate bounds.

*a. Successive Bounds* (fig. 34). In this method, the leading element, covered by the rear element, advances to the limit of the first bound and takes up positions to support the advance of the rear element. The rear element, upon arriving at a position abreast of the leading element, halts and once again supports the advance of the leading element to the limit of the second bound. The operation is then repeated. This is the slower of the two methods.

*b. Alternate Bounds* (fig. 35). In this method, the leading element halts at the limit of the first bound and takes up positions to support the advance of the rear element, which then advances to the limit of the second bound and takes up positions. The initial leading element then leapfrogs the initial rear element and advances to the limit of the third bound.

## 126. Observation by Scout Units, General

As enemy contact becomes more and more imminent, observation becomes more of a ruling factor. Movement is undertaken only after thorough observation has been accomplished. Observation by all scout personnel is a continuous process, before, during, and after movement. Observation must be a systematic process and be governed by general rules. The fundamentals of observation are as follows:

*a.* Personnel must make maximum use of their binoculars and observation telescopes.

*b.* Concealed positions should be selected which will afford good observation of the terrain to be covered. The observer will be more efficient if he is dismounted from the vehicle.

*c.* The terrain should be searched in strips as explained in FM 21–75.

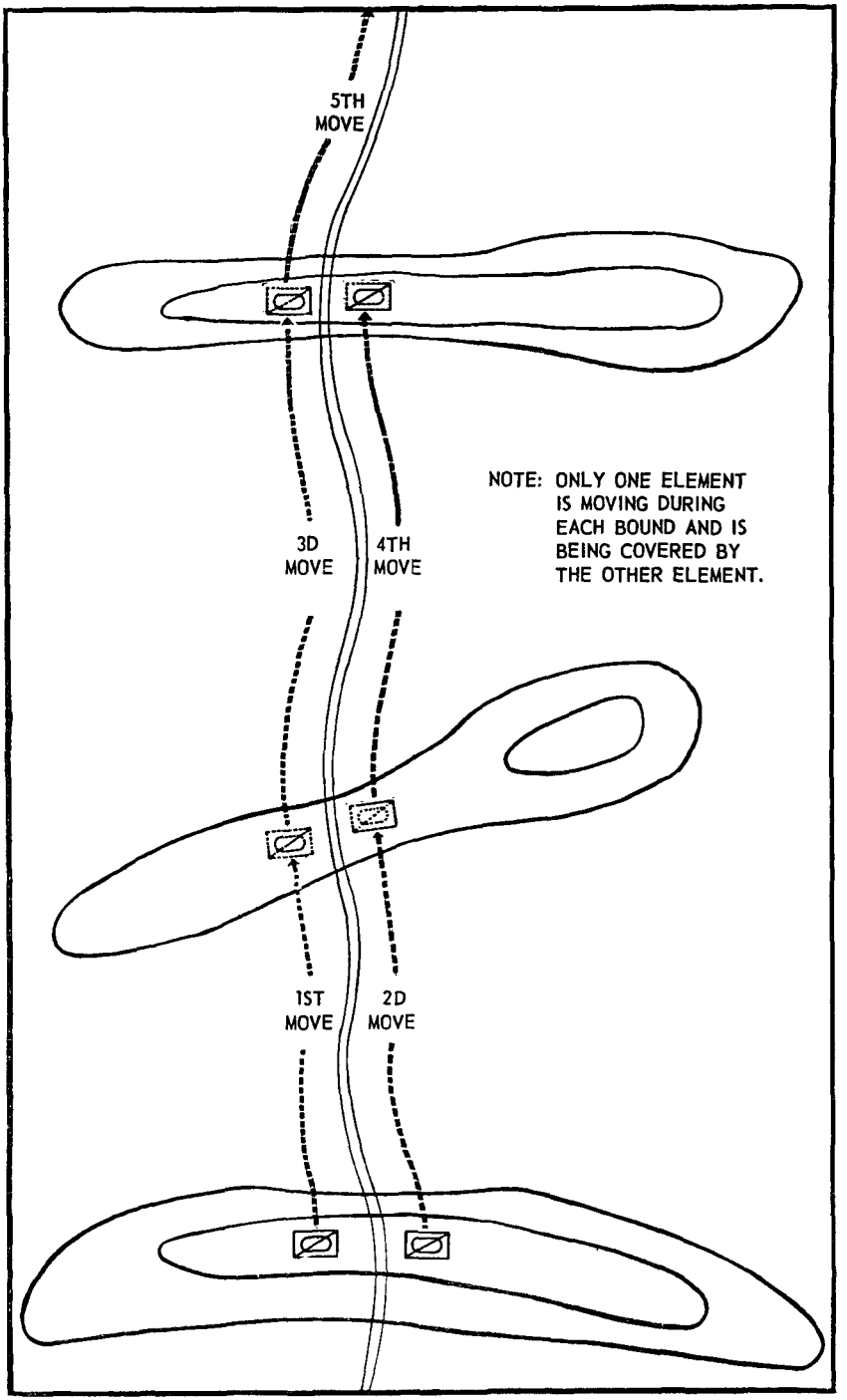



*Figure 84. Movement by successive bounds.*

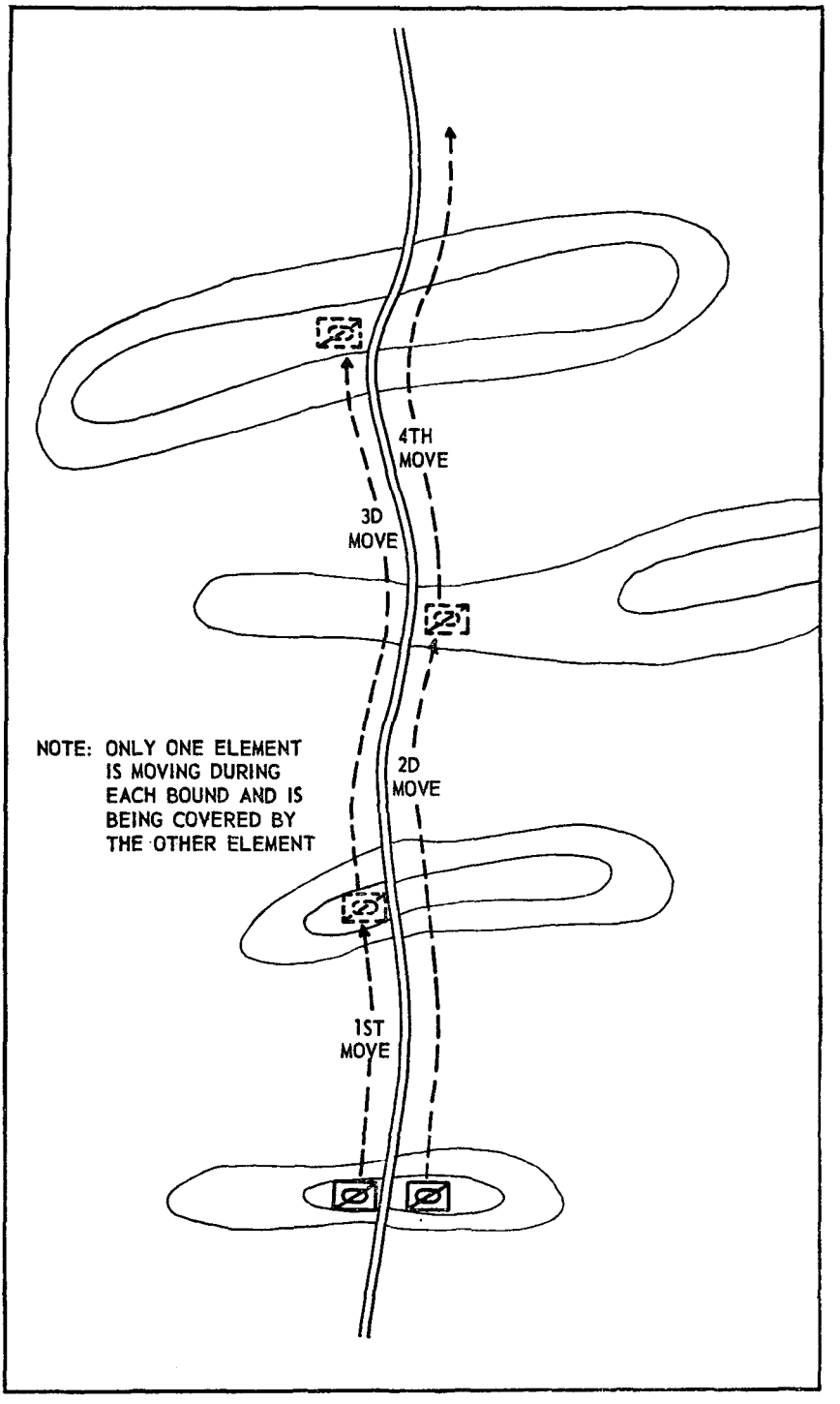



*Figure 35. Movement by alternate bounds.*

*d.* Whenever possible, two observers are used. One observer watches the terrain in general to detect unnatural movement, while the other conducts a systematic search with a binocular or observation telescope.

*e.* It is essential that all-round observation be maintained at all times. When scout personnel are mounted, this is accomplished by assigning sectors to crew members of each vehicle and to vehicles of the squad and section. Each scout unit should develop an SOP which will insure all-round observation for various methods of operation.

*f.* When the movement of other vehicles is being covered, observation must be directed at terrain from which fire is expected and not on the moving vehicles. The crews of the supporting vehicles will usually be able to detect approaching enemy or hostile fire more easily; therefore, some person on the moving vehicles must observe to the rear for signals.

*g.* Target acquisition and identification is very important to all personnel of scout units. They must be able to rapidly pick up enemy positions or movement, and they must be able to identify the target once it has been observed.

*h.* When scout units are on reconnaissance missions, all personnel must be given specific observation missions in addition to sectors which are related to enemy activity. When information of the area of operations must be reported, road conditions, bridge capacities, fields of fire, density and size of woods, landmarks, depth of streams, and other desired information should be obtained by specific personnel and squads. This will increase the speed of reconnaissance.

*i.* When the squad is observing from a stationary position, the squad leader must organize his personnel so that they can obtain rest and still make maximum use of observation equipment.

*j.* Constant liaison with adjacent units will aid in keeping an enemy force under continuous observation when it crosses from one sector to another. Scout units must be able to receive and pass on observation assignments so that enemy contact can be maintained.

## 127. Scout Units Establishing Observation Posts

*a.* A scout squad is normally assigned the mission of establishing one observation post (OP); however, in an emergency it is capable of establishing two OPs for a limited period of time by making use of all organic equipment and operating each OP at reduced strength. Normally, the scout platoon leader, or the commander of the combined-arms team to which the scout section is attached, selects the general position for each OP. The specific location is selected by the scout squad leader. Each OP must have radio communication and the necessary personnel to observe and provide security for its operation. Areas which cannot be observed from OPs are covered by patrols.

*b.* The mission of the OP is to provide early warning of enemy approach; report the location, strength, disposition, and movements of the enemy; and adjust long-range fires to cause early deployment, inflict casualties, and deceive. Once an enemy approach has been observed, the mission will normally require the OP to remain in visual contact with the enemy; therefore, the OP personnel must be prepared to move quickly.

*c.* In selection of an OP position, consideration should be given to overlapping fields of observation with other OPs, ease of concealment of the OP and routes thereto, ease of installation, maintenance of communication, and avoidance of landmarks. The position should be located on high ground which provides as wide and deep a field of view as possible and which provides good observation of likely avenues of enemy approach. The choice of a reverse slope position or a forward slope position will depend on the terrain and mission. The reverse slope position allows initial occupation during daylight, allows greater freedom of movement to personnel during daylight, and facilitates installation, maintenance, and concealment of communication means. A forward slope position is removed from the crest, affords a better view of the immediate foreground, and affords a covering background which facilitates concealment. For the scout squad, there will usually be more advantages to selecting a reverse slope position (fig. 36).

*d.* When the scout section is employed to operate OPs, it normally does not fire organic weapons except to defend or extricate itself. The noncommissioned officer in charge of the OP is responsible for keeping the area of responsibility under constant surveillance. Generally, two men observe, one man operates the radio, and the remainder rest and provide local security. When an observation post is occupied, its position and other prominent terrain features should be accurately located by map. This helps to permit sending enemy information by coordinates, rapidly and accurately. Vehicles must be placed under cover and well concealed. The remote control unit or the ground portable radio should be used by the observers to send information back to the vehicular-mounted radio.

*e.* Scout sections may often work in conjunction with sections of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon and supporting Army aircraft. In doing so, scout personnel must be able to—

(1) Integrate ground radar into their position.

(2) Coordinate with airborne elements.

(3) Move by air transport to selected OP positions.

## 128. Scout Units Establishing Listening Posts

During hours of darkness, listening posts may be established nearer the main body or in the vicinity of the daylight OPs. This does not

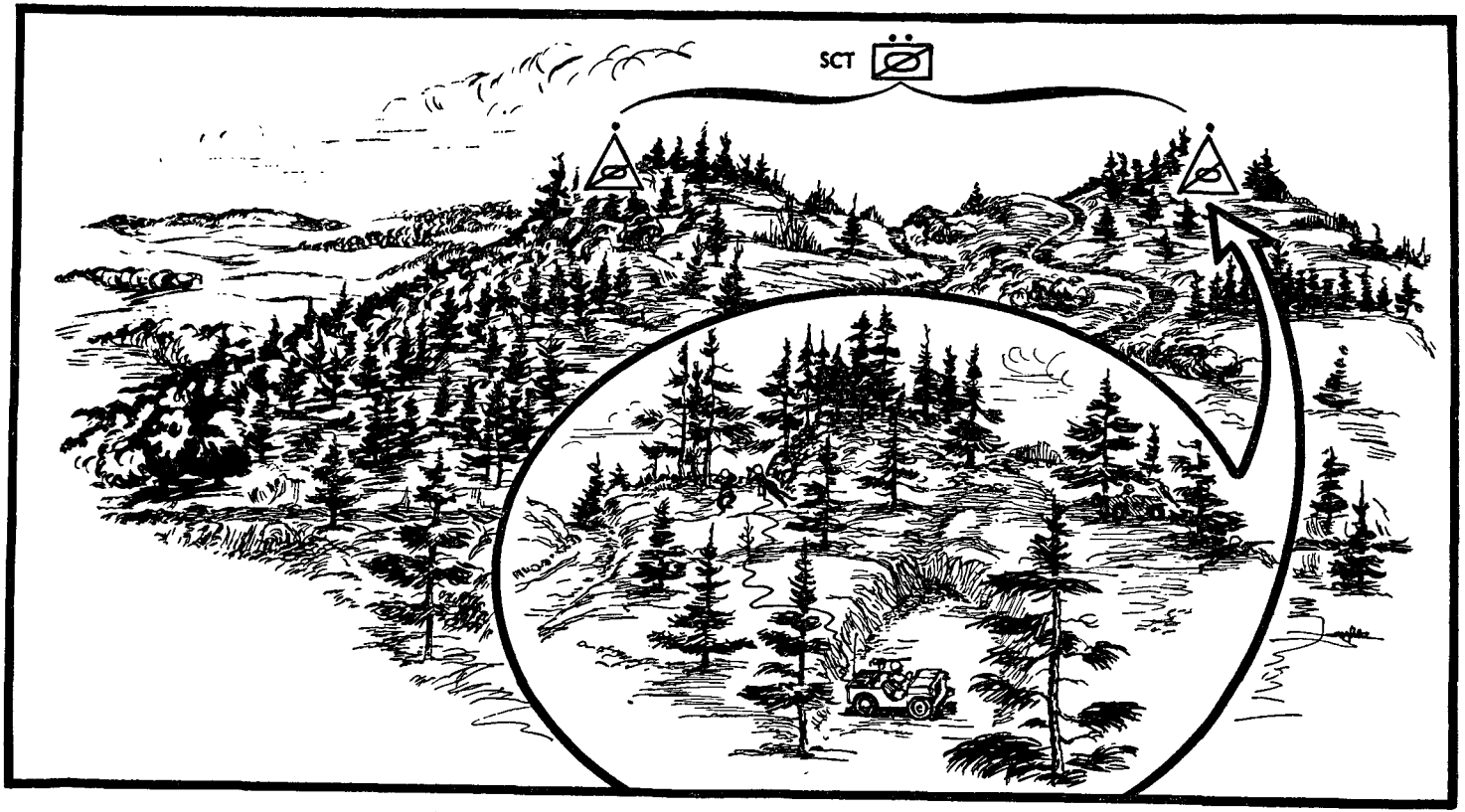



*Figure 36. Observation posts being manned by a scout section.*

mean that personnel will be alert only to sound. Observers must use both their sight and hearing senses. Observation telescopes and binoculars are important vision devices at night as well as during daylight. When available, ground radar elements may be attached. Warning devices such as trip flares and mines may be used. Normally, listening posts are brought in close to the front line or main body, vehicles are secured within a strongpoint or other defensive position, and ground portable radios are used for communication. The listening post should be positioned near enough to likely avenues of enemy approach so that enemy movement can be detected.

## 129. Firepower of Scout Units

*a. General.* Scout units use the fire which can be delivered by the rifles, machine guns, and rocket launcher of the scout squad in accomplishing assigned missions (note that the rocket launcher is not organic to all scout squads). Very frequently, scout units may be required to request and adjust artillery and mortar fires; therefore, all scout personnel must be well trained in observed fire procedure. Scout units must be prepared to fight when necessary, and they must be skilled in the use of all organic weapons. The scout section not only must be able to employ and fire all weapons, but also must be able to control and coordinate their fires. Efficient coordination and control of fires, coupled with movement, allows the scout section and squad to perform security and reconnaissance missions without becoming decisively engaged.

*b. Rifle Fire.* The scout section must be capable of performing as a rifle squad, and the scout squad must be able to perform as a rifle fire team, when they are required to fight dismounted without machine guns. The technique of fire coordination discussed in FM 17–20, FM 23–5, and FM 7–10 must be mastered.

*c. Machine Gun Fire.* Scout squads must be adept in placing their machine guns into action from the vehicular mount to the ground mount and from the ground mount to the vehicular mount. The scout leaders must be able to decide quickly which mount is better suited for a particular situation. Regardless of which mount is being used, area fire techniques, using a free gun, will usually be employed.

(1) *Mounted action.* Machine gun fire is normally delivered from the truck pedestal mount when movement does not allow time for dismounted action, when effective fire must be delivered immediately, or when fire can be delivered from the pedestal mount with the vehicle in chassis defilade or adequately concealed. Reconnaissance by fire normally is made from the

pedestal mount, and leading vehicles normally are covered by pedestal-mounted machine guns. To facilitate immediate fire when contact with the enemy is imminent, machine gunners must keep their guns trained on the most likely enemy positions. When firing to the rear from the pedestal mount, the vehicle commander acts as gunner. To move the machine gun from its ground mount to the vehicular mount, the procedure for going into action from vehicular mount to ground mount is performed in reverse ((2) below).

(2) *Dismounted action.* When the scout leader has decided or been ordered to direct his machine gun fire from the ground mount, he must be prepared to use his machine guns as explained in FM 23–55 and FM 17–20. When scout personnel are employed as riflemen, their machine guns normally are left with their vehicles, unless specific scout squads are directed to act as machine gun squads. The following procedure may be followed on command from the vehicle commander in dismounting the machine gun.

(*a*) The vehicle commander secures the ground mount, dismounts, and positions it at the selected point of action.

(*b*) The gunner removes the machine gun from the pedestal mount, dismounts, and secures the gun to the ground mount.

(*c*) The driver obtains two boxes of ammunition and moves to the position selected by the vehicle commander to act as assistant gunner. If it is necessary for the driver to move his vehicle back to a covered position and operate the radio, the squad leader must act as assistant gunner or gunner. If only one machine gun is being employed by the squad, the personnel of the squad not employing their machine gun act as assistant gunner and ammunition bearers for the dismounted gun.

*d. Rocket Launchers.* When the rocket launcher is an organic weapon of the scout squad, it must be employed for close protection when enemy armor is in the vicinity. All scout personnel should be capable of firing and loading the weapon; however, two specific individuals should be assigned the rocket launcher as their secondary crew-served weapon.

## 130. Communition in Scout Units

*a. General.* The communication means available to the scout platoon and scout section permit rapid transmission of information. Rapid transmission of all information is essential to the success of the mission. Information must be transmitted without delay from squad or section

to platoon to higher headquarters. Communication must be maintained throughout the period of operations. If radio contact cannot be maintained with the next higher command, messenger or relay stations should be used. When communication with intermediate echelons of command is disrupted, it may be desirable to bypass these echelons and send information directly to the higher headquarters that will use it. The following principles are important to scout units in maintaining communication:

(1) All scout personnel must be adept radio operators and must be familiar with communication procedure. Radio mechanics are not immediately available to scout units; therefore, personnel must be trained to make maximum use of communication expedients and to maintain their radio sets in a superior manner.

(2) Vehicular-mounted radios, ground portable radios, and remote control units must be used in the most efficient combination for the given situation. Remote control units and ground portable radios are extremely important during operations which prevent vehicles being at the point of observation or command.

(3) When communicating by messenger, the scout leader must consider the importance of the message before dispatching a vehicle with its crew to the rear. When a scout squad loses one vehicle and crew, its potential is reduced considerably. All personnel must be trained to carry oral messages and to construct good written messages.

(4) Definite planning should be made for visual and sound means of communication before an operation starts. These means can be especially useful for transmitting short prearranged messages. As an example, two short bursts of fire from a covering vehicle could inform the leading element that enemy are moving in on its right flank.

*b. Information and Reports, General.* The scout platoon and scout section are very important agencies for collecting information. On occasion, intelligence officers may supervise the scout units which are organic to their units. The most important contribution made by scout elements during reconnaissance and security missions is the accurate and timely reporting of information concerning the enemy and the area of operations.

*c. Information and Reports of Enemy.* All information obtained during the performance of a given mission should be reported, regardless of its apparent value. Negative information is sometimes just as important as positive information; therefore, negative reports must be rendered

whenever appropriate. Information of the enemy must be accurate and must answer the questions *what, where, when,* and *how many.* If a standard spot report form is required and used by all scout elements, the rendering of complete reports will become a habit. A sample spot report form is shown in appendix III, FM 17–1.

*d. Information and Reports of an Area of Operations.* When information of an area of operations is desired, such as information of a route or of an assembly area, reports will not conform to the spot report format. The scout units must be thoroughly briefed as to what information is desired, and they should be thoroughly trained to automatically seek certain types of information which are required by the mission but which may or may not be directed. Scout leaders must be familiar with assembly area and attack position requirements, route reconnaissance as discussed in FM 5–36, and the effects of weather and terrain on various types of operations. The SOP of the higher unit should prescribe a report format for sending back this information in order that it may be timely and complete. Time permitting, an overlay or sketch of the area, sent back by messenger, may be the most effective method of reporting.

*e. Information and Report of Own Unit.* The immediate commander of the scout platoon or scout section must be kept informed of its position and activity. This type information may be reported back according to a time schedule or as predetermined positions are reached. Check points, phase lines, and a coordinate code are effective methods which may be used to report the unit's position.

## 131. Liaison by Scout Units

Liaison between scout squads and sections, liaison with other units, and liaison for higher headquarters is a matter of major concern to scout unit commanders. Liaison must be maintained with units on the right and left, so the scout unit will know where they are and what they are doing. The scout squad leader and section leader must be trained to perform liaison activities effectively, both for their parent unit and for other designated headquarters. The act of meeting another party at a specified place is not sufficient in itself; liaison is performed only when parties deliver and receive information. Some of the vital information which the scout unit normally will be required to deliver and receive may be—

*a.* Location and identification of specified units (usually platoon or company).

*b.* Enemy contact when made.

*c.* Trace of front-line units.

*d.* Future plans, such as time of movement, objectives, etc.

## 132. Scout Units in Quartering Parties

*a. General.* The scout section may be used as a quartering party for a larger unit. When it is given this mission, the section will normally be used as the security element, or it may be directed to organize company-size areas within a chosen assembly area.

*b. Organization of Area.* The officer in charge of the quartering party selects and generally defines the limits of each company (troop) area within the chosen assembly area. If the scout section is then directed to organize a selected area or areas, it must organize the area with the following points in mind:

(1) Entrances which will allow uninterrupted movement of the march unit into the area.

(2) Areas to be occupied by each platoon and company headquarters.

(3) Turn-arounds for motor vehicles.

(4) Concealment.

(5) Tie-in points with adjacent companies.

(6) Method to be used to pick up the company at the release point and to guide platoons to their assigned areas.

(7) Sketch of the proposed organization of the area for the occupying commander.

(8) Security of the area until it is occupied.

(9) Order of march and estimated time of arrival.

## 133. Scout Units as Contact Parties

When the scout section or squad is directed to contact a unit, the leader must be positive in his actions. Before attempting to make contact, he should determine who is to be contacted, where the exact point of contact or alternate point is located, when the contact is to be made, and what is to be accomplished on contact. Other important information which may be obtained before leaving may be the radio frequency and call sign of the unit to be contacted, action desired if contact is not made, and method of reporting contact information. If contact is to be made at a specific point by a scout section, one squad may wait at the designated point while the other squad overwatches from a good point of observation as security and to assist in contacting the other party.

## 134. Scout Units as Guides

During tactical marches and during the passage of forces through friendly lines, the scout section may be used as emergency guides. To

accomplish this mission, the scout squad will usually be the basic guide element. The squad leader must be sure of the following details:

*a.* Route and direction markers.

*b.* Unit to be guided.

*c.* Rate of march.

*d.* Where its mission begins and ends.

If at all possible, the squad leader should reconnoiter the route. If a passage of lines is to take place, he should become acquainted with the elements and terrain where passage is to take place.

## 135. Limited Pioneer Work by Scout Units

*a. General.* When the scout section has been specifically ordered to perform pioneer and demolition work, it normally is required to assist in the installation of minefields, construct log obstacles, blow craters, destroy bridges and buildings, clear mines and demolitions, disrupt transportation or communication systems, and destroy equipment and supplies. Obstacles are sited not only to obstruct and delay the enemy, but also to surprise, disrupt, and confuse him. They compel him to exercise caution and to dismount and reconnoiter all locations where an obstacle might be placed. Although the scout section is limited in personnel and equipment, it can perform many limited pioneer and demolition projects which may play a vital role.

*b. Equipment.* Organic scout section and scout platoon equipment which can be used effectively for pioneer and demolition work is as follows:

(1) Axes and shovels carried by ¼-ton trucks.

(2) Demolition set carried by scout platoon headquarters.

(3) The ¼-ton trailer pulled by the platoon sergeant's vehicle.

(4) Gasoline cans.

*c. Demolition Work.* Demolition work must be perfectly coordinated with the unit for which it is being performed. A priority of demolition work, based upon the terrain and enemy, should be established. During security operations, the scout section may best construct abatis, burn or blow bridges, and blow road craters.

*d. Pioneer Work Other Than Demolitions.* The scout section may install defensive or protective minefields when authorized to do so. Minefield records and reports must be made according to FM 20–32. Other obstacles which require construction are best assigned to units which have heavier equipment and more personnel. FM 5–34 gives the scout section leader necessary information for pioneer and demolition work.


NOTE: TL–Team Leader
R–Rifleman

A. Dismounted scout section with drivers, organized as rifle squad of two fire teams.



NOTE: G–Machine Gunner
ASST–Assistant Machine Gunner
AMMO–Ammunition Bearer

B. Dismounted scout section with drivers, organized into two machine gun squads (one gun per squad).



NOTE: G–Machine Gun
ASST–Assistant Machine Gunner
AMMO–Ammunition Bearer

C. Dismounted scout section with drivers, organized into two machine gun squads (two guns per squad).

*Section 37. Scout section dismounted (with drivers) may be employed as riflemen or as members of machine gun squads.*

## Section III. OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS, SCOUT UNITS

### 136. General

In the execution of dismounted offensive or defensive actions, the scout platoon and scout section must utilize their personnel and equipment in the most effective manner possible. The following dismounted organizations may be formed by a scout section.

*a.* Scout section dismounted—with drivers (fig. 37).

*b.* Scout section dismounted—without drivers (fig. 38).

### 137. Scout Units in Attack

*a. General.* The scout platoon or scout section normally does not conduct an attack alone. It usually participates in an attack as part of a combined-arms team. When situations require that scout elements attack, the attack is conducted dismounted. When scouts are employed as dismounted riflemen in the maneuvering force or as part of the base of fire during an attack, their actions are generally the same as those prescribed for a rifle squad (FM 17–20). The ¼-ton trucks should be located in a secure position to the rear, and personnel securing them must be able to move the vehicles forward to the objective when called.

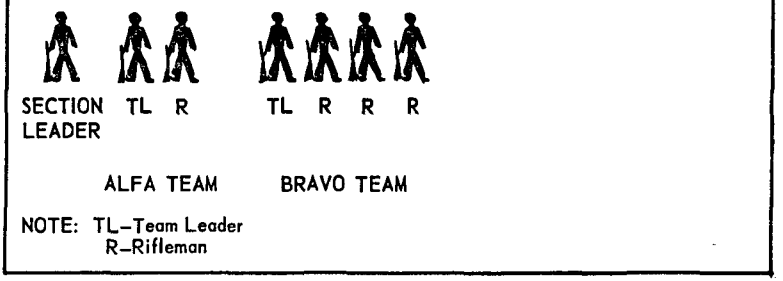
*b. Scout Platoon Attacking Alone.* When the scout platoon conducts an attack by itself, the platoon leader must obtain supporting fires and also consider the use of scout elements as a base of fire. Supporting indirect fires may be obtained by requesting mortar fire through the next higher commander and artillery fires through available forward observers, through the next higher command, or by direct communication with an artillery unit. Scout elements which are employed in the base of fire (usually a section) normally organize machine gun squads (par. 136). Figure 39 illustrates a situation in which a scout section is being employed in the base of fire and two scout sections are being employed in the maneuvering force to reduce a lightly held enemy roadblock.

## Section IV. DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS, SCOUT UNITS

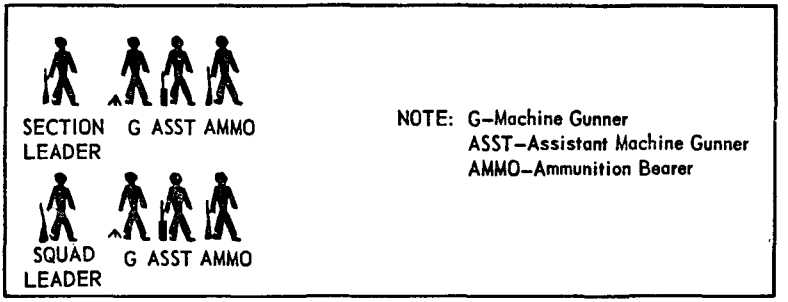
### 138. General

*a. General.* The scout platoon and scout section normally do not conduct a defense alone. They usually participate in a defensive operation as part of a combined-arms team. Most forms of defense which scout elements may be required to perform alone consist of temporary defensive measures followed by a delaying action. The scout platoon or scout section may be required to defend alone—

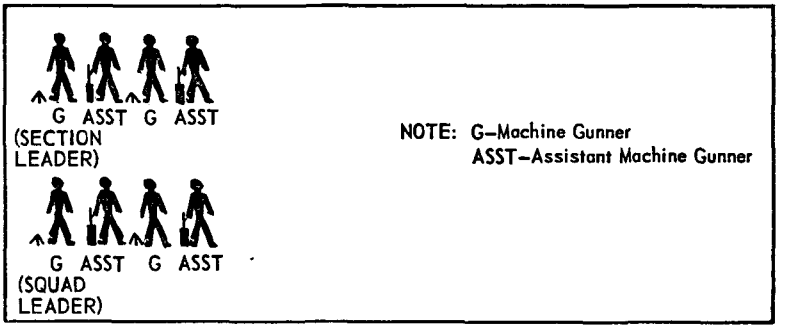
(1) When performing a security mission that requires the establishment of a blocking position.




A. Dismounted scout section without drivers, organized as rifle squad of two fire teams of riflemen.




B. Dismounted scout section without drivers, organized into two machine gun squads (one gun per squad).




C. Dismounted scout section without drivers, organized into two machine gun squads (two guns per squad).

*Figure 38. Scout section dismounted (without drivers) may be employed as riflemen or as members of machine gun squads.*

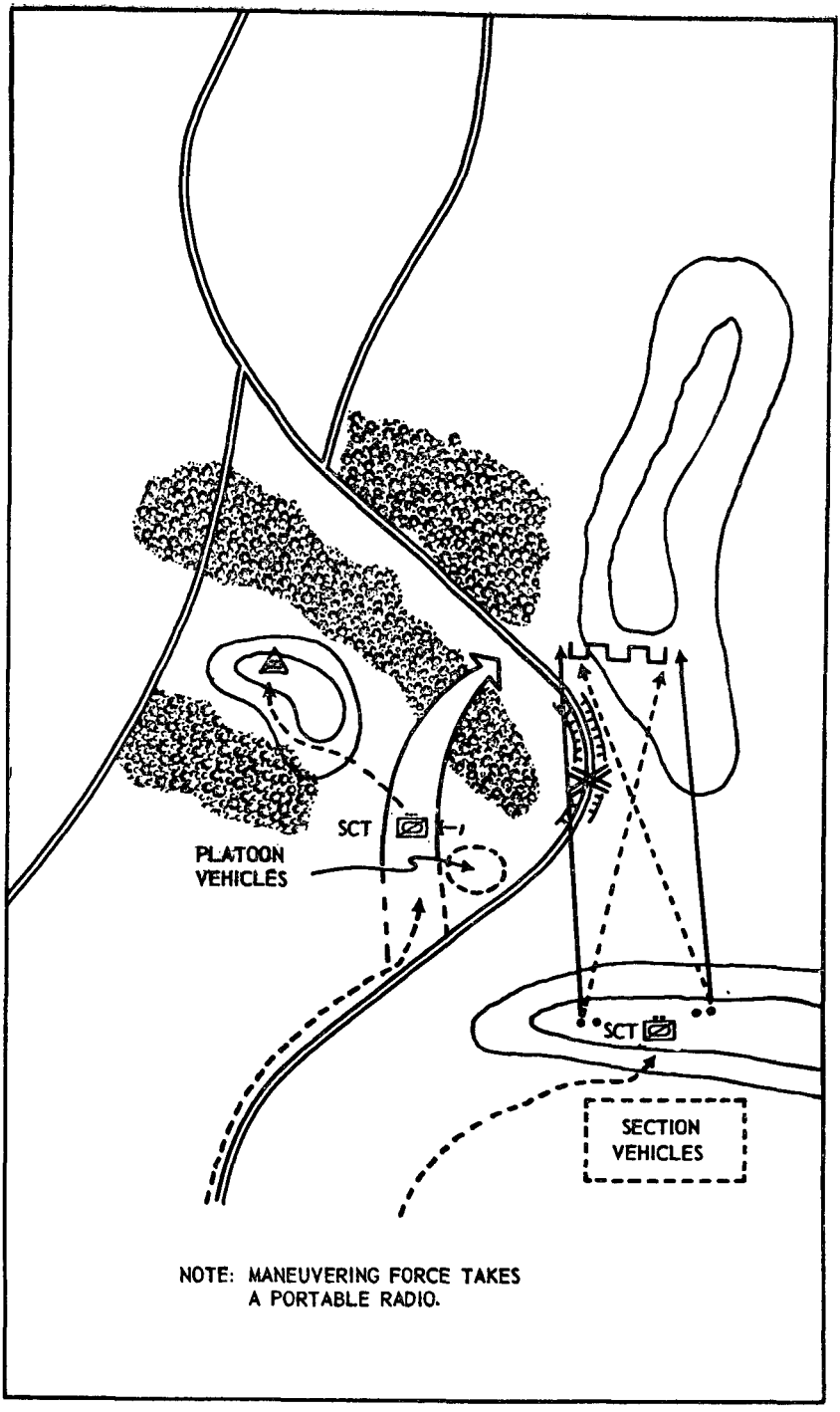



*Figure 39. Attack of a lightly held roadblock by a scout platoon.*

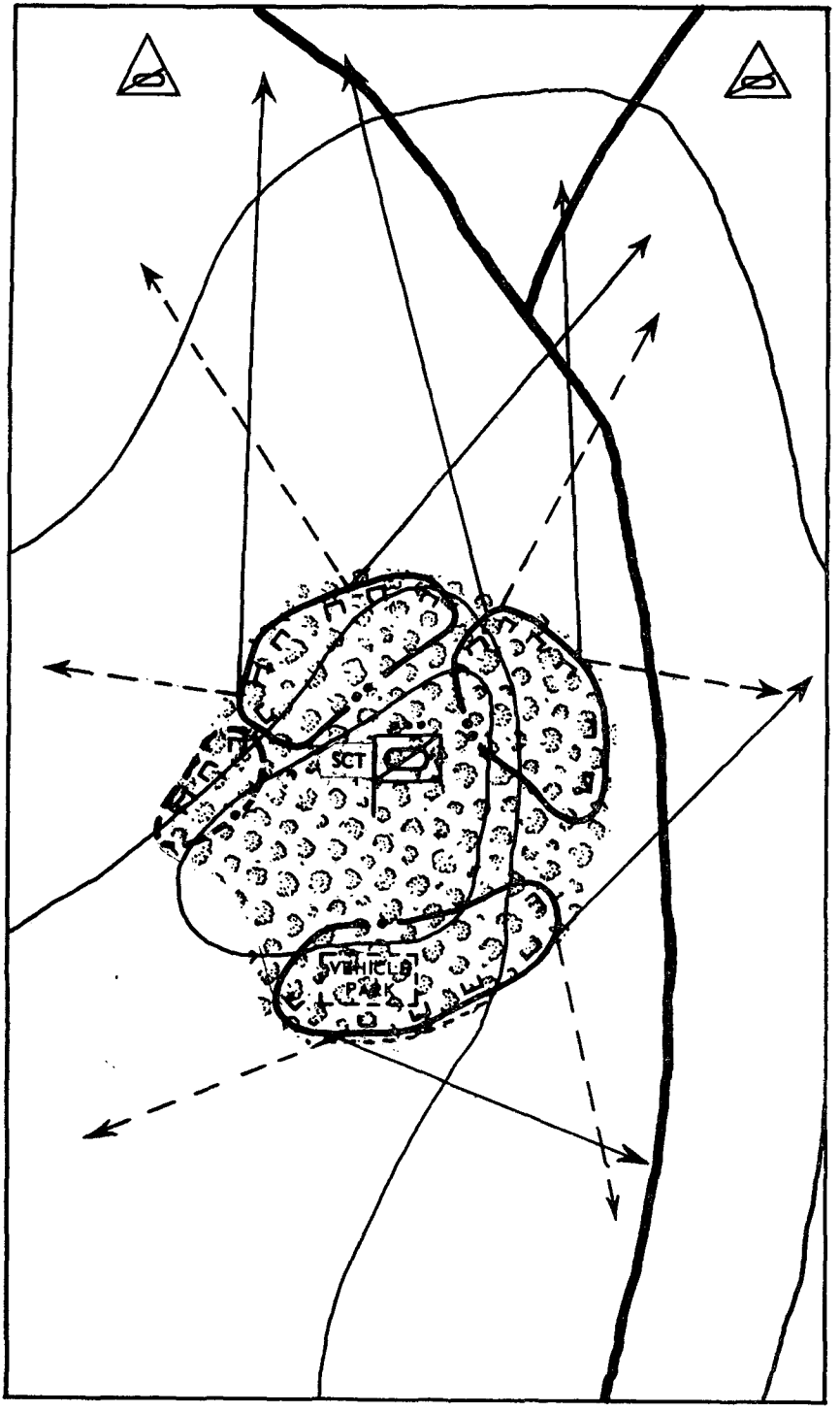



*Figure 40. Scout platoon establishing a platoon strongpoint.*

(2) When air-landed behind enemy lines.

(3) When performing a security mission as part of an outpost system.

*b. Organization of a Defensive Position.* When the scout platoon or section must defend on specific terrain features, the scout leaders must reconnoiter, plan, command, and control in accordance with defensive procedures as outlined in chapter 9, FM 17–1. Scout elements normally organize a compact strongpoint, making maximum use of all available weapons (fig. 40). Fire support, either mortar or artillery, may be requested in the same manner as discussed for the defense.

*c. Employment in the Mobile Defense.*

(1) The scout platoon and scout section normally participate in the mobile defense as part of a larger force and may be employed—

(*a*) As part of a larger force conducting a covering force mission.

(*b*) As part of a larger force occupying a defensive position.

(*c*) As part of a larger force in the striking force.

(2) Scout elements frequently may receive the following specific missions in mobile defense:

(*a*) The observation post system for a battalion-size position.

(*b*) Part of the rear area surveillance system.

(*c*) Reconnaissance element for the striking force.

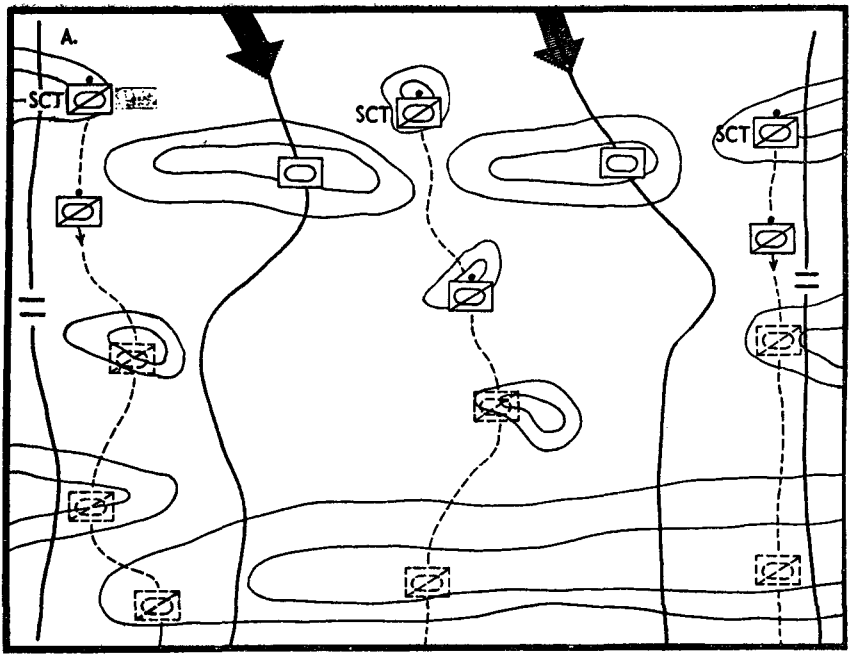
(*d*) Flank screening element for the striking force in the conduct of a counterattack.

*d. Employment in the Position Defense.* In the position defense, the scout platoon and scout section are most effective when assigned missions where they can use their reconnaissance and security capabilities. Scouts normally provide security to prevent surprise attacks or support the actions of the reserve. The scout platoon or scout section may be employed as part of a covering force or general outpost, or as part of all of the combat outpost.

## Section V. SCOUT UNITS IN DELAYING ACTION

### 139. General

The scout platoon and scout section do not possess the necessary firepower or armor protection to conduct delaying action as a separate unit. If scout elements are forced to conduct a delaying action, they must maximize the use of harassing machine gun fire, obstacles, and their mobility. Scout platoons and scout sections normally participate in delaying action as part of a larger force.




SQUADS WITHIN SECTIONS AND SECTIONS WITHIN PLATOONS MUST WITHDRAW IN SUCH A MANNER THAT CONTACT IS MAINTAINED AND FLANKS OF THE DELAYING UNITS ARE SECURED.

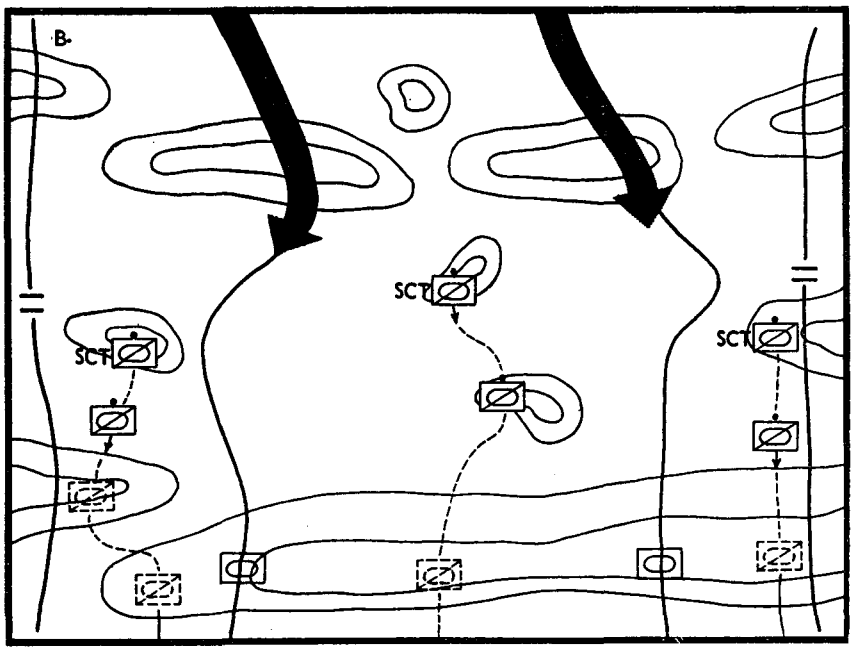



*Figure 41. Scout platoon providing flank security and enemy contact for the delaying unit.*

## 140. Scout Units in Delaying Force

*a.* When performing as part of the delaying force, the scout platoon and scout section normally are employed initially to provide early detection of advancing enemy. When an enemy is detected, the scout unit maintains contact until relieved of the assigned mission. After the enemy is taken under fire by the delaying force, scout elements provide flank security and maintain enemy contact for delaying units by moving parallel to and between routes of withdrawal as shown in figure 41. In withdrawing to successive positions, scouts must be moved rearward in such a manner that enemy contact will *not* be broken. Forward squads must not be withdrawn unless they or another squad can observe the advancing enemy forces. The technique employed normally will consist of moving by successive or alternate bounds to the rear.

*b.* Scout units may also be required to reconnoiter and secure routes of withdrawal for the delaying force. This type mission normally is accomplished by patrolling the assigned route.

## 141. Scout Units in Reserve, Delaying Action

In delaying action, the scout platoon or scout section may be employed as part of the reserve. Scout elements may act as a security force for the reserve, they may assist the movement of the reserve to blocking positions, or they may assist the reserve in moving to counterattack. In all cases, the platoon and section leaders must be familiar with reserve plans, road nets, and the disposition of the delaying force.

# Section VI. SCOUT UNITS IN RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS

## 142. General

The scout platoon and scout section frequently may be employed on reconnaissance missions alone. Such missions may require stealth, infiltration, or an air-landed operation behind enemy lines. When employed on a reconnaissance mission as part of a larger force, scout sections often execute their mission while being overwatched and supported by other elements of the force. The method by which the section performs its mission is determined by the mission and other specific instructions received. Enemy contact, type of reconnaissance, and the information desired by the higher commander all affect the methods used.

## 143. Route Reconnaissance by Scout Units

*a. Scout Platoon.* When two or more scout sections are employed on one route, the leading section normally moves by bounds, covering the main route, while the other section covers lateral routes and critical terrain features. This is the fastest and most effective manner of con-

ducting route reconnaissance by the scout platoon; however, scout sections will often be assigned separate routes to reconnoiter.

*b. Scout Section.* The scout section reconnoiters a route and the terrain that affects that route by employing the scout squads in closely coordinated moves (fig. 42). While one squad moves by bounds to reconnoiter the main route, the other squad is used to reconnoiter lateral routes and terrain features critical to the main route. The squad which is in the lead and reconnoitering the main route must not move so fast that the other cannot keep up. To keep the two squads moving together, the squad on the main route may check some portion of the lateral routes and terrain features, or the squads may be alternated. As a last resort, some areas may be only lightly reconnoitered, and this fact reported to higher headquarters. When squads alternate, the leading squad moves along the main route until it comes to lateral routes and terrain features which must be checked. While these are being reconnoitered, the rear squad moves up and continues along the main route until it reaches other lateral routes and terrain features which must be checked.

## 144. Zone Reconnaissance by Scout Units

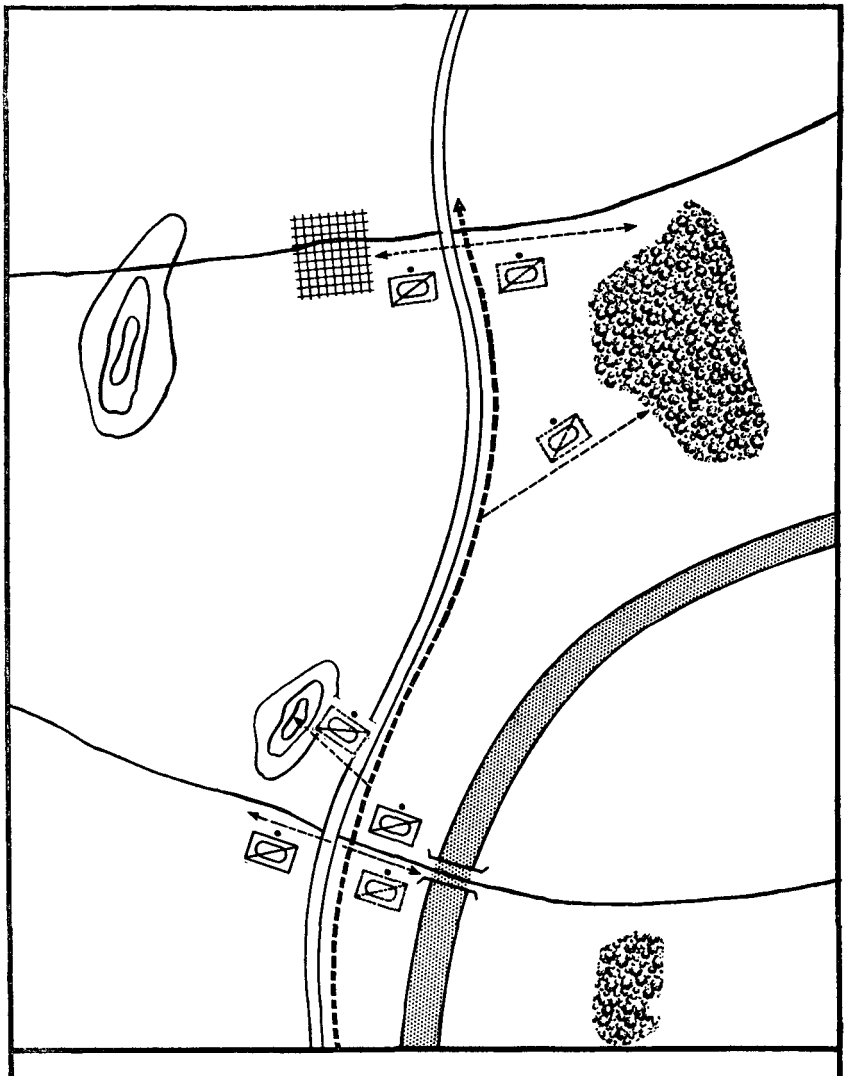
*a. General.* In a zone reconnaissance, the scout platoon and section operate in generally the same manner as in a route reconnaissance, employing suitable formations illustrated in figure 32. However, in a zone reconnaissance, all the terrain between boundaries must be reconnoitered. Scout elements should be moved over routes which afford the fastest and most complete coverage of the zone. The scout platoon may conduct an effective zone reconnaissance; however, a single scout section is limited in its ability to accomplish such a mission.

*b. Scout Platoon.* In conducting a zone reconnaissance, the scout platoon normally employs three sections on line. If the zone is very narrow, two sections may be employed on the primary route within the zone and the third section employed to the flanks.

*c. Scout Section.* When the scout section is required to conduct a zone reconnaissance alone, both squads are employed on line. Each squad must make maximum use of observation points along its route to rapidly cover the entire zone.

## 145. Area Reconnaissance by Scout Units

In an area reconnaissance, the scout platoon and scout section move directly to the area to be reconnoitered. Any form of opposition which is encountered enroute to the area should be bypassed or infiltrated. After scout elements have arrived at the designated area, they perform the reconnaissance in the same manner as in a zone reconnaissance. The area may be divided into parts, so that each section or squad may reconnoiter a part, or the scout unit may be directed throughout the area as



NOTE: ONE SQUAD MOVES BY BOUNDS TO RECONNOITER THE MAIN ROUTE (----------→) WHILE THE OTHER IS USED TO RECONNOITER LATERAL ROUTES ( ----------→ ) AND TERRAIN FEATURES CRITICAL TO THE MAIN ROUTE. THE SQUADS MAY ALTERNATE IN PERFORMING THESE TASKS.

*Figure 42. Scout section performing route reconnaissance.*

a whole. When given this type mission, scout leaders must be prepared to evaluate the area as an assembly area or attack position. Upon completion of an area reconnaissance, the unit normally will be required to secure the area or to continue on another mission.

### 146. Dismounted Patrolling by Scout Units

Scout platoons and scout sections frequently are required to conduct dismounted patrolling during daylight or at night. The platoon or section may be organized into rifle squads. For techniques of dismounted patrolling, see FM 21–75.

## Section VII. SCOUT UNITS IN SECURITY MISSIONS

### 147. General

*a.* The scout platoon may be employed as a unit in the conduct of security missions under the following conditions:

(1) When the parent unit is performing a security mission.

(2) When the parent unit or the unit to which the platoon is attached requires a light security force.

In the performance of security operations, the scout platoon and scout section abide by the basic fundamentals of security as explained in paragraph 162, FM 17–1. Paragraphs 148 through 151 discuss the normal methods by which the scout sections accomplish assigned security missions. Specific techniques will not be given for the scout platoon, because missions are accomplished by the proper use of scout sections. During all operations, security by the scout section is provided primarily through reconnaissance, surveillance, and delaying action. Cooperation between Army aircraft and the scout units must be insured by headquarters which have communication with both. If Army aircraft are operating in the vicinity of scout units, the scout leader should not hesitate to call his next higher command for specific information which the aircraft might have of his area of operation.

*b.* For techniques of establishing observation posts and listening posts, see paragraphs 126 through 128.

### 148. Scout Units in Advance Guard

*a. General.* The scout platoon and scout section normally are not used as an advance guard, but participate as part of an advance guard (pars. 253–255).

*b. Scout Section.* Scout sections normally provide flank protection for the advance guard (par. 149), or they may be the leading element when enemy contact is not imminent. When a scout unit is acting as the leading element for the advance guard, speed of movement and

aggressive action are of primary importance. The scout section leader's next higher commander normally prescribes a rate of advance, and it is up to the scout section leader to maintain this rate of advance unless the section is stopped by enemy action or impassable terrain. When enemy resistance is encountered, the scout squads should immediately report contact and develop the situation to determine the size and strength of the enemy position. Friendly tanks will normally be in rear of the scouts to take the enemy under fire while the scouts develop the situation. If impassable terrain is encountered, the scout squads must immediately report the situation and reconnoiter for a bypass.

## 149. Scout Units in Flank Guard

*a. General.* The scout platoon and scout section normally are incapable of conducting a flank guard mission alone. When scout units perform flank security, they are employed either as part of a flank guard or as a screening force (par. 151).

*b. Scout Section.* In the accomplishment of a flank guard mission as part of a larger force, the scout section is frequently employed to establish OPs, patrols, or contact with the main body. When required to maintain contact with the main body, the scout section leader should determine the specific element with which it is to remain in contact and designate one squad to retain visual contact with it. The remainder of the section may then patrol between the contact squad and other elements of the flank guard (fig. 43).

## 150. Scout Units in Rear Guard

The scout platoon and scout section normally are not employed as a rear guard but participate as part of a larger force during rear guard actions.

## 151. Scout Units as Screening Force

*a. General.* Scout platoons and scout sections frequently are assigned screening missions (fig. 44). The scout platoon can establish six effective observation posts. For limited periods of time, a scout squad may establish two observation posts (par. 127), thereby increasing the platoon frontage. The frontage which a platoon can screen is determined by the limits of observation afforded by terrain and visibility, the number of patrols required, and communication facilities. Maximum use must be made of the platoon sergeant and his vehicle in controlling the platoon during a screening mission. To maintain contact with an advancing enemy force, the platoon and section must be prepared to employ delaying techniques.

*b. Scout Section.* When acting as part of a screening force, the scout section secures its assigned area by establishing observation posts and

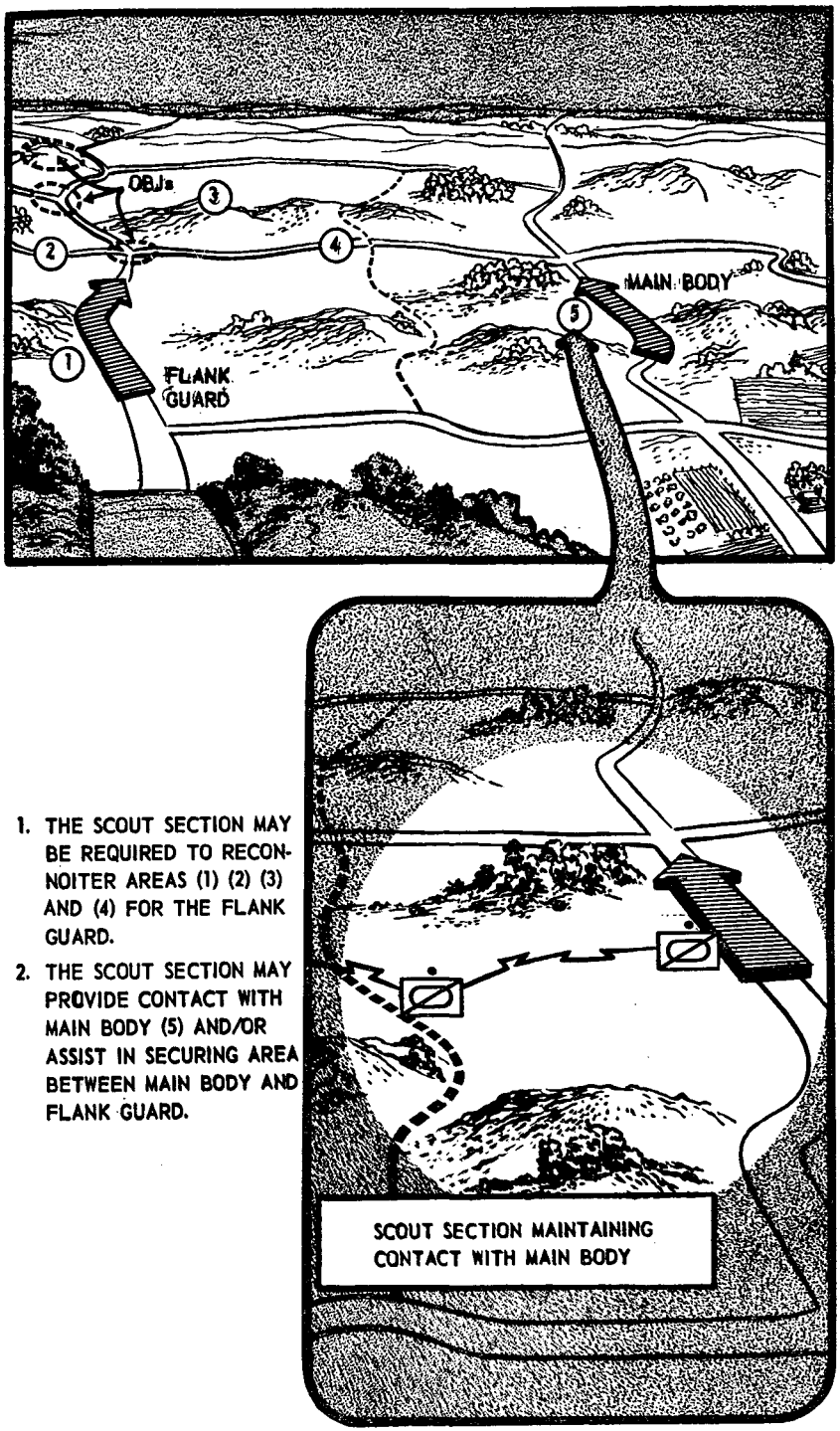



*Figure 43. Scout section performing as part of a flank guard.*

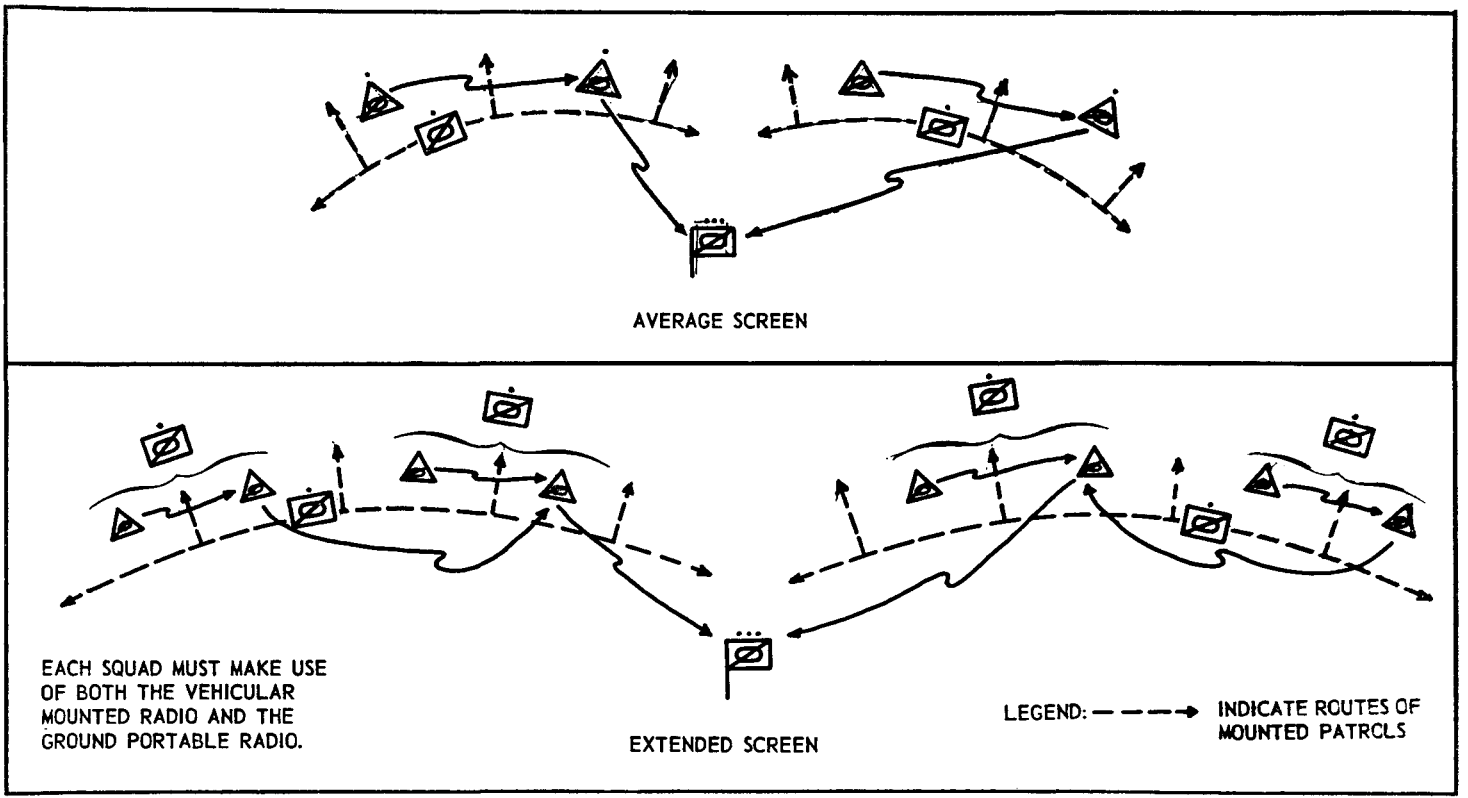



*Figure 44. Scout platoon screen.*

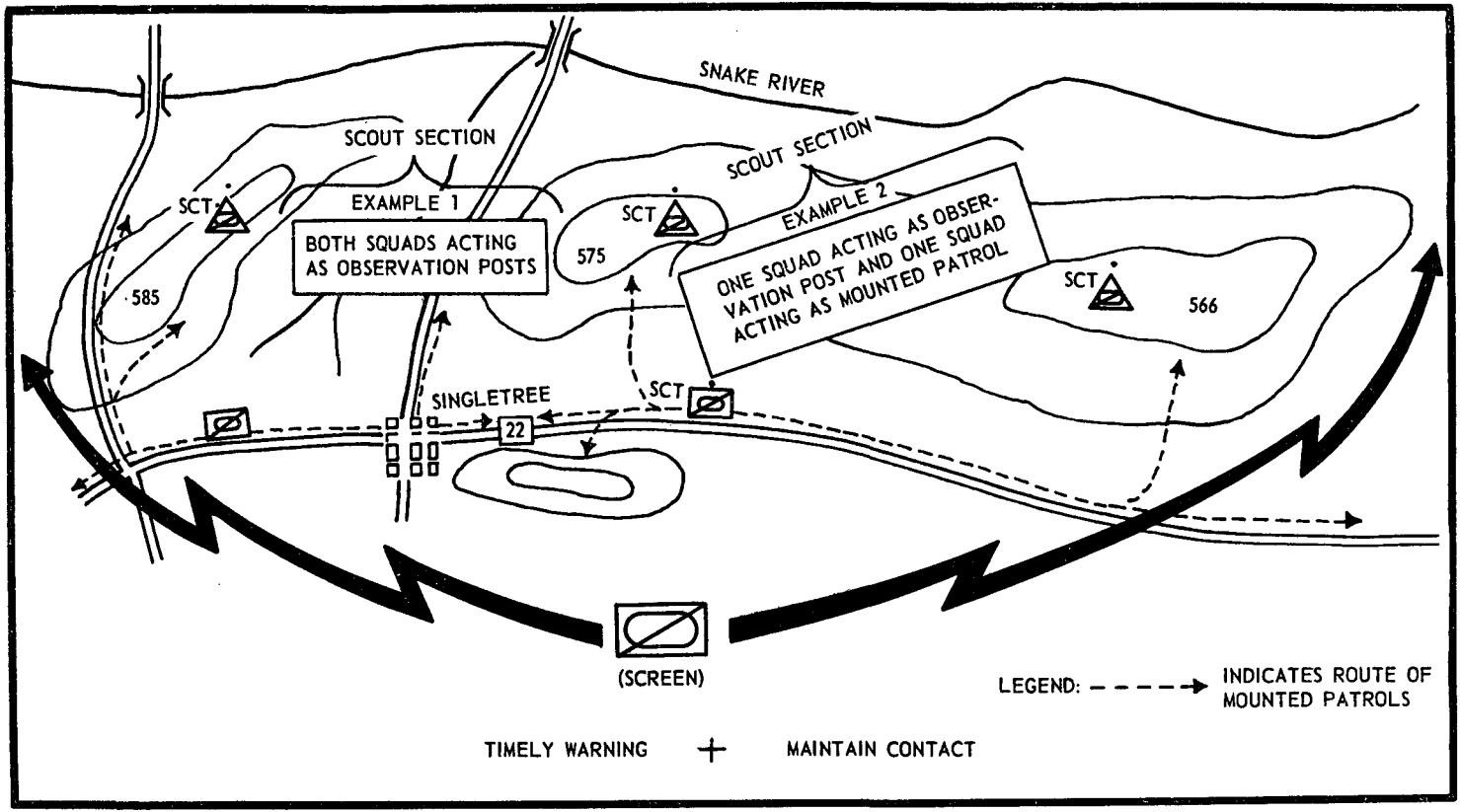



*Figure 45. Scout section performing as part of a screening force.*

conducting patrols during daylight, and by establishing listening posts and conducting patrols after dark. Since the screen will normally cover an extended area, the scout section must pick OPs which give the widest possible field of view. Dead space between OPs is then covered by mounted patrols (fig. 45). If the screen is required to remain mobile and move with the main body, OPs must be moved by bounds. When approaching enemy are observed, the section remains in visual contact with the enemy and withdraws by bounds. Coordination with Army aircraft and sections of a reconnaissance and surveillance platoon will greatly increase the effect of the ground screen.

## Section VIII. HELICOPTERBORNE OPERATIONS, SCOUT UNITS

### 152. General

*a.* A helicopterborne operation is an operation involving the movement of a unit by Army aircraft into an objective area and in which the unit is unloaded after the aircraft has landed. Air-landed scout elements provide the means by which a commander may influence operations by—

(1) Conducting raid-type operations.

(2) Conducting reconnaissance and security operations.

*b.* The following are typical situations which may require scout elements to be air-landed behind enemy lines:

(1) A requirement for information of enemy troop movements.

(2) A requirement for information concerning the location of enemy installations or a general area of operations.

(3) A requirement for the destruction of some object such as a small bridge over which retreating enemy must pass.

(4) A requirement for a blocking position in rear of a small retreating force.

Some tactical situations may require the air-landing of scout elements on critical terrain features which are inaccessible by ground movement. These features may or may not be behind enemy lines.

### 153. Loading and Landing of Scout Units

*a.* Scout leaders must be familiar with the techniques which are applicable to the loading and landing phases of air-landed operations.

*b.* Upon receipt of a mission which will require a helicopterborne operation, the scout leader will be informed by his higher headquarters as to the number of personnel and the amount of equipment which will be transported for the accomplishment of the mission, and the number and type of aircraft to be made available.

*c.* Scout personnel must have a thorough knowledge of the following techniques:

(1) Selection and marking of a landing site.

(2) Arm and hand signals for directing aircraft.

(3) Method of loading and lashing platoon equipment.

(4) Communication procedures for air contact.

(5) Emergency procedures during takeoff, flight, and landing.

## 154. Operations of Scout Units Behind Enemy Lines

*a.* When scout elements have been air-landed behind enemy lines (or have employed stay-behind techniques to place themselves in position behind enemy lines), stealth and security require greater emphasis. When the mission is one of reconnaissance, it should require limited but specific information.

*b.* Enemy radio location detection devices and enemy troop movements may require frequent moves—preferably at night. Adequate communication must be maintained so that timely reports can be sent. If organic communication equipment does not have sufficient range, air-relay stations must be used.

*c.* Missions which require positive action by scout elements, and which may reveal the presence of these elements to the enemy, must be performed rapidly and efficiently. In this case, plans must be made for an early evacuation or link-up with friendly forces.

## 155. Air Evacuation of Scout Units

The scout elements should make plans for their evacuation prior to being air-landed behind enemy lines. Communication, selection of a landing site, and loading must all be adequately accomplished by the scout elements for an efficient air evacuation. Radios and visual signals must be used to contact the transport helicopter; a landing site must be chosen which facilitates landing, loading, and security; and personnel and equipment must be loaded rapidly.

# CHAPTER 11

# RECONNAISSANCE AND SURVEILLANCE PLATOON

## Section I. GENERAL

### 156. General

The reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) platoon has the general mission of extending and augmenting reconnaissance and battle area surveillance for the armored cavalry squadron. The platoon increases the squadron's ability to perform reconnaissance and provide security on wide fronts to extended depths. At the time of publication of this manual the special devices mentioned in this chapter have not been standardized nor have such items been issued to units. The methods of employment of these devices are based on the desired characteristics of equipment now under development. Final testing of this equipment may dictate the deletion of some items from this platoon.

### 157. Employment, R&S Platoon

*a.* The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon is designed to perform reconnaissance and battle area surveillance either independently, with other elements of the squadron, or with other elements of the division. The platoon's principal mission is to obtain information of designated areas through the use of observers, television, cameras, infrared detectors, and radar. The special devices are normally employed under direct control of the squadron commander, since the information gained from the various photographic and electronic devices must be processed and correlated by the squadron staff and platoon headquarters. Effective use of this special equipment extends the reconnaissance and security capabilities of the squadron.

*b.* The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon normally is employed as a unit under squadron control; however, sections of the platoon may be attached to reconnaissance troops, or the platoon may be employed under division, combat command, or battle group control. Most squadron missions will require that the platoon be employed under squadron control, because the information gained by the platoon is processed and correlated most efficiently by the platoon leader working in conjunction with the S2 and S3. The ground radar and ground photo sections are the elements of the platoon which will be most frequently detached.

All aerial sections must work in close relation with a ground support element which should be located in the vicinity of the platoon headquarters; therefore, aerial sections will seldom be detached.

*c.* The platoon must be supported by Army aircraft.

*d.* The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon is employed—

(1) To perform aerial reconnaissance of areas, routes, or zones either independently or in conjunction with reconnaissance troops.

(2) To provide security by aerial surveillance and long-range aerial reconnaissance.

(3) To provide security by ground radar.

(4) To provide ground photo coverage.

(5) To provide aerial guidance for ground elements.

(6) To establish control by aerial radio relay.

(7) To establish control by aerial radio relay stations and aerial observation for the squadron commander.

## 158. Organization for Combat, R&S Platoon

*a. General.* The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon must organize for combat in a manner which will allow each section of the platoon to perform reconnaissance and surveillance most efficiently. Coordination of effort, proper use of equipment, efficient use of available Army aircraft, and proximity to landing strip facilities and the squadron command post are some of the many factors which must be considered before organizing for a particular mission.

*b. Army Aircraft Support.* All but two sections of the R&S platoon must be air-transported before they can be employed on a reconnaissance or surveillance mission. Army aircraft from the division aviation company must be placed under operational control of the squadron for effective employment of the R&S platoon by the squadron.

*c. Organization.* When the R&S platoon is under squadron control, the platoon headquarters (¾-ton truck and 2½-ton truck with photo lab) and the aerial TV section's 2½-ton truck normally remain close to the S2–S3 at the squadron command post. Unless the ground photo section and ground radar section are detached to troops, they remain in the vicinity of the squadron command post until required for a specific surveillance mission. The vehicle which transports radar equipment for the aerial infrared section remains in the vicinity of the platoon headquarters until aerial infrared or aerial radar (and sometimes aerial-photo) equipment is employed; it then moves to a position which will facilitate employment. Observers of the aerial reconnaissance section and operators of aerial radar, aerial infrared, and aerial TV remain on

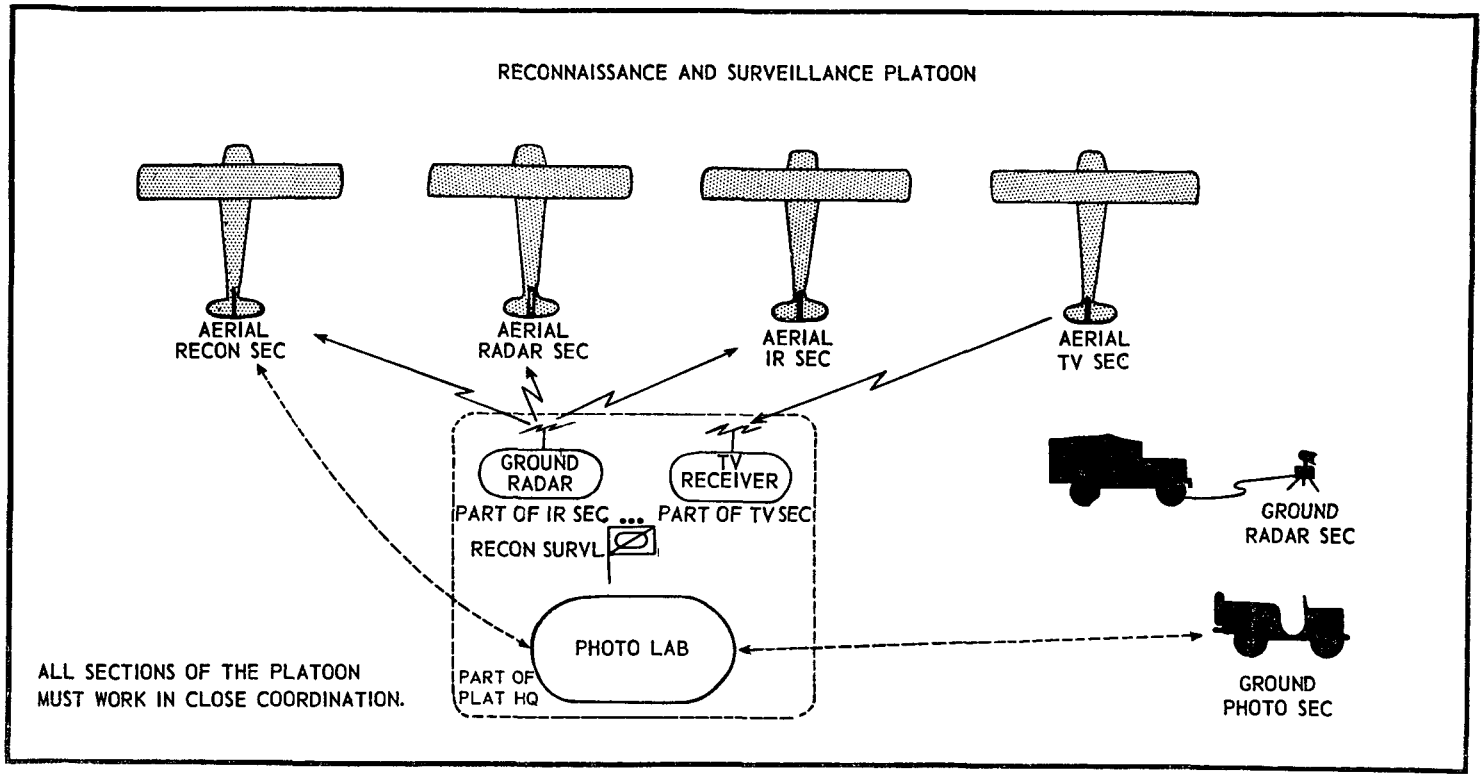



*Figure 46. Relationship between sections and equipment of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon.*

a standby basis at the squadron air strip or at the platoon headquarters. Figure 46 illustrates the relationship between sections of the platoon and equipment within sections. Aerial sections frequently supplement each other's detection abilities. The platoon photo lab supports both the aerial reconnaissance section and the ground photo section. The ground radar which is part of the infrared section provides a radar plot for either the aerial infrared, radar, or reconnaissance section when in flight.

## Section II. CAPABILITIES, R&S PLATOON

### 159. General

The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon has a capability which requires techniques which are not used by any other unit of the squadron. Paragraphs 160 through 165 discuss the capabilities of each section of the R&S platoon. When a period of poor visibility is mentioned, darkness is included.

### 160. Capabilities, Aerial Reconnaissance Section

The aerial reconnaissance section is employed in areas of operation requiring more distant observation and photography. It may be used to support other sections of the platoon. The section may conduct general or specific observation for the squadron. During observation flights, each observer and his camera equipment normally are transported by a fixed-wing aircraft. Targets which observers may be required to photograph include critical terrain features, areas requiring damage assessment, enemy concentrations detected by the aerial radar and infrared sections, and positions to be occupied by the squadron or other units. The section is capable of taking night photographs of specific areas.

### 161. Capabilities, Aerial Television Section

The aerial television section may be employed over areas requiring instantaneous aerial photo coverage. Operators using the airborne television system must keep the viewer at the receiver position oriented as to the specific target being viewed and the direction from which the target is being viewed (unless ground radar track is employed). Targets for television reconnaissance coverage may include the following:

*a.* Terrain and friendly troops at a critical point of action.

*b.* Routes or areas over which the commander desires a bird's-eye perspective.

*c.* Terrain features, such as rivers, of which a hasty view would provide supporting engineers and other supporting units ample information to immediately set in motion necessary support before a detailed reconnaissance can be made.

## 162. Capabilities, Aerial Infrared Section

*a.* The aerial infrared section may be employed in areas requiring detection devices which are more sensitive than the eye when targets (heat-producing) are concealed by camouflage and/or conditions of poor visibility. Infrared reconnaissance and surveillance is used when camouflage and poor visibility prevent detection of the enemy by other methods. Targets chosen for infrared coverage may include the following:

(1) Wooded areas which provide good camouflage for armor and mechanized units.
(2) Routes and route intersections where troop movement is expected during periods of poor visibility.
(3) Areas requiring general surveillance during periods of poor visibility.

*b.* Ground elements of the section must be able to immediately plot the position of detected enemy so that positive identification can be made by aerial and ground reconnaissance.

## 163. Capabilities, Aerial Radar Section

The aerial radar section may best be employed to detect and locate enemy movement during periods of poor visibility. While infrared equipment is used to detect the enemy in general, radar equipment is used to detect enemy movement over specific routes or from specific locations. Avenues of enemy approach, enemy lines of communication, and important road nets are the most likely targets which will be assigned the section. When enemy movement is detected, the location must be accurately reported to expedite further aerial and ground reconnaissance. This section may be used to track an enemy movement for direction and speed by plotting the enemy position at timed intervals.

## 164. Capabilities, Ground Photo Section

*a.* The ground photo section may be employed in areas where photographs of critical terrain features, obstacles, enemy equipment, and enemy construction are of value. Photographers frequently work with the reconnaissance troops. Typical subject material for ground photography may be—

(1) Terrain features which affect the employment of the squadron or which provide important intelligence information.
(2) Natural and artificial obstacles.
(3) Enemy equipment of which photographs would provide timely description.
(4) Enemy construction of which photographs would provide timely description.

*b.* Negatives must be rapidly transported to the platoon photo laboratory to provide timely information.

## 165. Capabilities, Ground Radar Section

The ground radar section may be best employed to detect enemy movement during conditions of poor visibility. The section usually works in close conjunction with the reconnaissance troops. The radar sets may be used to scan critical road junctions, routes, and avenues of approach which are important to the reconnaissance or surveillance mission. When the squadron is on a reconnaissance or security mission, the section normally is most effectively used at night as a surveillance device.

# Section III. RECONNAISSANCE BY R&S PLATOON

## 166. General

The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon is ideally equipped to assist in the performance of reconnaissance missions by armored cavalry units. When the squadron is employed as a unit on reconnaissance missions, the R&S platoon normally is employed as a unit. The platoon frequently is employed on reconnaissance missions when the squadron is on another type of mission.

## 167. Aerial Reconnaissance Section in Reconnaissance

*a. General.* The aerial reconnaissance section can be used to make visual and photographic flights across the entire squadron front; or it can be employed to reconnoiter a specific route, zone, or area for the squadron.

*b. Route Reconnaissance.* When the squadron is performing route reconnaissance, the aerial reconnaissance section may photograph the assigned route and extend the depth of reconnaissance by observation, or it may be used to extend the squadron frontage by observing critical terrain to the flanks of the assigned route. When obstacles or enemy are observed along a particular route, direct communication should be made with forward elements if necessary.

*c. Zone Reconnaissance.* During a zone reconnaissance, the aerial reconnaissance section normally is used to extend the depth of reconnaissance, to investigate critical areas, and to cover boundary areas which ground elements might not have time to cover.

*d. Area Reconnaissance.* During an area reconnaissance, the aerial-reconnaissance section is first used to investigate the route which has been chosen to approach the area. Subsequent employment is similar to that in zone reconnaissance.

## 168. Aerial Television Section in Reconnaissance

Except for route reconnaissance, the aerial television normally is kept on call for particular actions or area observation. For a route

reconnaissance mission, the section can very quickly cover lengthy portions of routes to give the commander a bird's-eye perspective.

### 169. Aerial Radar Section in Reconnaissance

The aerial radar section assists in the performance of route, zone, or area reconnaissance during periods of poor visibility. It is used in areas or along routes where enemy movement may be detected. When enemy movement is detected, it must be further checked by the infrared section, night photography, or ground reconnaissance elements.

### 170. Aerial Infrared Section in Reconnaissance

The aerial infrared section assists in the performance of route, zone, or area reconnaissance during periods of poor visibility and when camouflage techniques or natural concealment prevent detection of enemy targets (heat-producing). In contrast to the radar section, which detects enemy movement, the infrared section is used over all areas which may contain enemy forces.

### 171. Ground Radar Section in Reconnaissance

The ground radar section is employed as a stationary surveillance device during periods of poor visibility. It can be used with the forward elements when they are halted at night or on the flanks of the units as a security element.

### 172. Ground Photo Section in Reconnaissance

The ground photo section assists in the performance of all reconnaissance missions by photographing terrain features and enemy materiel which are important to the mission. Photographers normally must work with the troops to obtain timely photographs of subjects designated by the troop commanders or squadron staff. During route reconnaissance, road and bridge photography may be of primary importance.

## Section IV. SURVEILLANCE BY R&S PLATOON

### 173. General

*a.* The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon assists in the accomplishment of security missions by surveillance of the battle area. The R&S platoon has organic equipment which facilitates surveillance techniques. Each section of the platoon has a particular type of surveillance capability, and the capabilities of all sections must be integrated to complete the platoon surveillance system. Consequently, the platoon normally is employed as a unit under squadron control to accomplish surveillance missions. The ground radar section may be an exception to the general rule, in that its capabilities must be more closely integrated with troops of the squadron.

*b.* Having been assigned a surveillance mission, the R&S platoon leader develops a surveillance plan for effective and efficient employ-

ment of his sections. Figure 47 illustrates a typical surveillance plan as integrated with squadron surveillance.

## 174. Surveillance Control

Surveillance which is performed by the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon should be controlled by the platoon leader. When sections are detailed to support specific troops of the squadron, the platoon leader should be kept informed of their employment to eliminate duplication of effort. All surveillance efforts made by the platoon and other elements of the squadron must be coordinated with the squadron mission.

## 175. Aerial Reconnaissance Section in Surveillance

The aerial reconnaissance section normally is employed during periods of good visibility in daylight hours or for night photo missions. However, the surveillance plan may require the section to perform the more distant surveillance missions during periods of good visibility and to supplement infrared and radar missions during periods of poor visibility.

## 176. Aerial Television Section in Surveillance

The aeriel television section seldom is employed as an operating part of the surveillance plan. The section is normally reserved for specific target coverage. As targets are detected, the aerial TV may be used to give the squadron commander information of the action taking place.

## 177. Aerial Radar Section in Surveillance

The aerial radar section is integrated into the surveillance plan during periods of poor visibility. The section covers routes and areas over which enemy movement is possible and likely.

## 178. Aerial Infrared Section in Surveillance

The aerial infrared section is integrated into the surveillance plan during periods of poor visibility, over areas in which the enemy may be concealed.

## 179. Ground Radar Section in Surveillance

The ground radar section normally is integrated into the surveillance plan during periods of poor visibility and in areas where enemy movement can be detected by ground radar equipment. The section is given a sector surveillance mission which must be closely coordinated with other elements of the squadron. Terrain and protection by friendly troops play an important part in the assignment of surveillance missions to elements of the ground radar section.

## 180. Ground Photo Section in Surveillance

The ground photo section is reserved for reconnaissance and other special photographic missions. The section is not considered as an operating part of the surveillance plan.

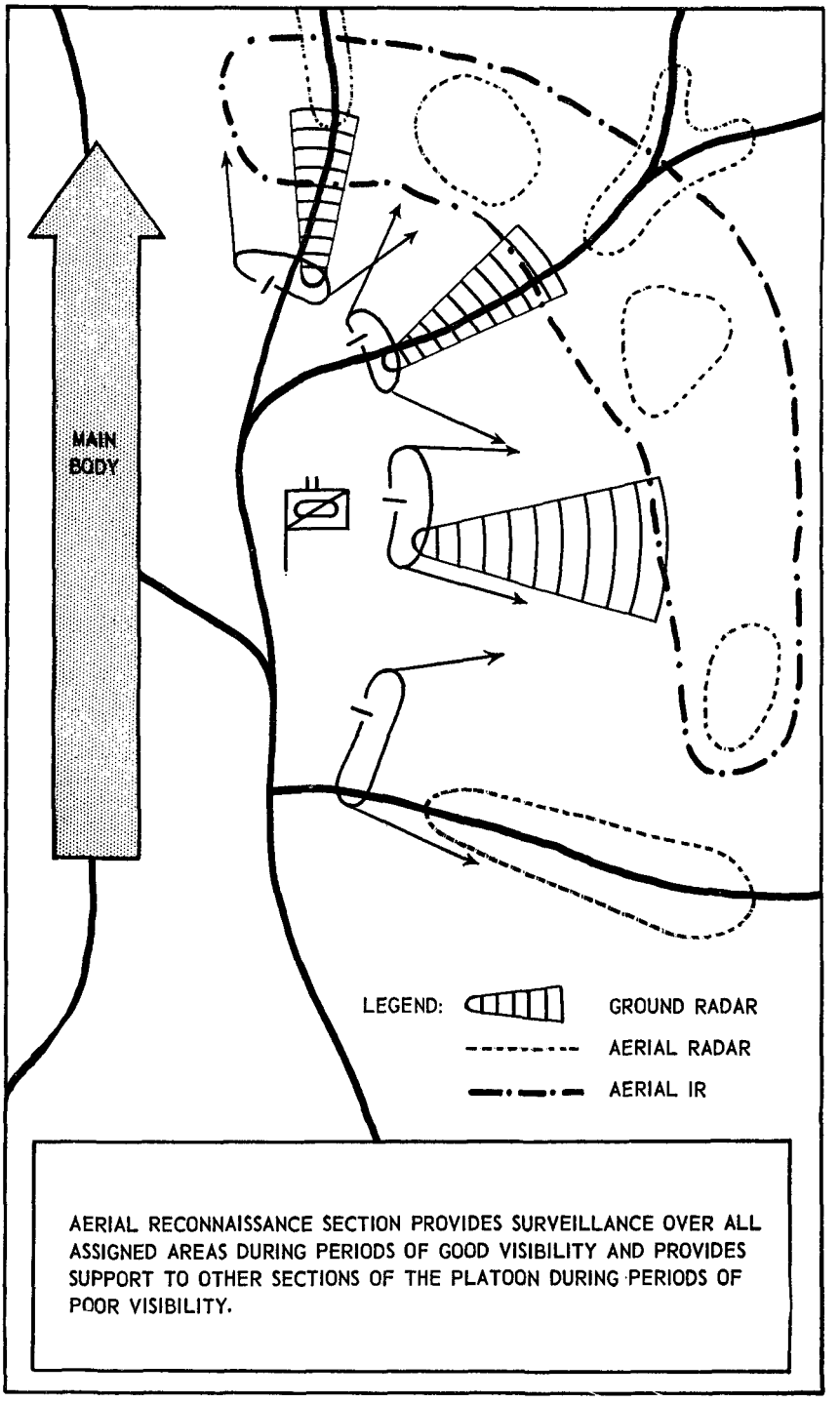



*Figure 47. Typical reconnaissance and surveillance platoon surveillance plan.*

# CHAPTER 12

# MORTAR SECTION AND SQUAD

## 181. General

The 4.2-inch mortar section (fig. 18) is organic to the reconnaissance troops of the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division. The support (81-mm mortar) squad is organic to the reconnaissance platoon (fig. 13) of the infantry division. For additional information on the employment of the 4.2-inch mortar, see appendix IV, FM 17–1.

## 182. Mission, Mortar Units

*a. Mortar Section.* The mortar section has the mission of furnishing close and continuous indirect fire in support of the reconnaissance troop.

*b. Support Squad.* The support squad has the mission of furnishing close and continous indirect fire in support of the reconnaissance platoon.

## 183. Characteristics, Mortar Section

*a. Firepower.* The 4.2-inch mortars of the mortar section are high-angle indirect-fire weapons capable of delivering high explosives and chemical ammunition at a high rate of fire at ranges from 950 to 6,000 yards (maximum range for white phosphorus is 5,050 yards). This heavy mortar can deliver illuminating shells at a maximum range of 4,000 yards. In addition, each carrier mounts a caliber .50 machine gun.

*b. Flexibility.* The section possesses adequate tactical flexibility through its complete mobility and its capability of firing weapons from the vehicular mount with minimum delay. The section is most effective and efficient when employed as a single firing unit; however, squads may be detached for independent missions. The capabilities of a detached squad are somewhat limited, and its fires should be restricted to targets within the range of observation.

*c. Communication.* The section is assigned a command net FM. All vehicles of the section are equipped with radios which are included as stations in this net. The section also has wire communication equipment for control when in position.

## 184. Characteristics, Support Squad

*a. Firepower.* The 81-mm mortar of the support squad is a high-angle indirect-fire weapon capable of delivering high explosive and chemi-

cal ammunition at a high rate of fire at ranges from 100 to 3,300 yards. Illuminating shells may be delivered at ranges up to 2,300 yards. In addition, the armored personnel carrier mounts a caliber .50 machine gun.

*b. Flexibility.* The squad possesses adequate tactical flexibility. Although the mortar cannot be fired from the carrier, a well-trained squad can go into action from the carrier in a matter of seconds.

*c. Communication.* The squad operates on the platoon command net FM. The squad leader attempts to position himself on the mortar-target line where both mortar and target can be seen; voice or visual signals are used for adjustment of fire unless additional communication facilities are provided.

## 185. Employment of Mortar Section

*a. General.* The mortar section is employed as a unit to provide indirect-fire support for the reconnaissance troop. The employment of the mortar section is based on its speed of operation and movement and its constant readiness to provide fire support. Firing normally is conducted from the on-carrier position.

*b. Missions.* The section is employed—

(1) To furnish close and continuous general support to the platoons.

(2) To provide battlefield illumination, deliver chemical munitions (including smoke), and execute target-marking operations for tactical air.

*c. Attack.* The mortar section position is indicated in the troop commander's attack order. The position must permit the furnishing of maximum fire support to the unit or units to be supported. The forward observer accompanies the troop commander unless directed to accompany a particular platoon. Prior to the attack, the section leader makes recommendations to the troop commander with regard to preparatory and supporting fires. Fires are coordinated with squadron and with available artillery forward observers. Prearranged fires are delivered as scheduled or on call. Forward observers should be alert to engage targets of opportunity. Priority of fires normally is specified prior to the attack. Plans for displacement are made prior to the attack. The section leader notifies the troop commander when movement is necessary. Displacements should be completed quickly so that maximum fires can be resumed as soon as possible.

*d. Defense.* During defense, the mortar section should be kept intact and positioned so that it is capable of supporting any element of the troop. Preplanned fires should indicate concentrations for all probable targets. Consideration must be given to both minimum and maximum range of the mortar. Close-in protective fires cannot be obtained unless the mortars are positioned a considerable distance rearward.

*e. Delaying Actions.* The section normally is positioned immediately behind the initial troop delaying position. The fires of the section should engage advancing enemy forces at maximum ranges. Close-in fires, fires in support of the reserve, and fires in support of the withdrawal should be preplanned and integrated into the fire-support plan. Displacement of the mortar section will be closely timed by the troop commander; therefore, the section must be prepared to move rapidly to the next preselected position.

## 186. Employment of Support Squad

*a. Attack.* In the attack, the platoon leader directs the employment of the support squad. The squad is employed in general support of the platoon and fired from a centrally located position. Because of the dispersion of mortar fire, the squad normally engages area targets. The platoon leader selects the general position area for the support squad. The squad armored personnel carrier is positioned near the mortar to facilitate ammunition supply and rapid displacement. The carrier driver mans the caliber .50 machine gun and provides security for the squad during firing. The following factors should be considered when selecting firing positions for the 81-mm mortar:

(1) The position should be within 2,000 yards of the platoon objective in order to provide effective close support for the attacking units. The mortar can support the assault at greater range; however, the dispersion of rounds requires lifting or shifting of fires while dismounted infantry are farther from the objective.

(2) The position should be in defilade and should allow for mask and overhead clearance.

(3) The position should allow the squad leader to place himself where mortar and target can be observed.

*b. Defense.* The support squad occupies a firing position which is within the rear portion of the platoon defensive position. Concentrations are planned to cover the most probable target areas, and a barrage is planned. The following factors should be considered in selecting defensive positions for the 81-mm mortar:

(1) The position must provide maximum coverage of the front and flanks of the platoon position.

(2) The position should be in defilade and should allow for mask and overhead clearance.

(3) The position should have good routes of resupply.

(4) Alternate and supplementary positions should be prepared.

(5) The position should allow the squad leader to place himself where the mortar and all probable targets can be observed,

unless other communication facilities have been obtained for the squad.

*c. Delaying Actions.* During delaying actions, the support squad occupies a position which is in rear of the delaying position. In selecting a firing position, the factors mentioned in *b* above should be considered with the following additions:

(1) The position should allow taking the enemy under fire at maximum range.

(2) The position should have a good route of withdrawal which will allow rapid displacement to the rear.

## 187. Forward Observers of Mortar Units

*a. General.* All officers and key NCOs of the troop and platoon must be able to call for and adjust mortar fires in the absence of the forward observer. The procedures for coordinating, requesting, and adjusting fires may be found in FMs 6–40, 6–50, 7–37, 23–90, and 23–92.

*b. Mortar Section.* The mortar section forward observer (FO) normally operates near the troop commander. The FO formulates and forwards fire requests as directed by the troop commander, and adjusts fires.

*c. Support Squad.* The support squad leader performs the duties of forward observer for the squad. He must remain in a position from which he can see the mortar and the target unless adequate wire or radio communication facilities are provided.

## 188. Fire Support Planning by Mortar Units

All fire support planning which pertains to the use of mortars should be coordinated with all other available supporting fires. Mortar leaders furnish advice and plans to their next higher commander for the use of mortars in each situation.

# PART THREE

# RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

# CHAPTER 13

# GENERAL

## Section I. GENERAL

### 189. Purpose and Scope

Part three of this manual is a discussion of tactics and techniques employed by the reconnaissance troop. Attack, defense, retrograde, reconnaissance, and security operations are each covered in a separate chapter. The reconnaissance troops of the armored division and infantry division conduct various operations in essentially the same manner; therefore, the tactics and techniques for each type operation, as discussed, will pertain to both troops.

### 190. Types of Reconnaissance Troops

There are two types of reconnaissance troop organizations. One type is integrated at company level, and the other type is integrated at platoon level. (Integration is the combining of tank, armored infantry, scout, and mortar elements into one tactical unit.) Regardless of type, reconnaissance troops will be assigned the same basic missions.

### 191. Capabilities of Reconnaissance Troop

The reconnaissance troop is a tactical unit capable of performing reconnaissance, providing security, and executing combat missions as an economy force. It is capable of performing its portion of all missions assigned the armored cavalry squadron.

## Section II. ORGANIZATION, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

### 192. General

Reconnaissance troops are organic to the armored cavalry squadron and the infantry division cavalry squadron. The reconnaissance troop of the armored division consists of a troop headquarters, a mortar section, two light-gun tank platoons, an armored rifle platoon, and a scout

platoon (fig. 48). The reconnaissance troop of the infantry division consists of a troop headquarters and three reconnaissance platoons—each having tank, armored infantry, scout, and mortar elements (fig. 49). For details of platoon and section organization, see chapter 6.

## 193. Troop Headquarters, Reconnaissance Troop, Armored Division

The reconnaissance troop of the armored division contains a troop headquarters which consists of a headquarters section, maintenance section, and administrative, mess, and supply section (fig. 48).

*a. Headquarters Section.* The headquarters section comprises the troop command post. It is the center of operational control of the troop and operates under the direct control of the executive officer. It is the source of reports, and handles communication, liaison, and planning with higher headquarters and adjacent units.

*b. Maintenance Section.* The maintenance section performs organizational maintenance on the vehicles, radios, and weapons of the troop. It performs vehicle evacuation within its capabilities.

*c. Administrative, Mess, and Supply Section.* The function of the administrative, mess, and supply section is to feed, supply, and perform the administrative duties of the troop. During combat, this section normally operates from the squadron trains area.

## 194. Troop Headquarters, Reconnaissance Troop, Infantry Division

The reconnaissance troop of the infantry division contains the same sections in the troop headquarters as the troop of the armored division (par. 193). The organization of each section is as shown in figure 49. Because the administrative, mess, and supply section has no organic vehicles, the executive officer must habitually keep its transportation problem in mind. The squadron transportation section normally will provide this section's transportation.

## 195. Duties of Troop Headquarters Personnel

*a. Headquarters Section.* Key personnel in the headquarters section include the troop commander, executive officer, first sergeant, communication chief, and liaison sergeant.

(1) For duties of the troop commander, see paragraphs 68–75, FM 17–1.

(2) The executive officer is second in command of the troop. He keeps abreast of the tactical situation and must be prepared to assume command at any time. As the troop commander's principal assistant, the executive officer supervises the func-

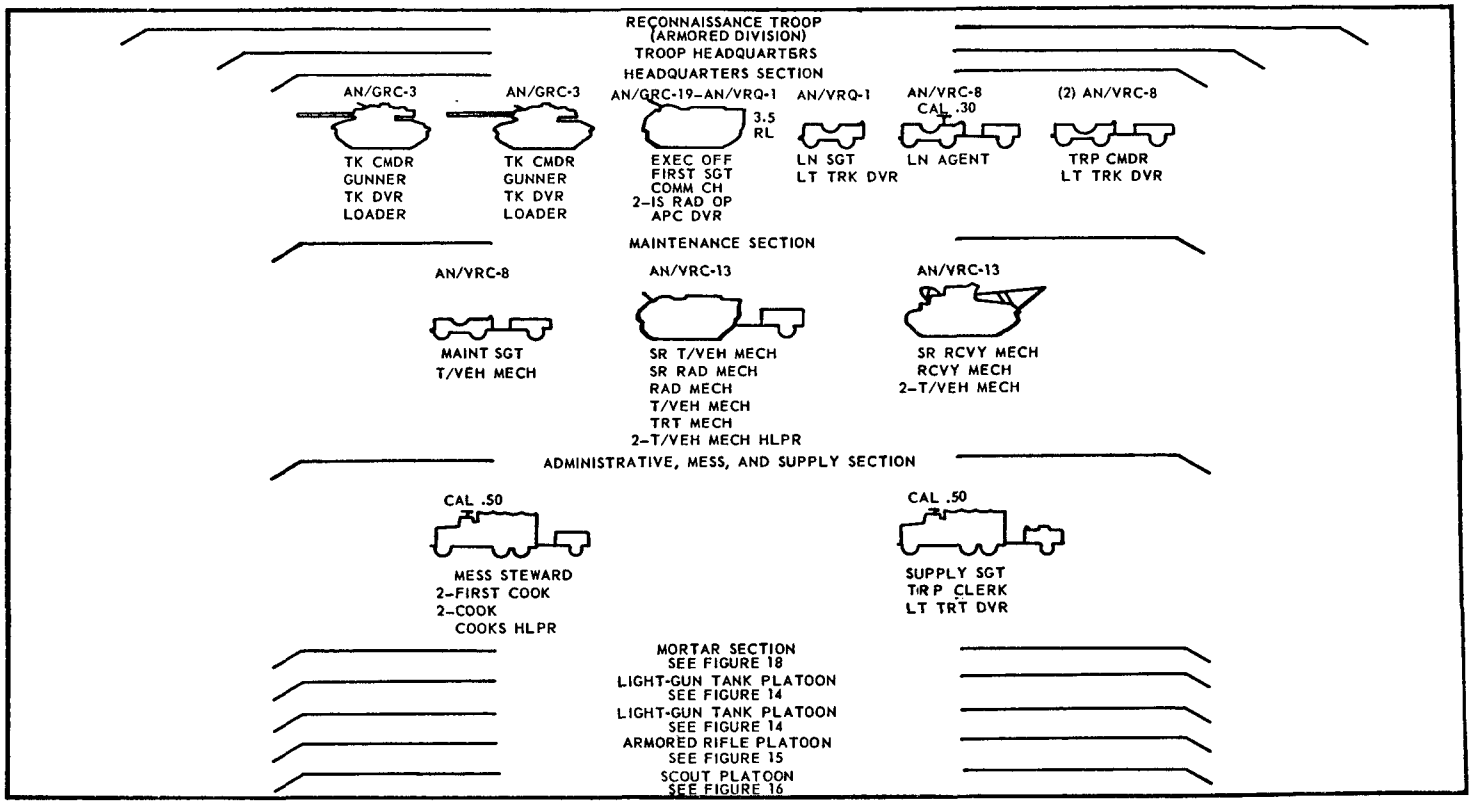



*Figure 48. Manning chart, reconnaissance troop, armored division.*

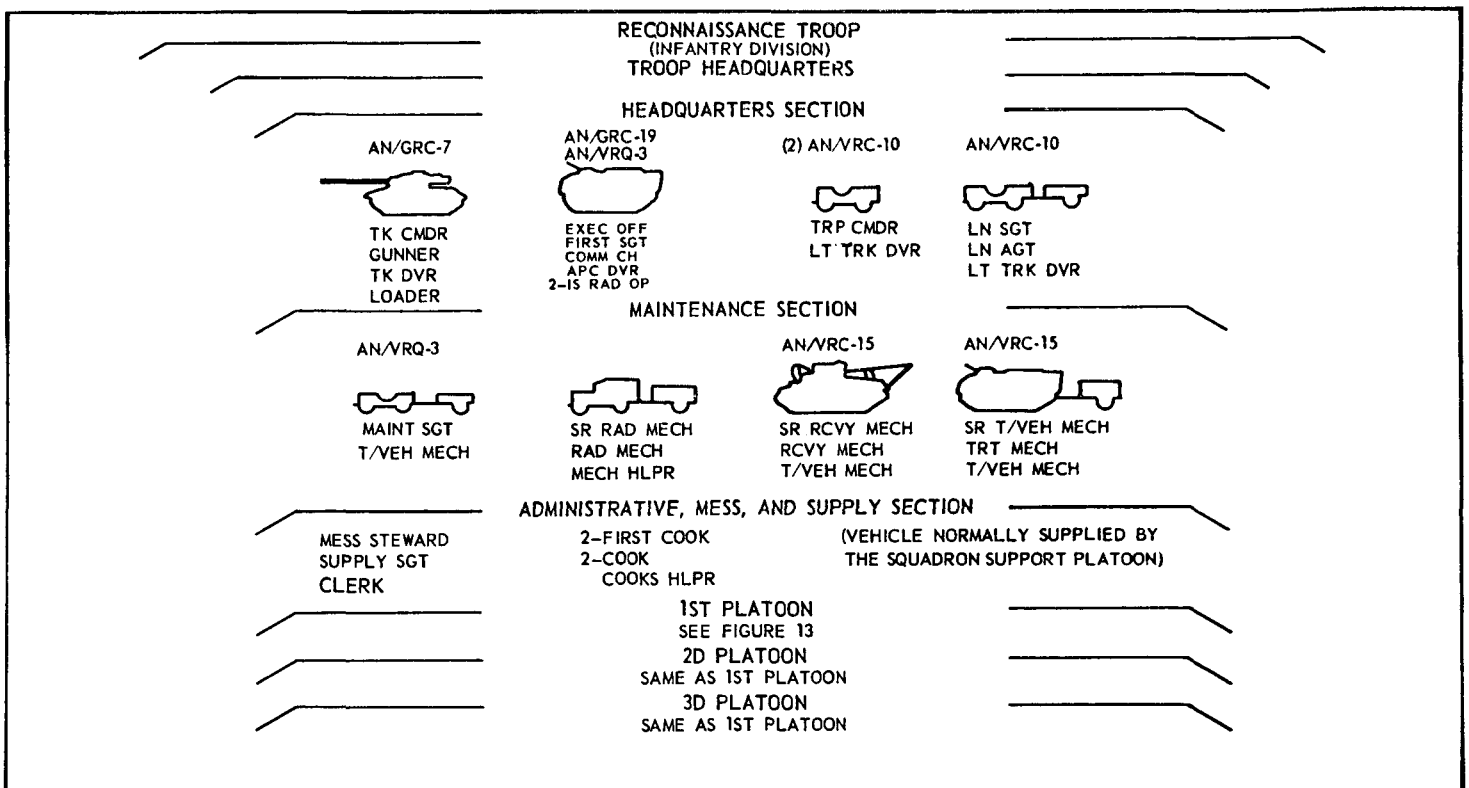



*Figure 49. Manning chart, reconnaissance troop, infantry division.*

tioning of troop service support elements and has direct control of the troop command post. He handles most of the troop administrative details to include supervision of troop maintenance activities, so that the troop commander can devote the bulk of his time to operations, training, and discipline. The executive officer has direct control of the troop command post and is responsible for its movement, security, and operation. He insures that communication is maintained with the platoons, the troop commander, and the squadron headquarters.

(3) The first sergeant is the troop commander's administrative assistant; however, his duties may vary from administrative and supply matters to commanding a platoon. He normally assists the executive officer in command post control and represents him during his absence from the command post.

(4) The communication chief advises the troop commander and executive officer on all communication matters. He supervises the installation, operation, and maintenance of troop communication systems, and supervises and trains communication personnel of the troop. Although radio mechanics are a part of the maintenance section, the communication chief supervises their activities. He insures that radio operators are properly relieved, that they maintain efficient communication, and that they record incoming and outgoing messages properly.

(5) The liaison sergeant provides direct communication facilities between the troop command post and higher headquarters. He keeps informed of the existing tactical situation and the plans of the unit to which he is sent. He may be required to act as a radio relay station, to carry messages and orders, or to guide elements from the squadron command post forward to the troop command post.

*b. Maintenance Section.* The maintenance sergeant commands the maintenance section and advises the troop commander and executive officer on all maintenance matters. He maintains the troop reserve of repair parts and keeps maintenance records.

*c. Administrative, Mess, and Supply Section.* The troop administrative, mess, and supply section prepares administrative data for submission to higher headquarters and feeds, clothes, and equips personnel of the troop. It includes the supply sergeant, mess steward, cooks, troop clerk, and driver. This section is transported in cargo trucks and trailers.

## Section III. EMPLOYMENT, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

### 196. General

*a.* Reconnaissance troops may be employed on reconnaissance, security, or economy-force missions for the unit to which assigned or

attached. The situation confronting the higher commander will determine the best employment of the troop.

*b.* A reconnaissance troop normally is employed on missions which complement the squadron mission or the mission of the unit to which the troop is attached. The following missions are particularly suitable for the reconnaissance troop:

(1) Provide reconnaissance and surveillance over a wide front.
(2) Provide flank security on one flank of a division unit (combat command or battle group).
(3) Act as part of a security force between elements of the division and/or between the division and adjacent units.
(4) Act as part of a covering force in offensive, defensive, or retrograde operations.
(5) Provide a screen for a larger unit.
(6) Assist in rear area security.
(7) Assist in maintaining combat liaison between major units.
(8) Conduct limited offensive, defensive, and retrograde operations as part of an economy-force unit.

## 197. Employment of Reconnaissance Troop, Armored Division

The reconnaissance troop may operate under direct control of the squadron, or it may be attached to a combat command or other subordinate element of the division. The troop is most effectively employed as a unit, without detachments, under squadron control. The troop may be attached to a combat command when the mission of the troop is of primary interest to one combat command and when control by squadron would be difficult. When the troop is detached from squadron, a proportionate share of fuel and lubricant, ammunition, and medical evacuation support is attached to it.

## 198. Employment of Reconnaissance Troop, Infantry Division

The reconnaissance troop of the infantry division normally is employed under direct control of its parent squadron. However, the troop may be attached to a battle group or the division armor battalion, or it may be used to form the nucleus of an armored task force. The troop is most effectively employed as a unit, without detachments, under squadron control. The troop may be attached to a battle group or the armor battalion when the mission of the troop is of primary interest to that battle group or battalion and when control by the parent squadron would be difficult. This may occur when a battle group is on an independent mission or when weather and terrain restrict operations. The employment of a reconnaissance troop for flank security is particularly desirable when the battle group is reinforced with armored personnel carriers and

tanks. When the troop is detached from its squadron, a proportionate share of fuel and lubricant, ammunition, and medical evacuation support is attached to it.

## Section IV. ORGANIZATION FOR COMBAT, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

### 199. General

The reconnaissance troop commander is responsible for the organization for combat of the troop command post, the troop trains, and the platoons. In order to determine the most feasible organization of his forces to accomplish an assigned mission, the troop commander considers the factors of METT (mission, enemy, terrain and weather, and troops available). The essential elements of combined arms are present within each reconnaissance troop. This enables troop commanders to organize and apportion tanks, armored infantry, scouts, and mortars to suit a particular mission. During training, troop SOPs should be established to facilitate the rapid formation of various platoon task organizations.

### 200. Organization for Combat, Reconnaissance Troop, Armored Division

*a.* The platoons of the reconnaissance troop normally are employed directly under the control of the troop commander. Many situations will arise which require temporary reorganization of one or more platoons to accomplish specific missions. In this case, the troop commander shifts elements of the platoons to form larger or smaller armored cavalry platoon teams, and apportions the tanks, armored infantry, scout, and mortar strength of the troop to best accomplish the mission.

*b.* Figure 50 illustrates various task organizations which can be formed.

### 201. Organization for Combat, Reconnaissance Troop, Infantry Division

*a.* The troop commander normally employs his reconnaissance platoons as organized, directly under his control. The organization of the reconnaissance troop is well suited for the performance of missions which require dispersion over a wide front. However, the troop may be assigned missions which require a concentration of effort. In the performance of these missions, it may be desirable to organize the troop into combined-arms teams containing various ratios of tanks, armored infantry, and scout elements. This is accomplished by reinforcing platoons with the tank sections, rifle squads, or scout elements of other platoons. The troop commander should consider grouping the three support squads whenever the situation permits them to support the entire troop from one position.

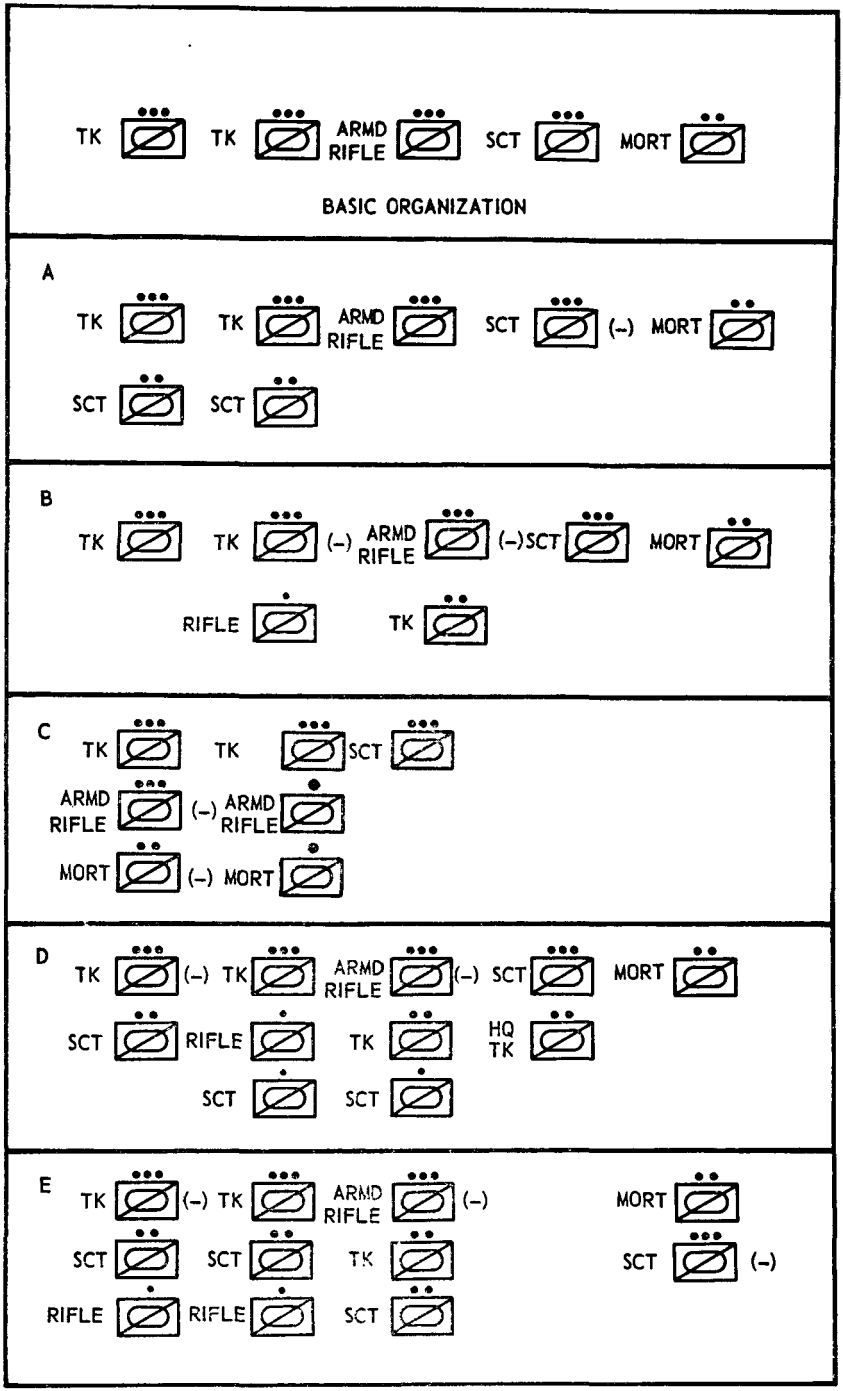



*Figure 50. Typical task organizations which may be formed by the reconnaissance troop, armored division.*

*b.* Figure 51 illustrates various task organizations which can be formed.

## 202. Combat Support for Reconnaissance Troop

See paragraph 281.

## 203. Organization for Combat and Employment of Troop Headquarters

*a. General.* The differences which exist in the number of personnel and the amount of equipment within the sections of the two basic types of troop headquarters do not affect the basic organization and employment for combat. The troop headquarters of all reconnaissance troops are employed in the same manner, using the tactics, techniques, and procedures described in this paragraph.

*b. Organization of Troop Headquarters.* During combat operations, the troop headquarters normally is organized into the group command post and troop trains. The troop command post contains the personnel and equipment required for the control of the troop, while the trains include those attached or organic personnel and vehicles necessary for the logistical support of the troop.

*c. Command Post.*

(1) *Troop commander.* When the troop is committed to action, the troop commander normally controls his troop from one of the headquarters section tanks or his ¼-ton truck. He may be accompanied by an artillery forward observer mounted in the second headquarters tank (note that the reconnaissance troop of the infantry division does not have this second tank). The wide frontages covered by the troop usually will require that the troop commander position himself with a centrally located platoon, or on terrain which is favorable for communication.

(2) *Movement.* The command post normally follows the combat element of the troop by bounds. Elements of the command post must be able to move by infiltration from one position to another when required.

(3) *Location and arrangement.* Each position selected should facilitate communication with front-line platoons and the squadron command post, logistical support, and command post security. The troop command post is organized around the armored personnel carrier organic to the troop headquarters section (fig. 52). From this vehicle the executive officer operates a station in the squadron command net AM, and monitors the squadron and troop command nets FM. The troop command post must remain mobile and operate from vehicles during combat operations.

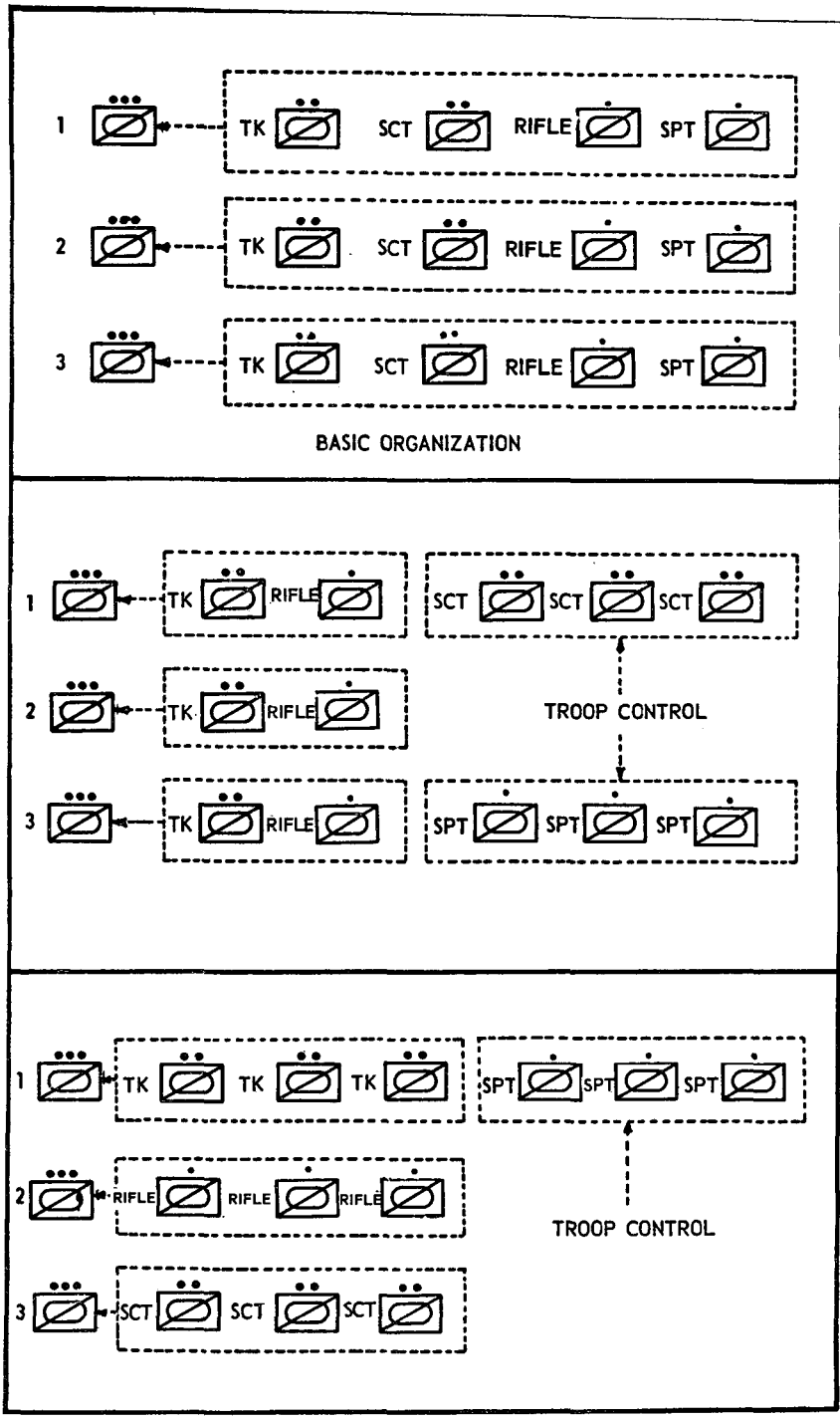



*Figure 51. Typical task organizations which may be formed by the reconnaissance troop, infantry division.*

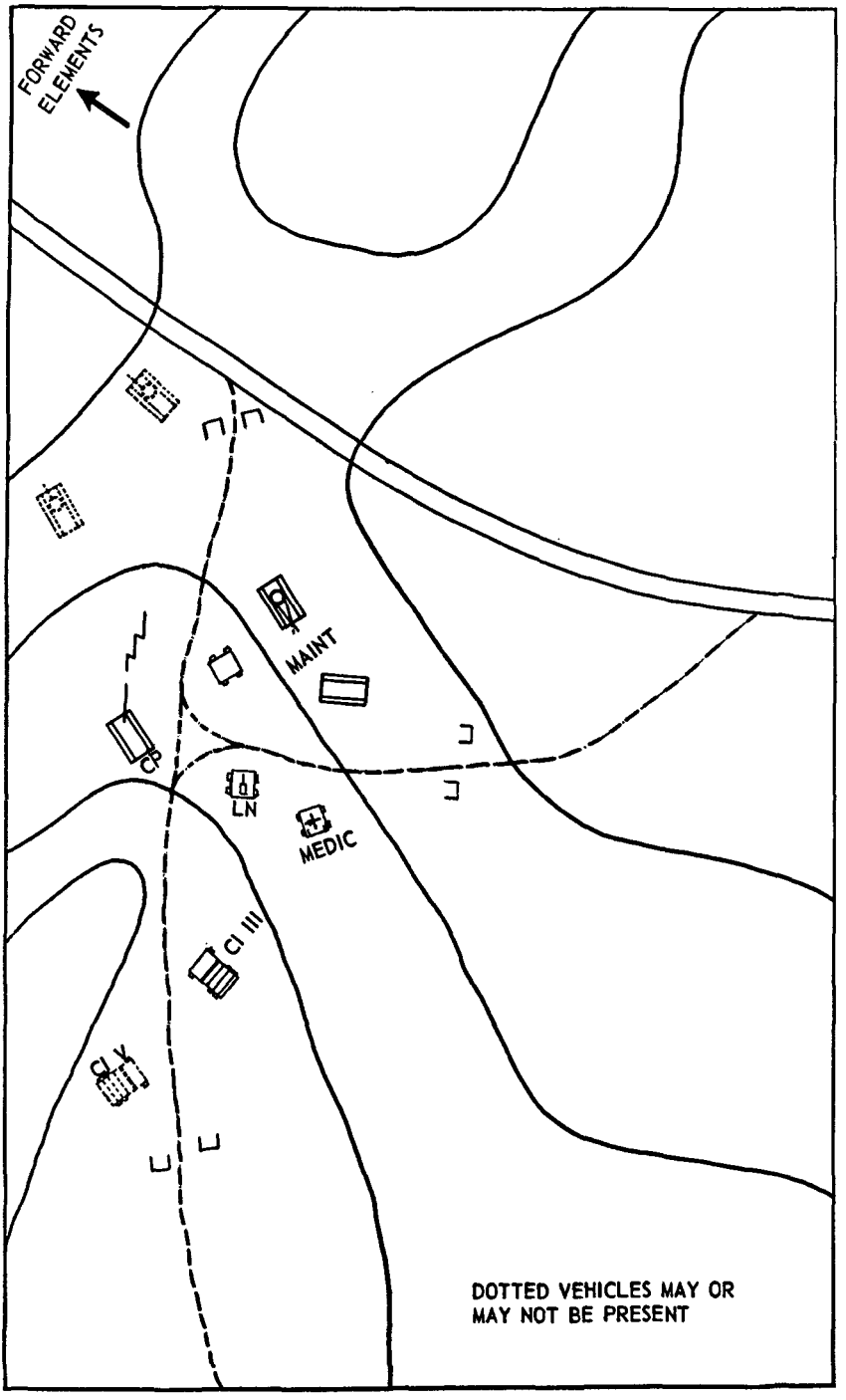



*Figure 52. Location and arrangement of a typical troop command post during an operation.*

*d. Troop Trains.* Troop trains consist of the administrative, mess, and supply section, the troop maintenance section, and the attached medical aid-evacuation team. The troop trains are further classified as troop combat trains and troop field trains. See FM 17–50.

## 204. Command, Control, and Liaison in Reconnaissance Troops

*a.* The commander of a reconnaissance troop exercises control of his unit through his platoon leaders. During combat, the troop commander places himself where he can best direct and control the actions of his unit. His instructions and directions are transmitted as troop orders, either personally, by messenger, or by radio.

*b.* Liaison personnel are provided in the troop headquarters section. Normally, this liaison party is dispatched to the next higher headquarters. If a requirement exists for liaison with one or more flank units as well as with higher headquarters, temporary liaison parties are established, using personnel from organic platoons. See paragraph 88, FM 17–1, for the duties of liaison personnel.

# CHAPTER 14

# OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

## 205. General

See chapter 8, FM 17–1, for a discussion of the purposes of the offense, fundamentals of attack, techniques of employing tanks and armored infantry, control measures, passage of lines, night attacks, and other operations requiring additional consideration.

## 206. Reconnaissance Troop in Offensive Operations

The reconnaissance troop attacks when necessary to accomplish its assigned mission. For example, the troop will attack when the mission requires the destruction or capture of enemy encountered, when it is necessary to reduce an enemy position in order to continue the mission, or when the mission is to seize a particular objective. The troop may attack alone, with or without reinforcements, or as part of the squadron. Frequently the attack must be made from march column, obtaining the maximum shock effect with a minimum of delay. Speed in launching the attack and rapidity of action are vital in this type of operation.

## 207. Preparation for Attack, Reconnaissance Troop

*a.* The troop commander's preparation for the attack consists of coordinating with other units (when appropriate), planning and making a reconnaissance, making an estimate of the situation, formulating a plan of attack, issuing his oral attack order, and moving his unit to the attack position. Often, in fast-moving, fluid situations, these actions must be completed in a comparatively short period of time. At all times he actively supervises the execution of preparations and orders.

*b.* Before an attack, the reconnaissance troop may assemble in an area designated by the squadron commander. Here detailed preparations for the attack are completed. When the troop attacks from march column to exploit a situation, it normally moves directly into the attack without occupying an attack position or assembly area. Nevertheless, if time and the enemy situation permit, the troop will use an assembly area, an attack position, and a line of departure, and will designate an axis of supply and evacuation, in executing an attack on a designated objective. On occasion, for example, when the unit is planning a surprise daylight attack, it may be advisable for the assault units to move into a com-

bination assembly area and attack position during darkness. Here they would refuel, conduct maintenance, and resupply, then launch the attack.

*c.* Normally, while the troop is preparing for the attack, the troop commander joins the squadron commander to receive the attack order. He usually takes with him the individuals necessary to plan the attack, including a messenger. One officer, usually the executive officer, remains with the troop and, assisted by the platoon leaders and noncommissioned officers, makes certain that the unit is ready for combat. All vehicles and weapons are inspected, troop radio nets are checked (unless radio or listening silence is in effect), and the necessary resupply of ammunition, fuel and lubricants, and rations is accomplished. If the troop is attached to another unit, the troop commander contacts the commander of that unit. It must be borne in mind, however, that the application of these techniques to all attacks is limited by the time available for preparation and planning the attack.

## 208. Reconnaissance Prior to Attack, Reconnaissance Troop

Before the reconnaissance troop is committed to an attack, the commander normally makes a personal ground reconnaissance. He arranges to have his subordinate leaders accompany him or come forward to meet him at a specified time and place. After the commander issues his attack order, the subordinate leaders make as detailed a reconnaissance as the time available will permit. If time does not permit a ground reconnaissance, leaders make a detailed map study.

## 209. Estimate of Situation, Reconnaissance Troop

The estimate of the situation (pars. 91–93, FM 17–1) is a continuous examination of all factors which affect the accomplishment of the mission. The commander uses the basic form for the estimate as a mental checklist to insure that he considers all pertinent factors before making his decision as to which course of action he will follow.

## 210. Troop Plan of Attack

*a.* The plan of attack is designed to effect teamwork and to insure maximum coordination within the attacking forces throughout the operation (fig. 53). The plan must be simple, but must cover all essential details. It should include the location and composition of the base of fire, targets to be fired upon, and signals for lifting or shifting the fires of the base of fire. It should include the composition of the maneuvering force, the route it will follow to the objective, and its method of advance. It should include provisions for security during the attack, for consolidation of the objective, for reorganization after the attack, and for resumption of the advance. The plan of attack includes the *who, what, when, where* and possibly *how* and *why* details of the troop's actions in carrying out the assigned mission.

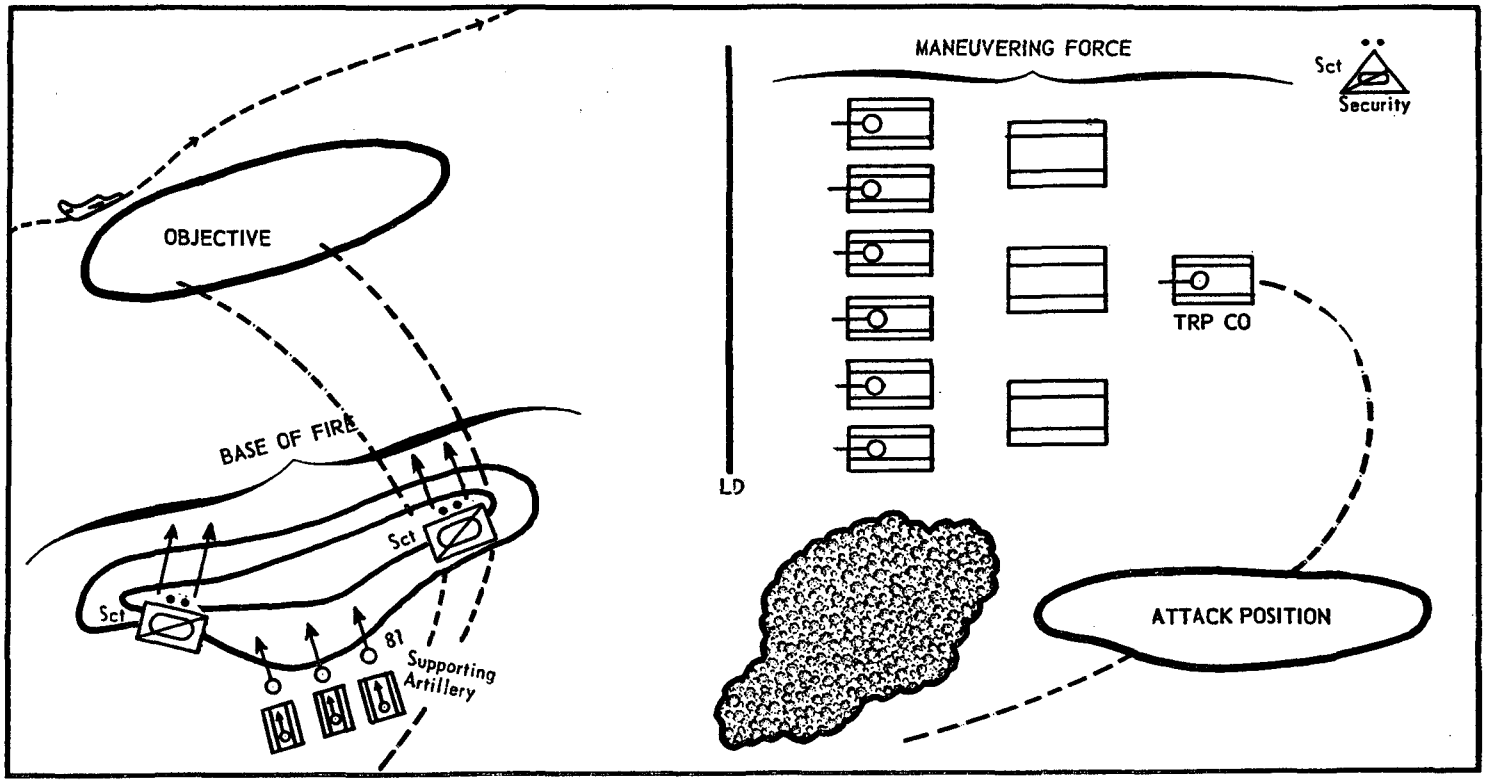



*Figure 53. Distribution of forces of a reconnaissance troop composed of integrated platoons in a troop mounted attack.*

*b.* The plan of attack includes the plan of maneuver and the fire-support plan (fig. 54) (par. 259, FM 17–1).

## 211. Maneuvering Force, Reconnaissance Troop

*a.* The troop may comprise all or part of the maneuvering force of an attack conducted by a larger unit. When required to conduct an independent attack, the troop provides elements for both the base of fire and the maneuvering force.

*b.* Whenever possible, tanks and *mounted* armored infantry should be employed in the maneuvering force as tank-armored infantry teams.

*c.* If the terrain prohibits the use of vehicles, the maneuvering force may consist of dismounted rifle squads and riflemen from the scout platoon (sections). When the scouts are so employed, they should be integrated into the rifle squad formations.

*d.* Due to their lack of armor protection, scouts normally are not included within a mounted maneuvering force but generally are employed to augment the fires of the base of fire or to provide security for the maneuvering force, the base of fire, or both.

*e.* Within a reconnaissance troop composed of integrated platoons, the commander may employ one of several combinations of his platoon elements to constitute his maneuvering force—

(1) A provisional tank platoon of six tanks.

(2) A provisional armored rifle platoon of three squads.

(3) Tank-infantry teams, consisting of two tanks and one rifle squad each.

*f.* Normally, the troop commander accompanies the maneuvering force, controlling it directly. Provisional groups of tanks, armored infantry, and scout section personnel are commanded by personnel designated by the troop commander, or as covered in the unit SOP.

## 212. Base of Fire, Reconnaissance Troop

*a.* The base of fire may consist of supporting artillery, tactical air, mortars, and, if necessary, direct-fire weapons of the armored cavalry units.

*b.* The nucleus for the reconnaissance troop base of fire includes mortars, artillery, and tactical air when available. Mortars of a troop consisting of integrated platoons are grouped under troop control whenever they can effectively support the troop attack. Elements of the scout platoon (section) may frequently be used in the base of fire. When it is necessary for the maneuvering force to attack dismounted, the tank platoons (sections) will be used in the base of fire. The troop commander usually designates one officer—the executive officer or a

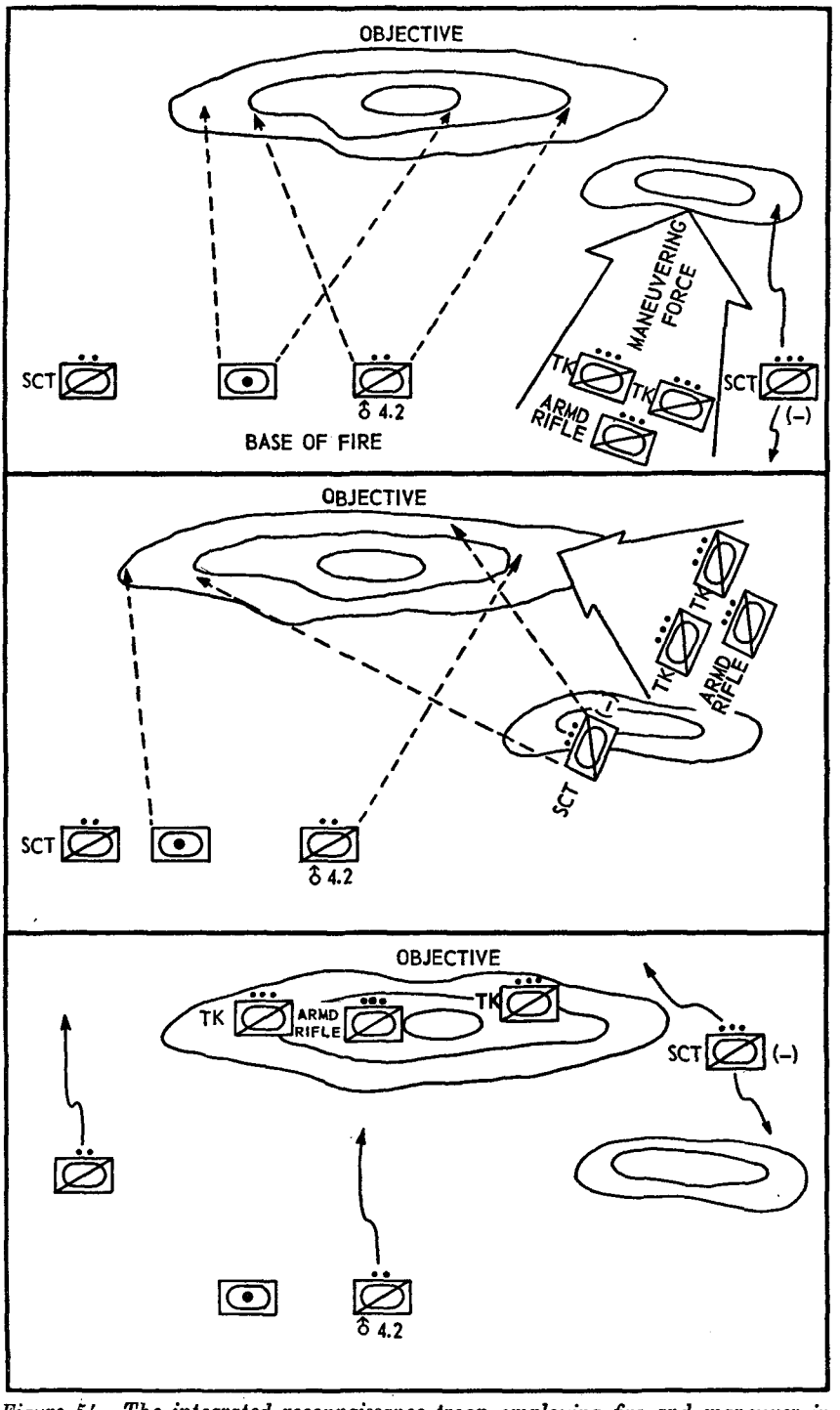



*Figure 54. The integrated reconnaissance troop employing fire and maneuver in the attack.*

platoon leader—to control that part of the base of fire provided by organic elements of the troop.

## 213. Troop Operation Order for Attack

The operation order for the attack (par. 95, FM 17–1) is the verbal expression of the commander's plan. It should be brief, clear, and complete. To insure completeness, the commander should use the proper form and carefully explain the contents to his key subordinates.

## 214. Supervision of Troop Attack

Supervision is a continuous process by the troop commander, platoon leaders, and noncommissioned officers. All officers and noncommissioned officers must actively supervise the actions of their subordinates to insure that their units are fully prepared for the operation. Detailed checks must be made on such matters as supply, maintenance, communication, and the plan of attack. Once the attack has been launched, all leaders supervise and control the actions of their units from wherever they can best influence the action.

## 215. Conduct of Troop Attack

*a. Control.* The troop commander locates himself where he can best influence the action and control his unit. His position usually is well forward. Although radio is the primary means of control for the troop commander, arm and hand signals are used within the troop as much as possible to leave the radio frequencies free for necessary transmissions. Messengers may also be used within the troop.

*b. Fire and Movement.* See paragraph 277, FM 17–1.

*c. Conduct of Maneuvering Force.* See paragraph 276, FM 17–1.

*d. Conduct of Base of Fire.* See paragraph 278, FM 17–1.

## 216. Troop Assault on Objective

In a reconnaissance troop, the assault may be made with tanks and armored infantry on line, or with tanks followed immediately by dismounted armored infantry. Whichever method is used, the tanks destroy enemy groups, defensive works, weapons, and emplacements by direct fire. The riflemen close with and destroy the enemy in close combat and protect the tanks from individual antitank weapons. Each rifle squad is located in a formation according to the directions of the armored rifle platoon leader. One member of each rifle squad is selected by the squad leader to walk behind the tanks and watch for signals from both the commander of the tanks and the squad leader. Supporting fires increase as the troop and its platoons close on the objective. They shift to isolate the objective just before the troop begins the assault. Supporting fires should be timed to permit the maneuvering force to launch the assault

without halting. As soon as the assault starts, the tanks advance slowly onto the objective, firing their machine guns. Armored personnel carrier machine guns are used to support the assault until masked by advancing riflemen. The riflemen and automatic riflemen use assault fire to close with the enemy. During the assault, the tanks provide close-in support for the infantry, who will be mopping up on the objective. The assaulting forces advance to the far side of the objective, where they prepare for a possible counterattack and for the continuation of the attack to the next objective.

## 217. Troop Actions on Objective

See paragraphs 281 through 283, FM 17–1.

## 218. Continuation of Attack by the Troop

*a.* The reconnaissance troop commander should have a complete picture of the overall plan of the next higher commander and make a continuous estimate of the situation. By use of this estimate and his knowledge of the higher commander's plan, he can adopt formations which enable the unit to readily continue the attack. If this procedure is followed, his subordinate commanders will need only brief oral orders to resume operations.

*b.* Most troop-size attacks are made to further a reconnaissance or security mission. Therefore, if enemy resistance has been negligible during the attack, the commander should rapidly continue his mission, using only a minimum of time for reorganization.

*c.* Ordinarily, the enemy will strive to hold his position until nightfall and effect his withdrawal under cover of darkness. The attacking force maintains relentless pressure by continuing the attack at night. By these attacks, contact is maintained, the enemy is kept off balance, and his withdrawal from action is made difficult. If the enemy succeeds in disengaging, and adopts a delaying action, the attack is continued by concentrating in a decisive direction. An attack pushed energetically through the hostile front may isolate major elements and force the enemy to an early evacuation of the whole position.

## 219. Employment of Troop as Part of a Larger Force

The reconnaissance troop may participate in offensive action in the accomplishment of a reconnaissance or security mission or as an economy force, either in an independent action or as part of a larger force. When acting as part of a larger force, the troop normally is employed in the base of fire; however, under certain conditions, the entire troop or certain of its elements may be employed as a part of the maneuvering force, be committed to a security mission associated with the attack, or initially be held as an uncommitted force prepared to assist or to exploit the success of the assaulting forces.

# CHAPTER 15

# DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

## 220. General

In either the mobile or position defense, the reconnaissance troop may be required to organize the defense of specific terrain in accordance with the overall scheme of defense of the higher commander. Also, the troop may be required to defend critical terrain in the accomplishment of reconnaissance and security missions.

## 221. Troop Organization of the Ground for Defense, General

Measures for increasing the effects of fire and maneuver take precedence over all other work in organizing the defense. The ground is organized in such a manner as to bring accurate fire on the enemy while avoiding his fires and to impede enemy movement while facilitating that of elements of the troop.

## 222. Troop Occupation of Defensive Position

*a.* The assignment of a defensive position to a reconnaissance troop is the responsibility of the squadron. The troop commander then reconnoiters his assigned sector and, on the basis of that reconnaissance and all available additional information, locates his platoons so that they cover avenues of approach into his sector. The troop commander must organize his platoons for combat so as to cover most effectively these avenues of approach.

*b.* The commander of a reconnaissance troop containing integrated platoons has a wide range of choices in organizing for combat (par. 201). After completing his estimate of the situation, the commander may elect to employ each of his TOE platoons intact. In this case, each platoon defensive position would be organized around the tank section. If there were two avenues of approach into his sector, for example, the troop commander might elect to detach the mortars and scouts from each of his platoons. In this case, the mortars probably would be retained under troop control, and the scout elements would be used initially to establish observation posts. One platoon should be positioned in depth if the terrain permits. On occasion, the commander may elect to organize a provisional tank platoon, a provisional armored rifle platoon, and a provisional scout platoon, with the support squads again retained under troop control (fig. 55). In this case, the provisional tank platoon would

be employed to cover the most likely avenue of enemy armor approach, and the squads of the provisional armored rifle platoon would be disposed to provide protection for the tanks and to cover likely avenues of dismounted enemy approach. The scout elements would be used to establish observation posts and to maintain surveillance of the areas between troops.

*c.* The commander of an integrated troop employs his tanks and armored infantry in essentially the same manner as a tank company reinforced with armored infantry, as explained in FM 17–33. The scout platoon and mortar section normally are retained under troop control.

*d.* When necessary organization for combat is completed, the defensive positions are occupied, and platoons immediately organize the ground for defense. Fields of fire are cleared, tanks are placed in hull defilade, and emplacements are dug for crew-served weapons. Armored personnel carriers are also integrated into the all-round defense of the troop. Since the mission of the troop usually requires that it remain mobile and be prepared to move on short notice, a major factor in the employment and placement of the armored personnel carriers is that

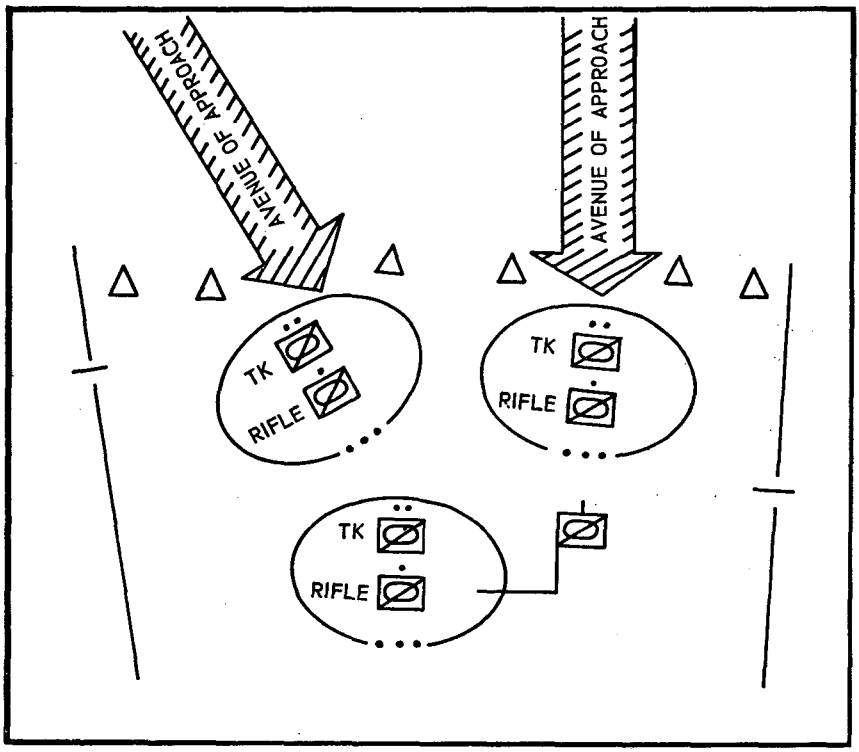



*Figure 55. Schematic illustration of formation of three provisional platoons for defense by reconnaissance troop containing integrated platoons.*

they be readily available to their armored infantry for rapid movement. If possible, armored personnel carriers should be employed in or near the areas of the squads they transport. Sectors of fire are assigned to their caliber .50 machine guns. Because of their high silhouette and vulnerability to certain types of enemy fire, it is usually necessary to place the majority of the carriers in defilade to the rear of the position, with provision for moving them, as the situation develops, to previously selected firing positions.

## 223. Strengthening Troop Defensive Position

*a.* Strengthening of the defensive position is continued as long as it is occupied. The armored infantry and scout elements can perform limited pioneer work to strengthen a position.

*b.* Obstacles are located to stop or divert the hostile approach. Barbed wire entanglements, mines (when authorized), and other obstacles are located to break up the enemy's attack formation and hold him in areas which are covered by defensive fires. Obstacles are placed to be inconspicuous from ground or air observation, and so that direct fire can prevent their removal or neutralization by the enemy.

(1) Protective obstacles—such as barbed wire entanglements, trip flares, noise makers, and antipersonnel mines (when authorized)—are located to prevent surprise assaults from points close to the defense area. They are close enough to the defense area for day and night observation and far enough away to keep the enemy beyond normal hand-grenade range. Depending on the terrain, 50 to 100 yards fulfills these requirements.

(2) The use of antitank mines is coordinated with the use of other obstacles and antitank weapons. Antitank mines are laid forward of the defensive position to connect and extend other obstacles and to canalize hostile armor into areas where antitank fires are most effective. To guard against removal or breaching by the enemy, these mines are covered by fire. When minefields and barrages of mortars and artillery are planned in the same general area, the mines are located at the near edge of the barrage area.

*c.* Mines and other obstacles must not be placed where they may hamper the movements of the reserve or the striking force. Engineers, normally controlled and coordinated at a higher command level, may assist in laying of mines and in the construction of obstacles. Units occupying the defensive area, however, must expect to do most of this and other construction work. Advantage is taken of all natural obstacles to delay and harass the enemy.

*d.* Dummy works, planned in accordance with an overall scheme of a higher headquarters, may be used to mislead the enemy and disperse

his fire. To be effective, they must closely resemble genuine works. Dummy works should be at least 150 yards from any actual position so that fire directed at them will not include occupied localities. For further deception, dummy works may be very lightly manned with armored infantry during preliminary phases when the enemy tries to locate defensive positions by air reconnaissance and ground patrolling. Examples of deceptive techniques that may be employed include—

(1) Installing phony minefields (only upon order of higher headquarters), including some booby traps and live mines, to inflict casualties and to force the enemy to make a cautious and thorough search of the area.

(2) Spreading canvas strips, straw, foliage, or similar material to cover sections of roadway leading into the defensive position. Some of these may conceal ditches, mines, or booby traps; others are harmless.

(3) Concealing antitank mines in trees felled across a road. A tank which attempts to crash through is stopped within the obstacle, thus making the block more effective.

## 224. Employment of Reconnaissance Troop in Mobile Defense

*a. General.* The reconnaissance troop may be employed as part of any of the elements of the mobile defense: the security force, fixing force, or striking force (par. 367, FM 17–1).

*b. Reconnaissance Troop as Part of a Covering Force, Mobile Defense.*

(1) The reconnaissance troop normally participates as part of the squadron in execution of a covering force mission in the mobile defense (par. 324). The troop is assigned a sector of the initial squadron position, which usually is located 10 to 15 miles in front of the forward defensive area. Once organized for combat, the troop conducts its covering force mission as part of the squadron, generally as explained for conduct of a delaying action in paragraphs 229 through 238 and in paragraph 417, FM 17–1.

(2) The reconnaissance troop rarely is used alone as a covering force; it normally operates as part of the squadron on such missions. On occasion, the troop may be required to perform a covering force mission when attached to a combat command or battle group on an independent mission. The troop should be reinforced by Army aircraft and artillery. If frontages are excessive, it may be reinforced by tanks or mounted infantry. In covering force operations, all platoons usually are committed, and the troop operates without a reserve. Plans are made to provide for the shifting of platoons not heavily engaged to threatened parts of the troop front.

(3) Upon completion of the covering force mission, the troop should be assigned a new reconnaissance or security mission to the flanks of, in rear of, or within the defensive area.

*c. Reconnaissance Troop Occupying a Defensive Position as Part of a Fixing Force.* On occasion, the reconnaissance troop may occupy a portion of the forward defensive area when operating as an economy force. The squadron commander will designate the terrain to be occupied by the troop. As soon as possible, the troop commander initiates a reconnaissance of his area to develop his plan for the defense. He selects platoon positions to provide long-range fires and to insure that they are mutually supporting by fire (fig. 56). Platoons are organized for combat as explained in paragraph 222. No reserve is held at troop level. If possible, one platoon position should be selected in depth. Since enemy infiltration may occur, the position must be organized for all-round defense. The fire-support plan is developed, range cards are prepared, and overlays are made and submitted to the squadron commander showing the organization of the troop sector. Platoon leaders prepare for defense of their assigned positions as explained in part two. The troop headquarters, maintenance, and administrative, mess, and supply sections normally are located in or near a platoon defensive position for their protection.

*d. Reconnaissance Troop as Part of the Striking Force.* The reconnaissance troop may be employed as a part of the striking force, usually after it has performed a covering force mission and has withdrawn through the combat elements in the forward defensive area. The preparation and conduct of the operation of the striking force are generally similar to those of normal offensive operations. For details, see paragraphs 375 through 377, FM 17–1, and chapter 14.

*e. Reconnaissance Troop Performing a Surveillance Mission in Mobile Defense.* A reconnaissance troop frequently is attached to a battle group or a combat command for the purpose of securing gaps and maintaining contact with adjacent units. These missions are accomplished by screening and the use of patrols (par. 267).

## 225. Employment of Reconnaissance Troop in Position Defense

*a. General.* In position defense, the troop may be employed in one or more of the echelons of defense: security force, forces in the battle area, and reserve. The employment of the troop is most effective when it is assigned missions where it can use its mobility to the greatest possible extent under the existing conditions. These missions include—

(1) Participating as part of a covering force or general outpost for a larger unit.

(2) Acting as the combat outpost for a battalion- or regimental-size unit.

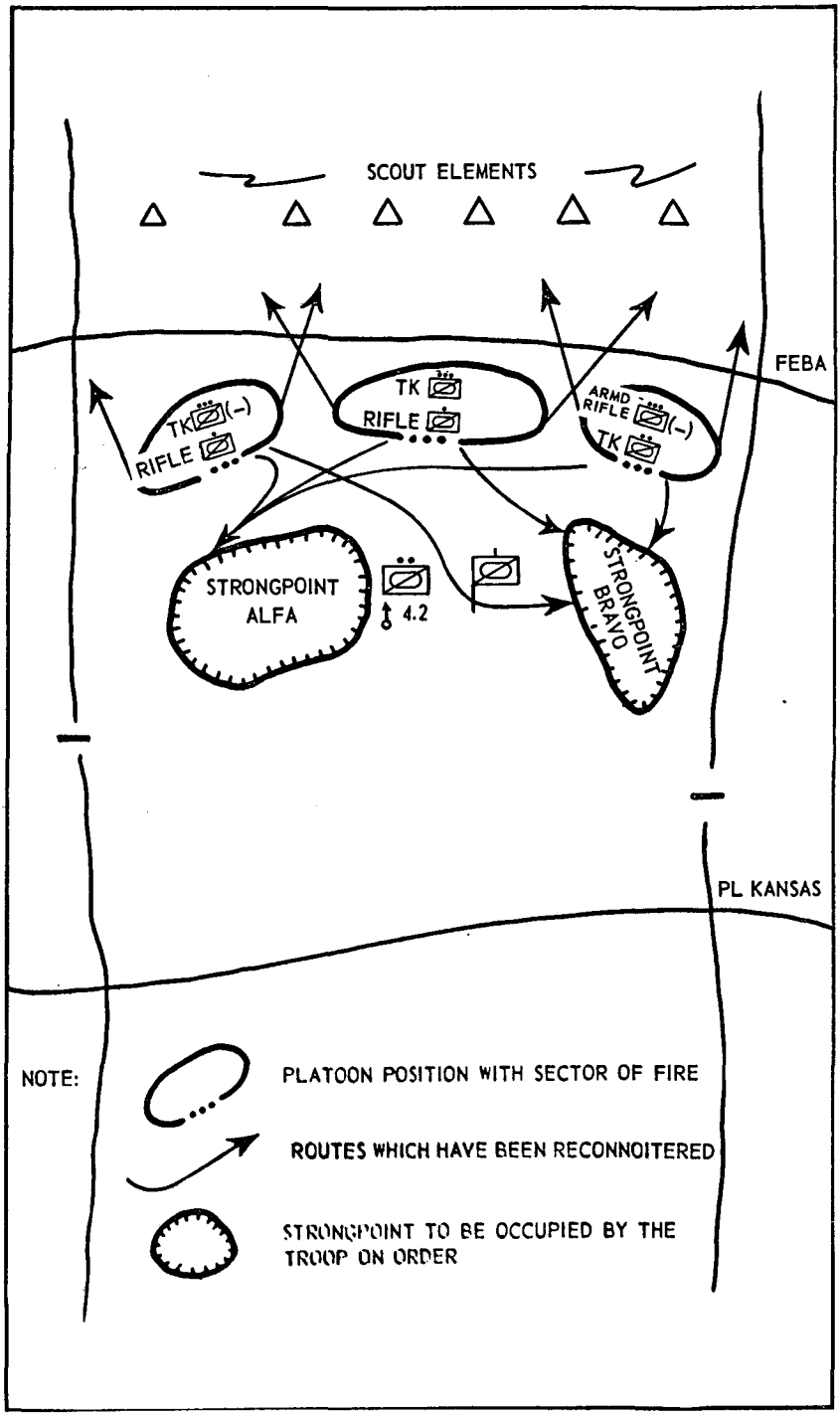



*Figure 56. Integrated reconnaissance troop occupying a defensive position.*

(3) Acting as part of the reserve for a larger unit.

(4) Operating as a surveillance force within the defended area.

*b. Reconnaissance Troop as Part of a Covering Force or General Outpost in Position Defense.* The troop normally participates as part of the squadron in execution of a covering force or general outpost mission in the position defense. In executing either type mission, the troop is assigned a sector of the initial squadron position. Once organized for combat, the troop conducts its covering force or general outpost mission generally as explained for conduct of delaying action in paragraphs 229 through 238 and in paragraph 417, FM 17–1.

*c. Reconnaissance Troop as the Combat Outpost for a Front-Line Unit in Position Defense.* The elements of the combat outpost normally are furnished from units of the forces in the battle area, usually a company which is positioned in depth in the battle area. However, the reconnaissance troop may be required to furnish the combat outpost for its parent squadron, a battalion task force, or a battle group. The troop commander divides any outpost sector assigned him among his platoons, though he frequently holds out one platoon as a local reserve. The combat outpost normally is located on the first high ground in front of the forward edge of the battle area. Once the platoons have organized their respective sectors, the troop commander coordinates their dispositions, making any necessary adjustments.

(1) The troop commander arranges for supporting artillery fires with the artillery forward observer working with his troop. Mortar concentrations are prepared to cover possible avenues of enemy approach, with particular emphasis being placed on areas which cannot be adequately covered with flat-trajectory weapons.

(2) A system of patrols, usually performed by scout elements, maintains contact between the outposts. The troop commander should inspect each outpost periodically. The combat outpost withdraws only on order and uses previously reconnoitered routes of withdrawal that give maximum cover and concealment and that permit fire by flat-trajectory weapons from within the battle area. Routes are selected to deceive the enemy as to the true location of the battle area. Several plans for withdrawal are made so that the troop is prepared for any changes in the situation. Front-line units are notified when all elements of the combat outpost have cleared the forward edge of the battle area.

*d. Reconnaissance Troop as Part of the Forces in the Battle Area.* The troop normally is not employed to hold a portion of the battle area

except as an economy force, and then it should be assigned a narrow sector, one of relatively minor importance.

*e. Reconnaissance Troop as Part of Reserve in Position Defense.* The troop commander studies the squadron plans for counterattack, makes a reconnaissance of the area, and prepares necessary plans. He may organize his platoons so as to concentrate his tank-armored infantry strength. Platoon and section leaders reconnoiter areas of planned operations so as to be thoroughly familiar with each area. Counterattacks are primarily offensive actions.

*f. Reconnaissance Troop Performing a Surveillance Mission in Position Defense.* A reconnaissance troop may be attached to a battle group or a combat command for the purpose of securing gaps and maintaining contact with adjacent units. These missions are accomplished by screening and the use of patrols (pars. 265–267).

## 226. Reconnaissance Troop in Perimeter Defense

On occasion, normal squadron deployment will result in the troops' operating over rather widely dispersed areas. When the squadron is required to halt temporarily, often it is not feasible for it to concentrate its troops to establish a squadron perimeter defense. In such a case, each troop must provide for its own all-round defense during the halt (fig. 57). The troop commander disposes his platoons to cover likely avenues of enemy approach and establishes his own security force, using scout elements. Oftentimes, conditions dictating the assumption of the perimeter defense will not allow time for reorganization. Time permitting, however, the troop commander employs his tanks to cover the most likely avenues of enemy armor approach and his infantry to provide close-in protection for the tanks and to cover the most likely avenues of dismounted infantry approach. Any reorganization for combat which the enemy situation permits must be accomplished in minimum time and in accordance with the principles discussed in paragraphs 199 through 204. The platoons organize the ground for defense (par. 223). If attacked, each platoon employs normal defensive tactics. The troop commander may use his least heavily engaged platoon as a striking force.

## 227. Reconnaissance Troop Protecting an Installation

The reconnaissance troop may be required to protect an installation in the rear area, such as a supply installation or an element of the atomic weapons delivery system. Elements of the troop are disposed generally as for perimeter defense (fig. 58). The troop commander provides for early warning of enemy approach by establishing an OP system around the installation, by continuous patrolling, and by surveillance by aerial means. He maintains a tank-heavy striking force in the

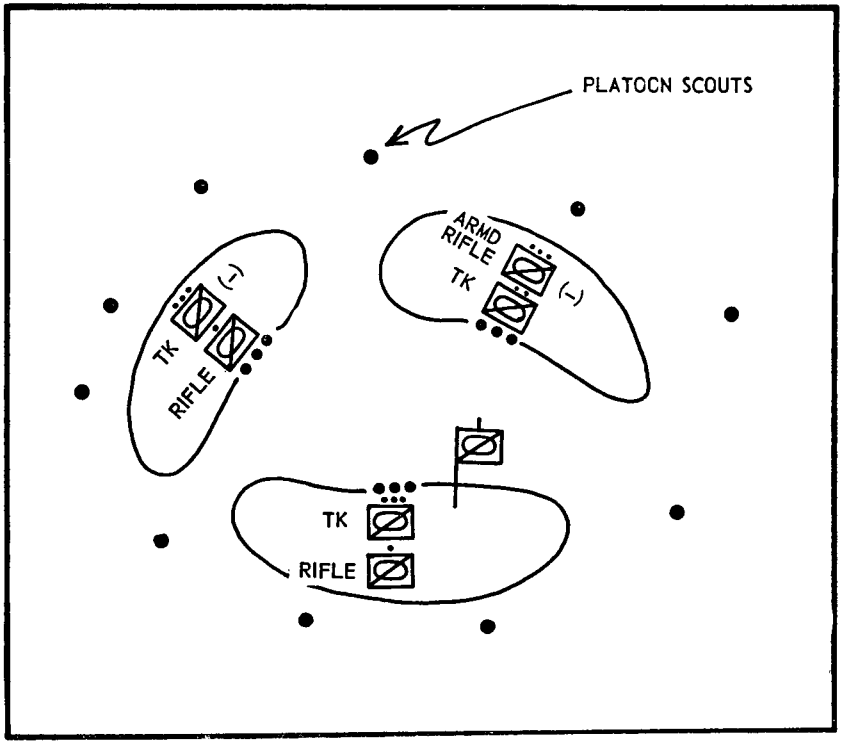



*Figure 57. All-round defense by a troop.*

vicinity of the installation to employ against any hostile elements which may approach the position. He groups the mortars to provide support for the striking force.

## 228. Reconnaissance Troop Providing Security Against Airborne and Guerrilla Attack

*a.* When protecting a rear area against airborne and guerrilla attack, the commander disposes his platoons generally against the threat of airborne attack. He accomplishes this by placing a portion of the unit adjacent to likely drop zones, so that heavy automatic fire can be placed on airborne elements as they arrive at the drop zone. Other elements are prepared to move rapidly to the support of any unit attacked. Warning of guerrilla attack is gained by patrolling and surveillance of the area to be secured.

*b.* The troop commander reconnoiters his assigned area and selects likely drop zones for airborne forces. He divides the area among his platoons so that each is responsible for its share of likely drop zones

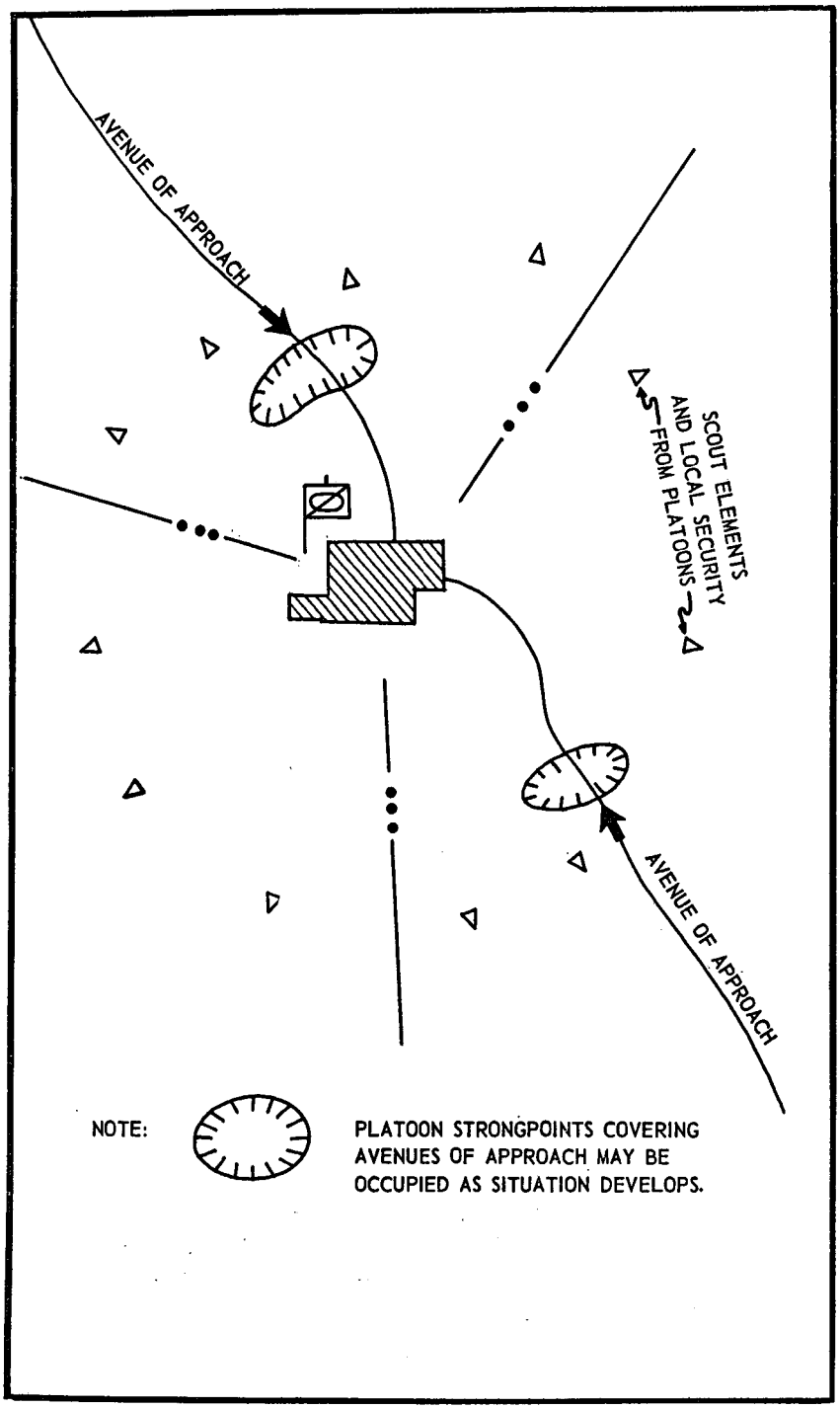



*Figure 58. Reconnaissance troop protecting an installation.*

(fig. 59). Tanks and armored infantry should be positioned near each drop zone. The area is covered by patrols or observation posts, usually established by scout elements. The commander makes plans to move all elements of the troop to any threatened part of the area.

*c.* The key to success against airborne attack is rapid deployment and the placing of maximum fires on the airborne forces during the early phases of the landing. Consequently, movement to reinforce any element must be most rapid.

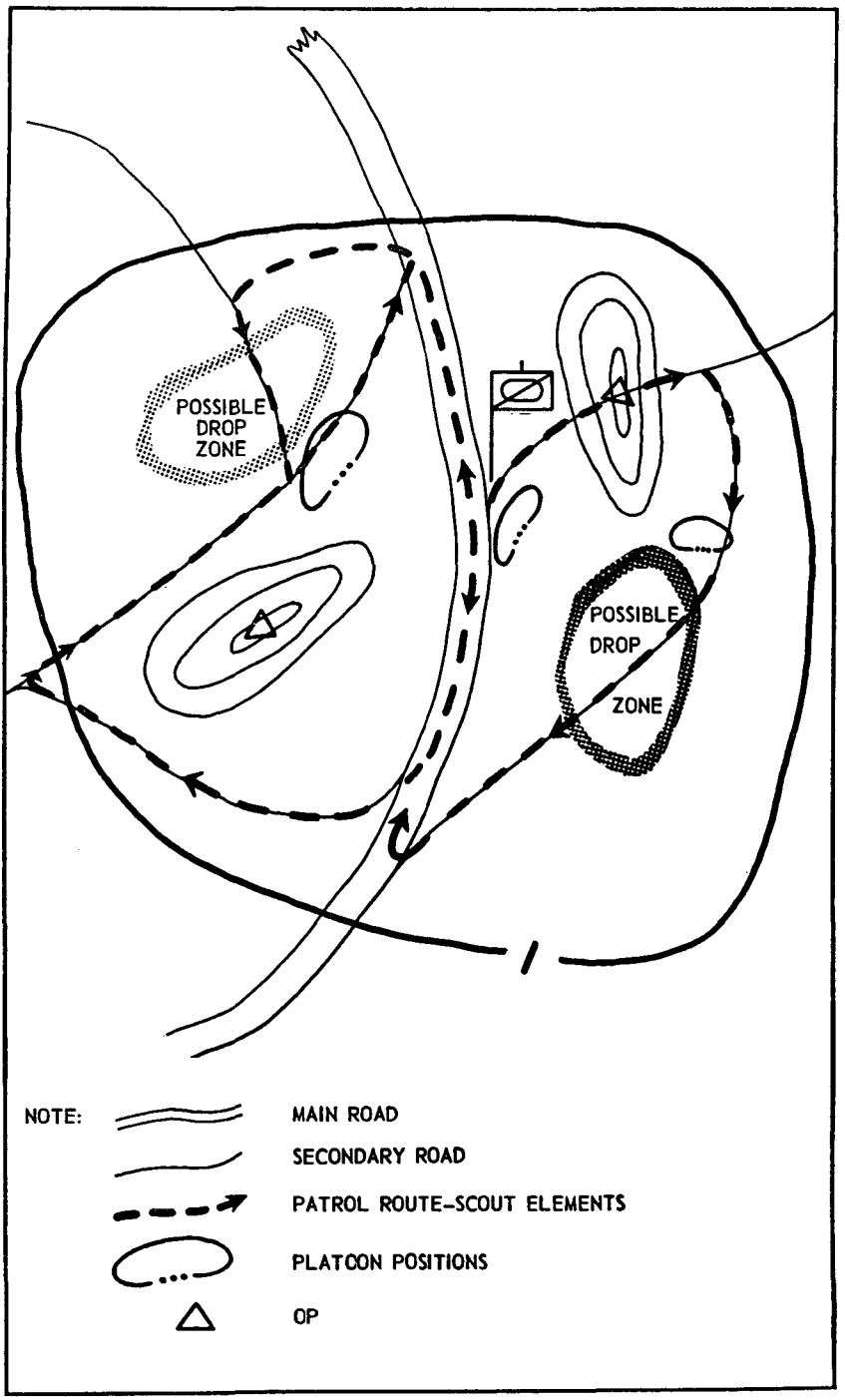



*Figure 59. Reconnaissance troop disposed for defense against airborne threat.*

# CHAPTER 16

# RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

## Section I. DELAYING ACTION, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

### 229. General

*a.* The reconnaissance troop may conduct a delaying action in order to accomplish an assigned reconnaissance or security mission. The troop may conduct this action as a separate unit or as part of a larger force. When conducting a delaying action, the integrated reconnaissance troop normally is organized into armored cavalry platoon teams, each with tank, armored infantry, and scout elements. Reconnaissance troops integrated at platoon level usually are employed as organized.

*b.* A detailed coverage of the characteristics of delaying positions, and the principles of the preparation for and conduct of the delaying action, are contained in paragraphs 415 through 429, FM 17–1.

### 230. Troop Reconnaissance and Selection of Delaying Positions

See paragraph 421, FM 17–1, and figure 60.

### 231. Troop Organization of Delaying Positions

See paragraph 426, FM 17–1.

### 232. Distribution of Troop Forces for Delaying Action

*a.* The troop commander disposes his platoons so that they can cover likely avenues of enemy approach into his zone. When the squadron is performing delaying action by itself, or when the troop is operating as a separate force, frontages normally will require that all platoons be used on line (fig. 61). Whenever possible, however, at least one platoon should be positioned in depth. When the squadron is performing delaying action as part of a larger force, the troops are normally disposed to cover just one major avenue of enemy approach and may use a single route of withdrawal (fig. 62). The width of the assigned frontage and the number of avenues of approach into the area determine the distribution of forces to be employed. An integrated troop delaying on a single route in a narrow zone normally organizes two or three platoon teams of tanks and armored infantry, with the entire scout platoon being employed as a security force forward and to the flanks. When operating within a wide zone containing several routes of approach, the commander

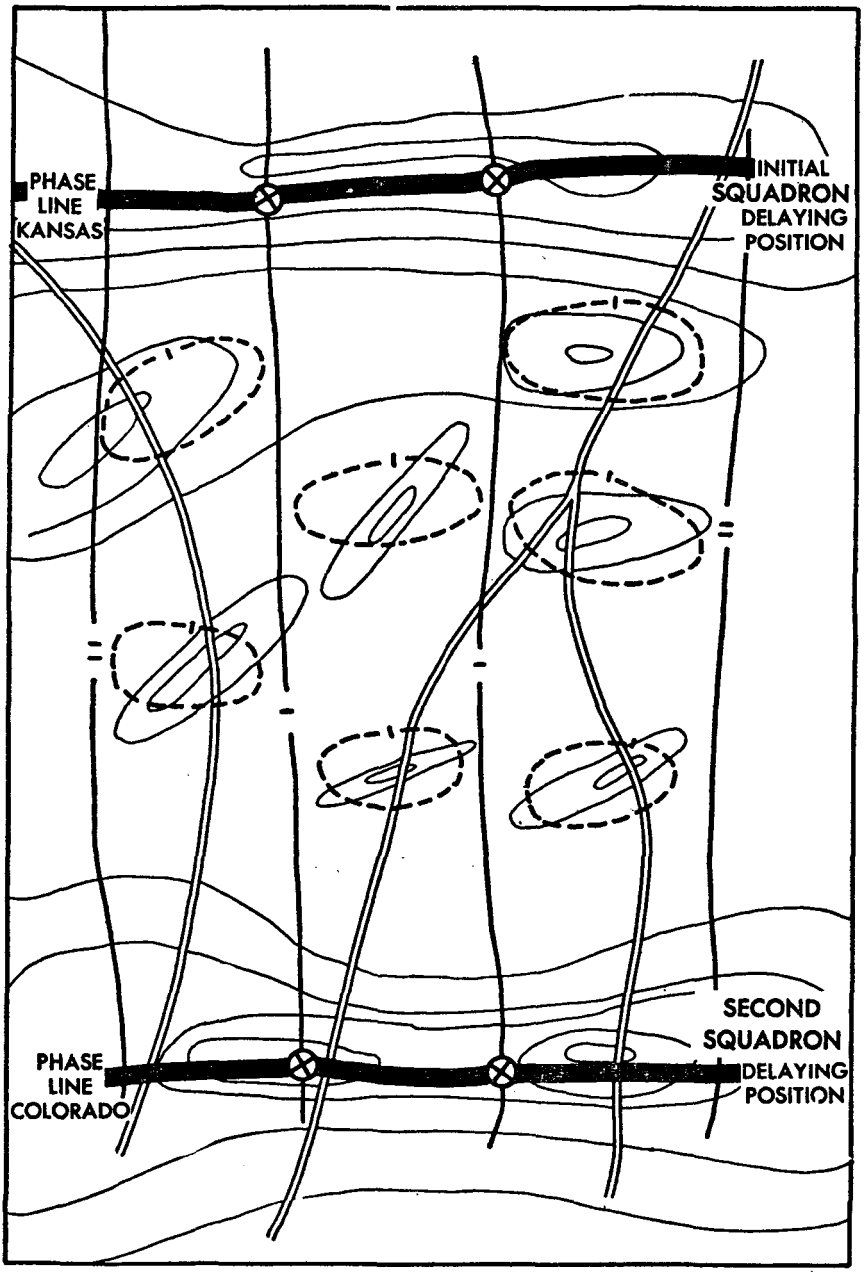



*Figure 60. Troop delaying positions between squadron delaying positions.*

of an integrated troop may form platoon teams, each consisting of tanks, armored infantry, and scout elements. Platoon teams so organized are positioned on likely avenues of approach within the assigned zone. Similarly, the commander of a troop composed of integrated platoons delay-

ing on a single route may organize provisional scout, tank, and armored rifle platoons; however, the normal employment is by TOE organization with the exception of the support squads, which are retained under troop control when it is possible for them to cover the entire troop zone from one position. The troop command post must be so located that it will not have to displace frequently; however, it must remain within effective supporting distance of the platoons and it must be able to maintain communication between the platoons and the squadron command post.

*b.* The width of the troop zone usually makes it impossible to retain a reserve. However, if one can be constituted, it is used to counterattack or to block enemy penetrations. It may also be used to reinforce or to cover the withdrawal of a forward unit.

*c.* Engineer units in the troop zone can provide valuable assistance in the conduct of delaying action. They delay the enemy by destroying bridges, blocking roads, and erecting barriers. They may also maintain roads and bridges on routes of withdrawal. The operations of the engineer unit normally are controlled by the next higher headquarters. Coordination is necessary to insure that obstacles constructed are covered by fire and in no way impede the withdrawal of delaying forces or the commitment of the reserve.

*d.* The initial organization of forces to conduct the delay should not be considered inflexible. Frequently, during the conduct of the delay, the situation may require that certain changes be effected. These changes in organization or distribution of forces should take place on the troop delaying positions whenever possible.

## 233. Troop Fire-Support Plan for Delaying Action

See paragraph 424, FM 17–1.

## 234. Troop Conduct of Delaying Action

*a.* Long-range harassing fires are brought to bear on the approaching enemy force as far from the delaying position as possible. This usually is accomplished by artillery or mortars. Tanks open fire on the enemy at maximum effective range. Other weapons of the unit are brought to bear as soon as the enemy is within effective range. Observation posts on the flanks of the position normally remain concealed and do not fire at the enemy force unless forced to do so by enemy action. Maximum delay is obtained on each delaying position, and the delaying force withdraws on order to avoid a decisive engagement.

*b.* The troop commander must remain in very close contact with his platoons so that they can perform maximum delay both on and between troop delaying positions. The troop will not withdraw unless authorized to do so by the squadron commander. Lightly engaged platoons may be used to assist heavily engaged platoons in disengaging. When all pla-

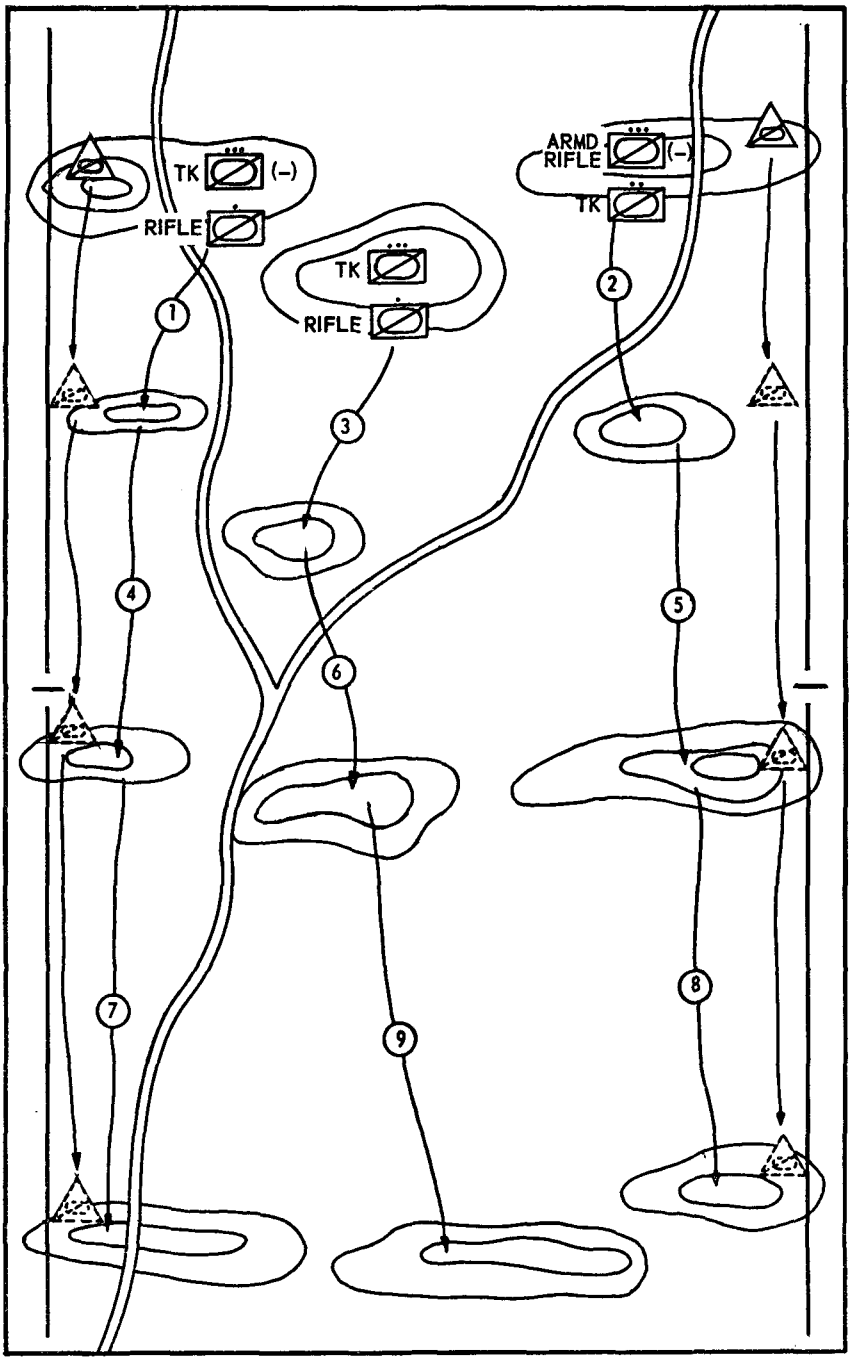



*Figure 61. Reconnaissance troop conducting a delaying action with all platoons on line. Platoons leapfrog to the rear, continuing the delay on each suitable piece of terrain. Scout elements provide security on the flanks throughout the withdrawal.*

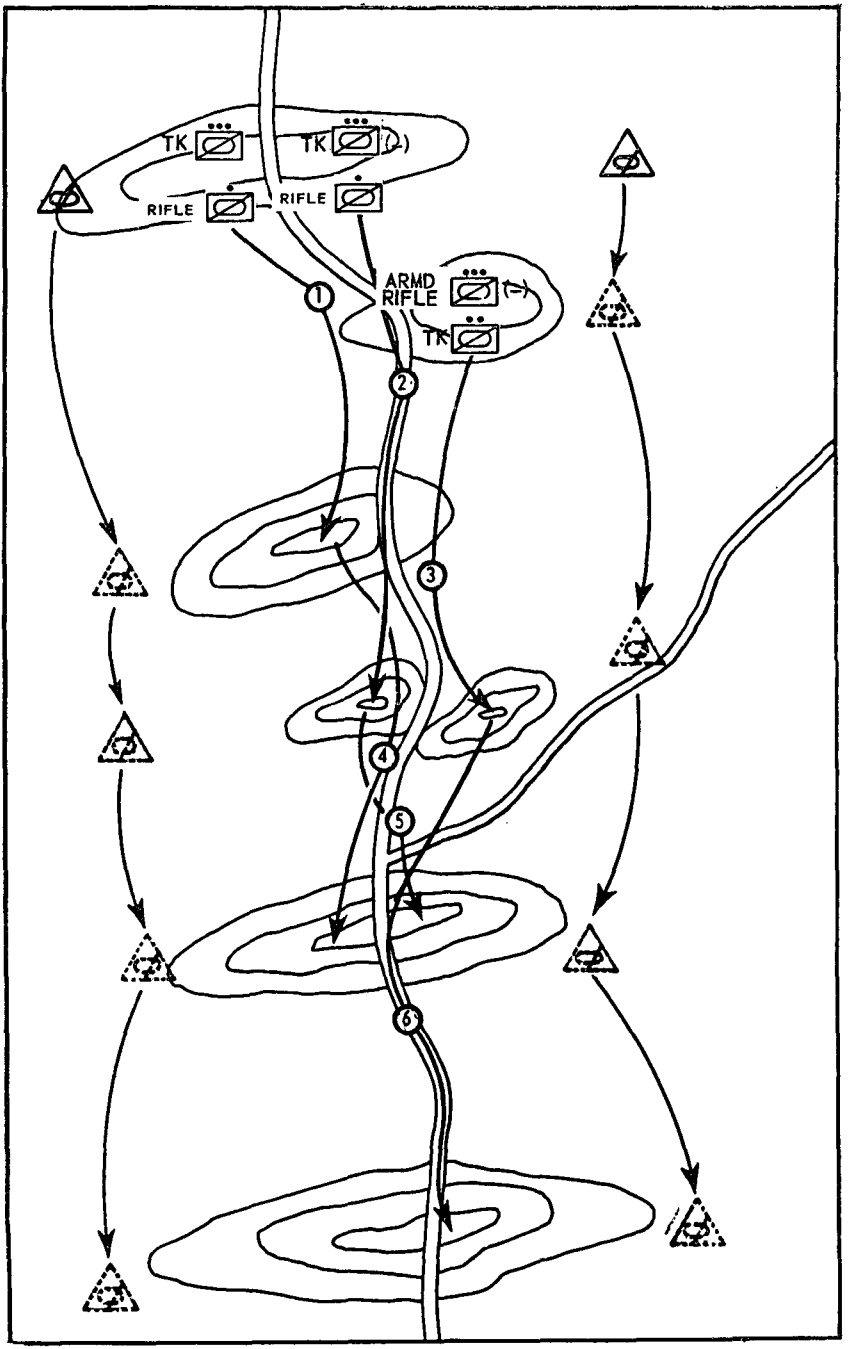



*Figure 62. A reconnaissance troop delaying on a single avenue of approach with all platoons using a common route of withdrawal. Scout elements provide flank security throughout the withdrawal.*

toons are on line and covering a wide zone, the troop commander must rely very heavily on individual platoon action and initiative. In this case, security must be very active to prevent platoons from being cut off. The executive officer must be alert to assist the troop commander, to insure adequate logistical support for the platoons, and to keep the troop command post properly positioned.

*c.* The scout element of the troop is initially employed well forward to detect and give early warning of enemy approach. It remains in visual contact with the enemy and directs supporting long-range fire. As the enemy approaches the delaying position, scouts withdraw to the flanks. The scouts remain concealed and do not reveal their positions by firing, except to defend or extricate themselves. They maintain visual contact with the enemy, and also report any attempt by the enemy to bypass or envelop the position.

## 235. Troop Ambush Position

The tactics discussed in paragraph 86 for the platoon team apply equally to the reconnaissance troop.

## 236. Troop Withdrawal to Next Delaying Position

*a.* See paragraph 428, FM 17–1.

*b.* Scout elements of the delaying force have no set order of withdrawal. They withdraw by bounds, using routes of withdrawal other than those of the remainder of the force, always keeping the enemy force under observation. The unit commander withdraws with the last element to leave the delaying position, usually the tanks.

## 237. Occupation of Successive Troop Delaying Positions

See paragraph 426, FM 17–1.

## 238. Troop Reserve in Delaying Action

*a.* When conducting a delaying action as part of a larger force, the troop normally employs all elements on line with no troop reserve. Whenever possible, however, one platoon should be positioned somewhat to the rear of the other platoons to add some depth to the position and to serve as a blocking force in the event of a penetration prior to withdrawal. Though not considered a reserve, this platoon may be employed in a limited offensive action to assist in the withdrawal of other elements of the troop which may be heavily engaged.

*b.* When operating independently, the troop must constitute a reserve. The procedure outlined in *a* above is followed generally, with the reserve platoon being located so as to be in a position to support the forward platoons by fire, both in the actual delay and during their withdrawal. The reserve platoon must be prepared to block by fire and/or maneuver

any penetration of the position and may be employed in limited offensive action to effect further delay on the enemy or to assist in the withdrawal of heavily engaged elements. Frequently, the forward platoons will withdraw through the reserve platoon, which, in turn, will assume the delay mission while the balance of the troop moves to and occupies the succeeding delaying position.

*c.* The troop may be designated as all or part of the reserve of a larger force conducting the delay. As such, the troop occupies a position specified by the higher commander and is employed as described for the reserve platoon in *b* above. The troop is normally organized into tank-armored infantry platoon teams. The scout and mortar elements are normally detached and placed under the control of the force conducting the delay, to augment the fire support and security elements of the delaying forces.

## Section II. WITHDRAWAL FROM ACTION, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

### 239. General

*a.* The reconnaissance troop may be required to withdraw from action to position itself to initiate some other action. Generally, a withdrawal from action is accomplished in two phases: a *disengagement* from action, followed by the *formation of march columns* for continued movement to the rear. A troop may be required to withdraw alone or as part of a larger force. If conducting an independent withdrawal, the troop must provide for its own security element to cover withdrawal of the remainder of the troop and to make necessary counterattacks to effect a successful disengagement. If conducting a withdrawal as part of a larger force, the troop may withdraw under cover of security elements provided by another unit, or it may act as the covering force or reserve of the larger unit of which it is a part.

*b.* The troop has the necessary mobility, firepower, and radio communication to enable it to make a withdrawal in either daylight or darkness. If friendly forces have local air superiority, daylight withdrawal from action is more desirable. If withdrawal is to be made at night, the decision should be made sufficiently in advance to permit planning and coordination, and in time for the troop to conduct a daylight reconnaissance.

### 240. Troop Orders for a Withdrawal from Action

The commander of a troop executing a withdrawal from action, in his order for the operation, must designate—

*a. The Location of New Position or Assembly Area.* The new area

should be within friendly lines and should be designated early enough to permit reconnaissance of the area.

*b. Provisions for Preparation and Occupation of New Position.* These provisions should include necessary defensive measures, disposition of the troop trains, and guides for units moving into the area.

*c. Zones or Routes of Withdrawal.* The troop usually will be assigned a route of withdrawal. The commander must exercise strict control over movement during the withdrawal. If the withdrawal includes passage through friendly frontline units, close coordination with these units must be made. Plans should include provisions for guides from the unit being passed through, liaison, and recognition signals.

*d. A Security Force.* The troop commander may designate one platoon as covering force or rear guard. If the troop is withdrawing as part of a larger unit, it may be assigned the mission of providing the covering force.

*e. Time Schedule.* Higher headquarters normally designates the time of withdrawal of the troop. Based on this time, a schedule must be established to cover the entire movement. The time of withdrawal of the covering force must allow the main body to move completely out of contact with the enemy.

*f. Priority of Withdrawal.* Troop trains are the first element to withdraw, followed by the reserve, and then the least engaged frontline units. The covering force is the last element to withdraw.

## 241. Daylight Withdrawal from Action, Troop

*a.* When the troop must provide its own covering force in a daylight withdrawal, the troop commander normally employs about one-third of his unit. This security force covers the withdrawal of the troop main body and withdraws on order of the troop commander in accordance with instructions issued by the squadron or higher commander. A withdrawal from action is frequently preceded by a delaying action, particularly when in contact with a mobile, aggressive enemy. In order to effect the disengagement, the portion of the troop designated as the security force is withdrawn and positioned on a selected delaying position to the rear. The balance of the troop executes a delaying action through the security force, breaks contact with the enemy force, forms into march columns, and continues its rearward movement under cover of the security force (figs. 63 and 64). Limited-objective counterattacks may be required to effect a successful disengagement. The scout elements of the troop usually are initially employed well forward of the delaying force, maintaining contact with the enemy, withdrawing under pressure to designated positions within the delaying force position or to the flanks. The scout elements, reinforced with tanks, may be employed on

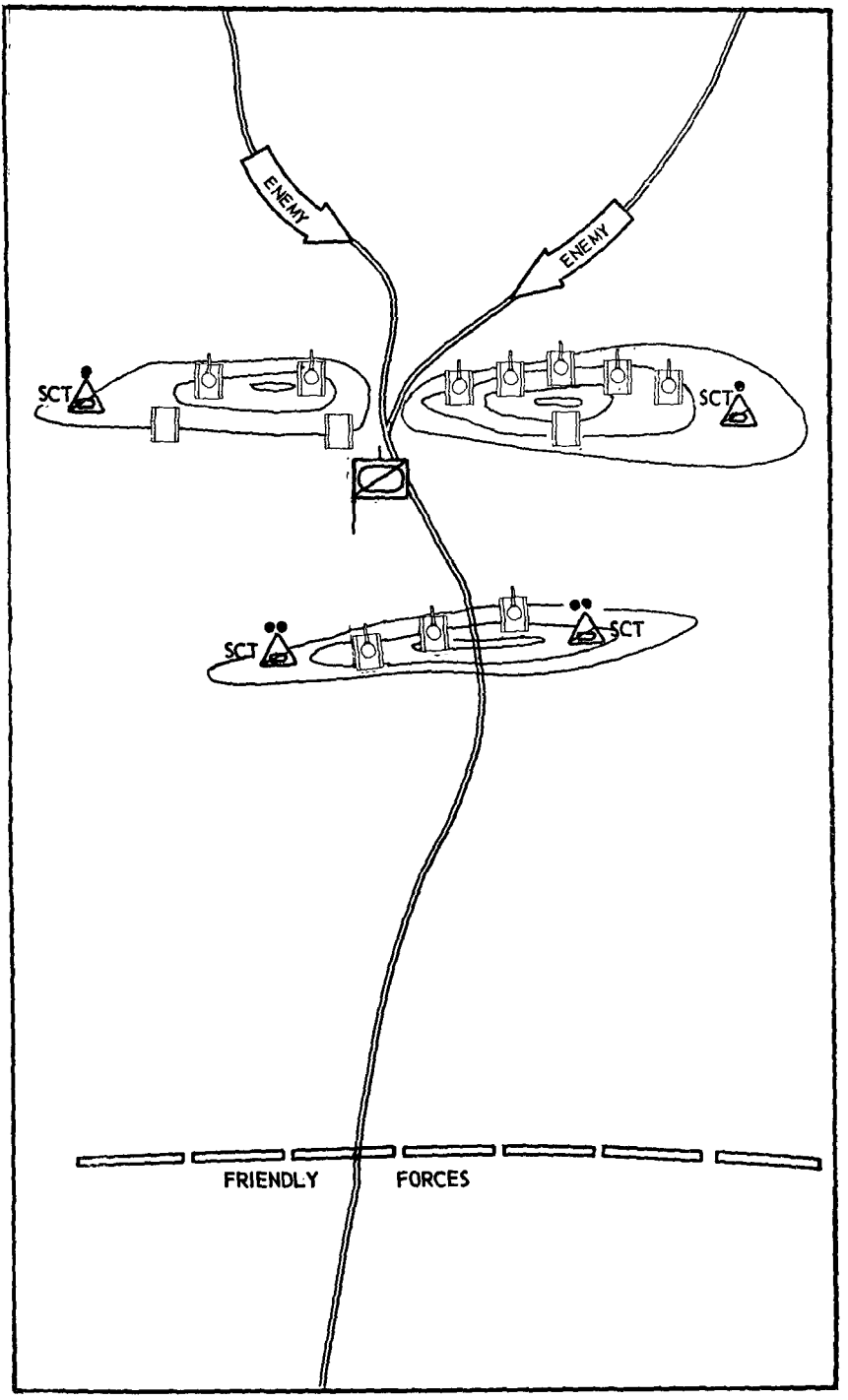



*Figure 63. An integrated reconnaissance troop initiates a withdrawal from action by conducting a delay on successive positions.*

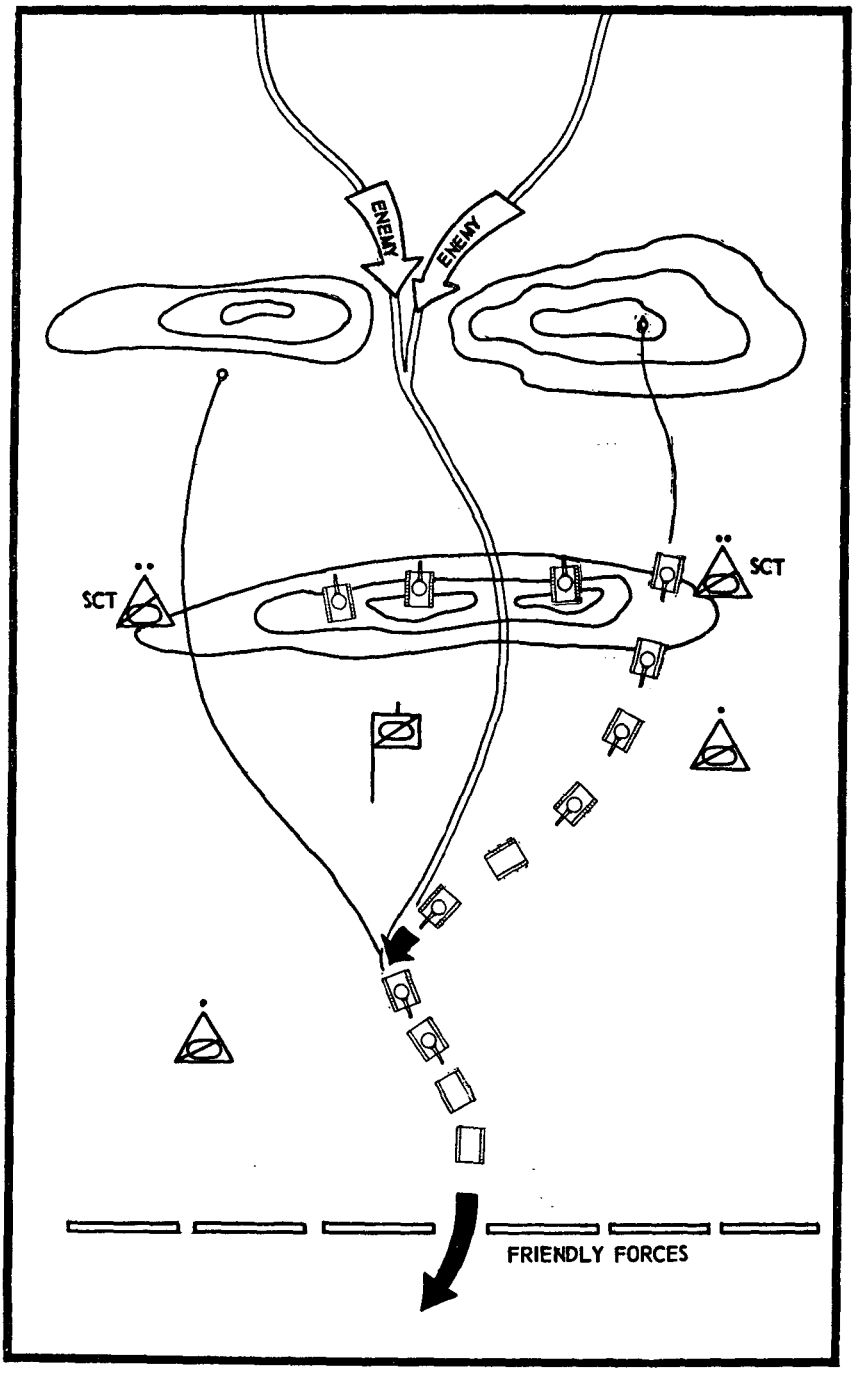



*Figure 64. The delaying force of an integrated reconnaissance troop initiating a withdrawal from action passes through the element designated as the security force, forms march columns, and continues movement to the rear.*

this mission when the enemy force in contact is predominantly infantry with little or no tank support. When the enemy is highly mobile and aggressive, the security force will necessarily have to be much greater in tank strength to provide the required security. The security force, through rearward movement, disengages from the enemy, maintains contact primarily through observation, and performs a rear guard action throughout the withdrawal.

*b.* In a daylight withdrawal, as all or part of the reserve, the troop may—

(1) Be employed as a counterattacking force to permit the withdrawal of a unit that is heavily engaged. Such a counterattack is a limited-objective attack and is conducted by the entire reserve.

(2) Be employed as the covering force to occupy a position from which it can cover by fire the withdrawal of units in contact with the enemy.

(3) Be the first element to move to the rear when it is not required to assist engaged units in disengaging from the enemy.

*c.* A troop which is given a security force mission for a larger force organizes for combat and conducts its actions in essentially the same manner as explained for a security force in mobile defense (par. 224, this manual, and par. 368, FM 17–1). A troop which is in contact with the enemy and which is not required to use some of its elements for its own security, or as part of the squadron security force, disengages from action similarly to a unit conducting a withdrawal from an initial or subsequent delaying position. Units not engaged with the enemy are the first to withdraw. When contact with the enemy is broken, they withdraw rapidly. However, when the enemy strength is not concentrated in any particular platoon area, platoons may be ordered to withdraw simultaneously. The commander assigns platoon routes of withdrawal and designates an initial point (IP) where the platoons form into a troop march column (fig. 65).

## 242. Night Withdrawal from Action, Troop

*a.* It is normally preferable to conduct a withdrawal from action at night, because of the lack of danger from enemy air attacks and because enemy fire will not be as effective. In addition, it is much easier to gain deception. Generally, in withdrawals at night, control is more difficult and movement is slower. Also, if the night is dark and the terrain rugged, the speed of withdrawal may be greatly reduced if a majority of the tracked vehicles must be guided out.

*b.* Elements left in contact use whatever deceptive measures are available to create the impression that a much larger force is on the position. Such deceptive measures include firing artillery (troop requests for fires

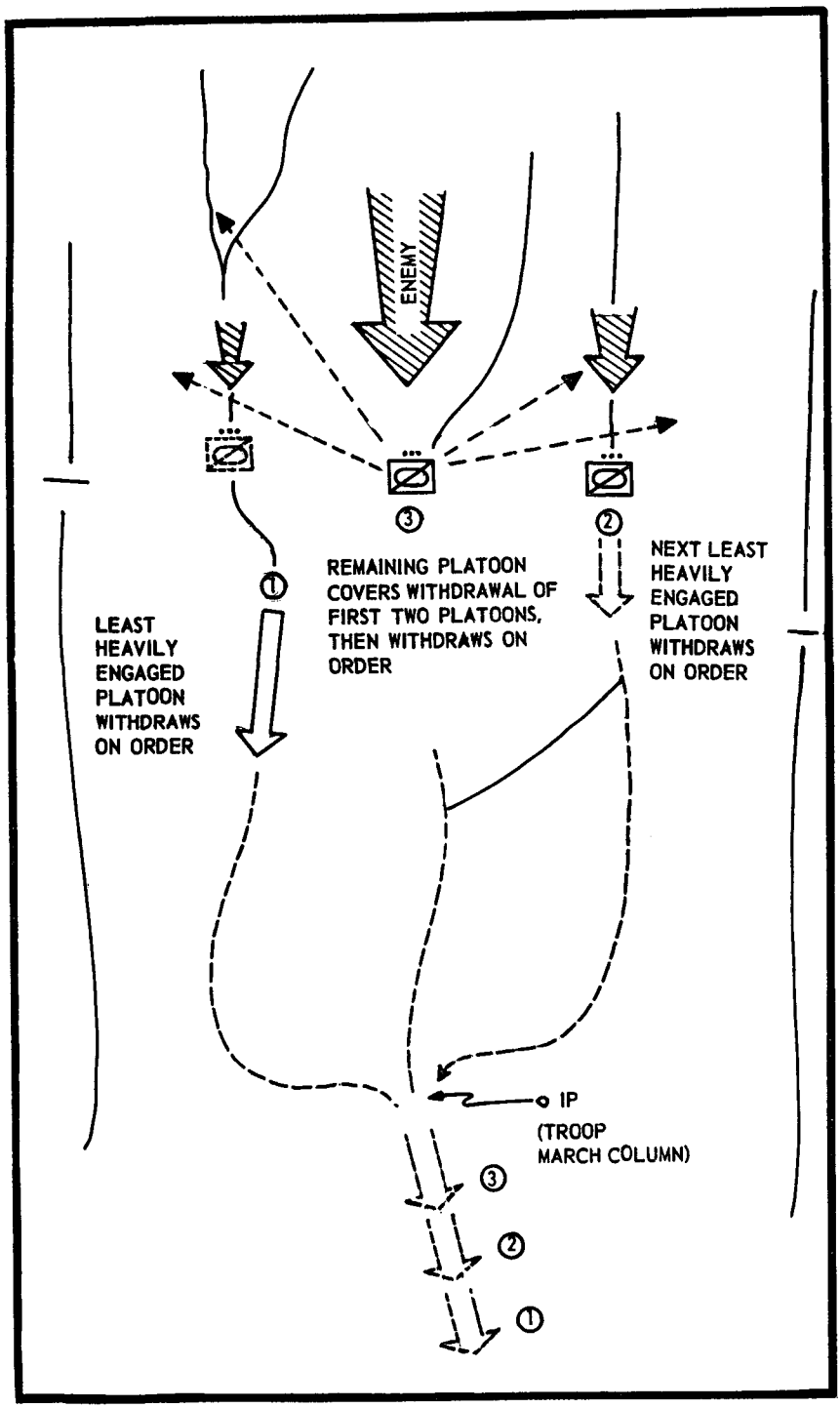



*Figure 65. Reconnaissance troop withdrawal from contact.*

being transmitted through the forward observer), moving tanks and armored personnel carriers so that their engines can be heard, and maintaining normal sounds usually associated with a completely manned position, such as digging and moving of equipment.

*c.* Withdrawing units move to the rear at night in generally the same manner as in daylight withdrawal. All platoons of the troop should move simultaneously, if possible. Formations are closer, and movements are made with greater emphasis on secrecy and security, than in daylight withdrawals.

*d.* It is sometimes possible to withdraw so rapidly that the enemy is unable to interfere with the movement. If a commander is certain that this is possible, he may execute a night withdrawal without the use of a covering force. However, each platoon is responsible for maintaining its own security during the move.

## Section III. RETIREMENT, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

### 243. General

The reconnaissance troop rarely executes a retirement except as part of a larger force. A retirement normally follows a withdrawal from action and consists of a tactical march to avoid decisive combat. See paragraph 436, FM 17–1.

### 244. Conduct of the Retirement, Troop

The reconnaissance troop, as part of the squadron or another larger force, is best employed as a security force during the retirement. Appropriate security force missions include the establishment of a covering force and rear or flank guard for the main body executing the retirement (pars. 256–263). Occasionally, it is necessary for armored cavalry units to initially conduct a delaying action prior to executing a rear guard mission.

# CHAPTER 17

# RECONNAISSANCE OPERATIONS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

## 245. General

*a.* Reconnaissance is one of the primary missions of the reconnaissance troop. The troop may conduct assigned reconnaissance missions as part of the squadron when the entire squadron has a reconnaissance mission, or independently when the squadron is engaged in another type operation or when the troop is detached. Within the troop zone or area, the platoons are assigned subzones, axes of advance, or areas of responsibility, and are prepared to engage in offensive, defensive, or delaying action as required to accomplish the mission.

*b.* Reconnaissance is the directed effort in the field to collect information of the enemy and the area of operations. The combat information produced is used by the commander in forming his plan of operation.

*c.* FM 17–1 (pars. 141–159) contains a detailed coverage of the types of reconnaissance, fundamentals of reconnaissance, reconnaissance missions, and additional considerations appropriate to special reconnaissance operations.

## 246. Troop Reconnaissance Frontages

*a.* A reconnaissance mission is a specifically assigned task to search for useful information. The area being reconnoitered must therefore be thoroughly covered, and frontages must be assigned with this fact in mind. Visibility, terrain, road net, anticipated enemy contact, and nature of the information sought are some of the factors that influence the width of the frontage. The frontage to be covered by the platoons and troop is normally designated by the higher headquarters under which they are operating.

*b.* There is no established distance for the width of the front to be covered by the reconnaissance troop in the execution of a reconnaissance mission. The number of routes existing within a given zone will have much to do with the width of frontage assigned to the troop. The troop zone of responsibility should not contain more than three routes if efficient reconnaissance is to be conducted within a limited period of time.

## 247. Reconnaissance Troop Conducting Reconnaissance

*a.* The reconnaissance troop is prepared to make maximum use of its firepower and mobility to conduct reconnaissance. However, it should make maximum use of scouts for rapid, quiet movement to accomplish its mission with as much secrecy as possible. The troop attempts to avoid determined resistance and seeks the enemy's flanks and rear. When transport helicopters are available, scouts and armored infantry can be moved by air to envelop enemy positions or to bypass enemy resistance. Individual troops may not bypass without authority from the squadron commander.

*b.* The troop formation must provide for adequate coverage of the assigned route, zone, or area. If less than three platoons can adequately cover the route, zone, or area, the remaining platoons will provide depth to the formation, provide flank security, support the forward elements, or act as a bypass element.

*c.* The troop attacks, when necessary, in the performance of its reconnaissance mission. The troop commander must be careful not to commit the unit to an attack which would prevent accomplishment of the mission. Time and distance factors will usually require the troop to attack without reorganization—that is, with its platoons as organized for the reconnaissance mission.

## 248. Troop Reconnaissance Missions

The reconnaissance troop commander translates the mission assigned to the troop into routes, zones, or areas to be reconnoitered by his platoons. Responsibility is thus allocated, and duplication of effort is avoided. Maximum freedom of movement is allowed subordinate commanders in execution of the reconnaissance mission.

## 249. Troop Reconnaissance of Routes

*a.* In an area where little enemy action is anticipated, the reconnaissance troop may be assigned three roads for route reconnaissance. When enemy action is imminent or anticipated, reconnaissance missions are usually assigned on the basis of one major road per troop.

*b.* Reconnaissance helicopters employed to support the troop in the reconnaissance of a route will generally—

(1) Be allocated on the basis of one reconnaissance helicopter to each troop.

(2) Operate to the front and flanks of the troop.

(3) Be used as a point of vantage for observation or command control when enemy action is imminent or anticipated. Aircraft used in this manner extend the limits of observation to the front and flanks. While no rule of thumb can be established as to the maximum distance from the column at which a helicopter should operate, the aircraft obtains maximum protection

against enemy ground fires by operating in the immediate vicinity of armored cavalry ground formations.

*c.* Elements of the squadron reconnaissance and surveillance platoon may be placed in support of a troop engaged in route reconnaissance. When available to the troop commander, these elements may either be employed to reconnoiter one or more routes or be used to augment other observation means available. For details as to the employment of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon, see paragraphs 156 through 180.

*d.* The two types of reconnaissance troops adopt formations for route reconnaissance (fig. 66) as follows:

(1) *Integrated troop.* The formation used in the conduct of route reconnaissance should allow a continuation of movement and, if necessary, immediate entry into combat. In this respect, the conduct of route reconnaissance is similar to an advance to contact. Within the integrated troop, platoon integrity is normally maintained in the reconnaissance of a single route (fig. 67). Tank elements normally lead the column, followed by the command group, the armored rifle platoon, and the mortar sec-

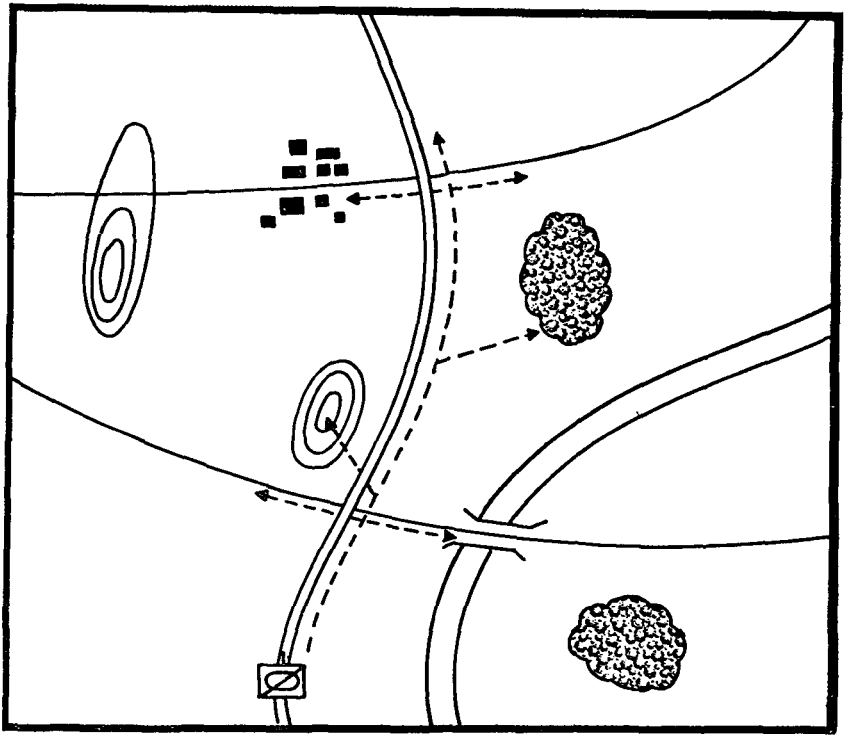


*Figure 66. Route reconnaissance is the reconnaissance of a specified route and the terrain features immediately adjacent to that route, to obtain information of the enemy or the terrain.*

tion. The scout platoon is employed on the flanks of the column, covering critical lateral roads and the terrain dominating the route. When the troop is reconnoitering more than one route, platoon teams composed of tanks, armored infantry, and scout elements are formed. The troop, less those elements which make up the platoon team or teams, advances on the primary or most critical route. The conduct of the reconnaissance of each of the multiple routes is essentially the same as for a single route: tank elements lead the advance with the scout elements being employed on the flanks.

(2) *Troop with integrated platoons.* The reconnaissance troop composed of integrated platoons normally retains platoon integrity and, depending upon the imminence of enemy contact, varies the leading element within the lead platoon. The troop usually marches in column of platoons (fig. 68).

## 250. Troop Reconnaissance of Zones

*a.* In conducting zone reconnaissance, the troop commander divides the troop zone into platoon zones (fig. 69). He indicates the boundaries for each platoon employed for ground reconnaissance. The boundaries should be along a series of easily recognized features, which may include roads, streams, or ridge lines.

*b.* The number of platoons to be employed depends upon the situation and is directly influenced by the width of the zone, terrain, capabilities of the enemy, and availability of friendly ground and air units. A reconnaissance troop should be assigned a zone containing not more than three routes of advance. The command post and the troop trains advance by bounds on the best road available in or near the center of the troop zone.

*c.* Formations are selected as follows:

(1) *Integrated troop.* Depending upon the width of the assigned zone, the integrated reconnaissance troop may advance on single or multiple routes. Combined-arms platoon teams are formed to provide the capability of semi-independent combat action on each of the routes being used (figs. 70 and 71).

(2) *Troop with integrated platoons.* As with the single-column formation, the integrity of each platoon is maintained by placing one or more platoons on each route (figs. 72 and 73).

## 251. Troop Reconnaissance of Areas

Area reconnaissance is the directed effort to collect information of the enemy or the terrain within a specifically defined locality. The reconnaissance troop moves to the assigned area by the most direct route and performs the mission in the same manner as it performs zone reconnaissance, with the area being subdivided into platoon areas of responsibility.

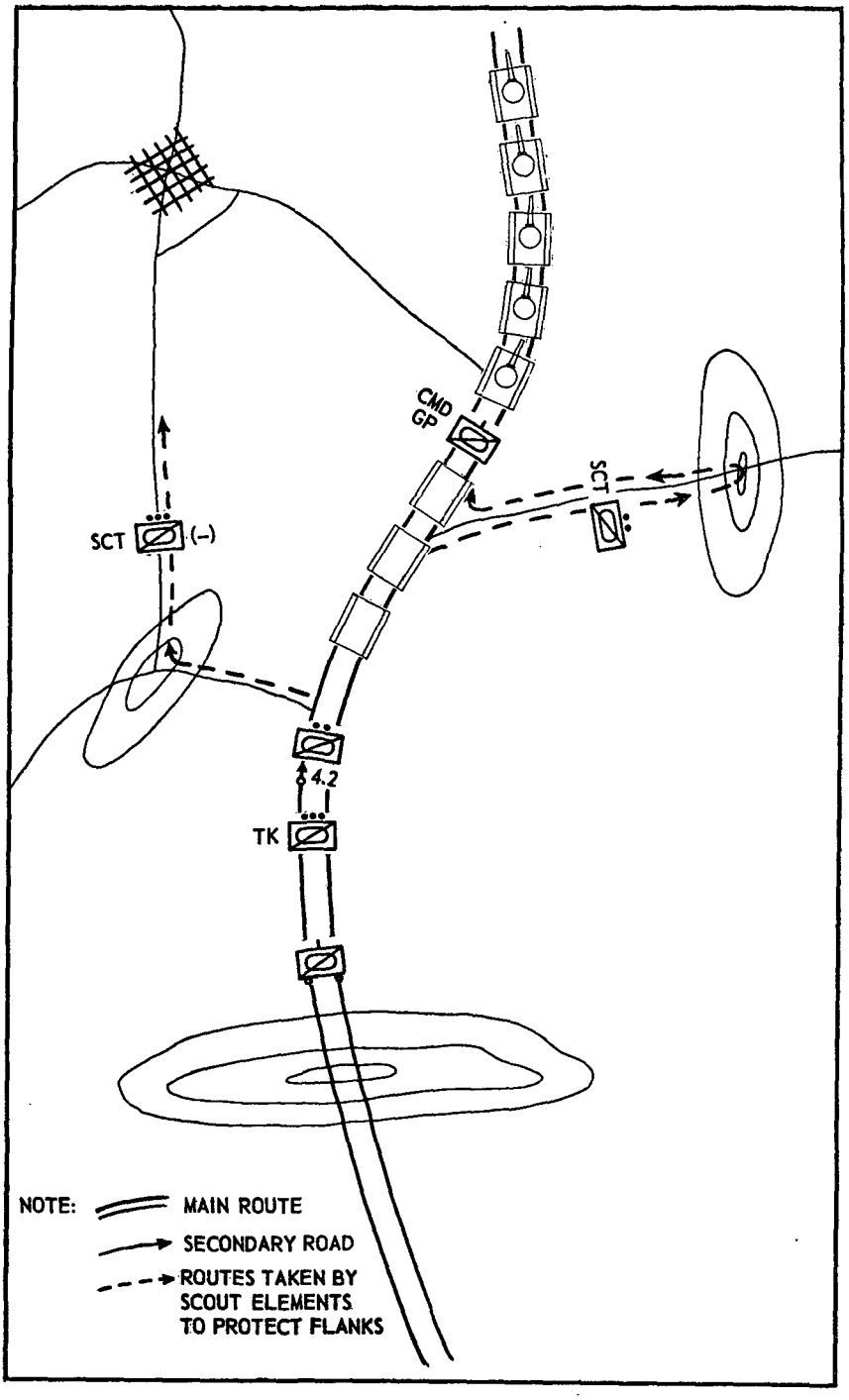



*Figure 67. Formation employed by an integrated reconnaissance troop advancing in a single column.*

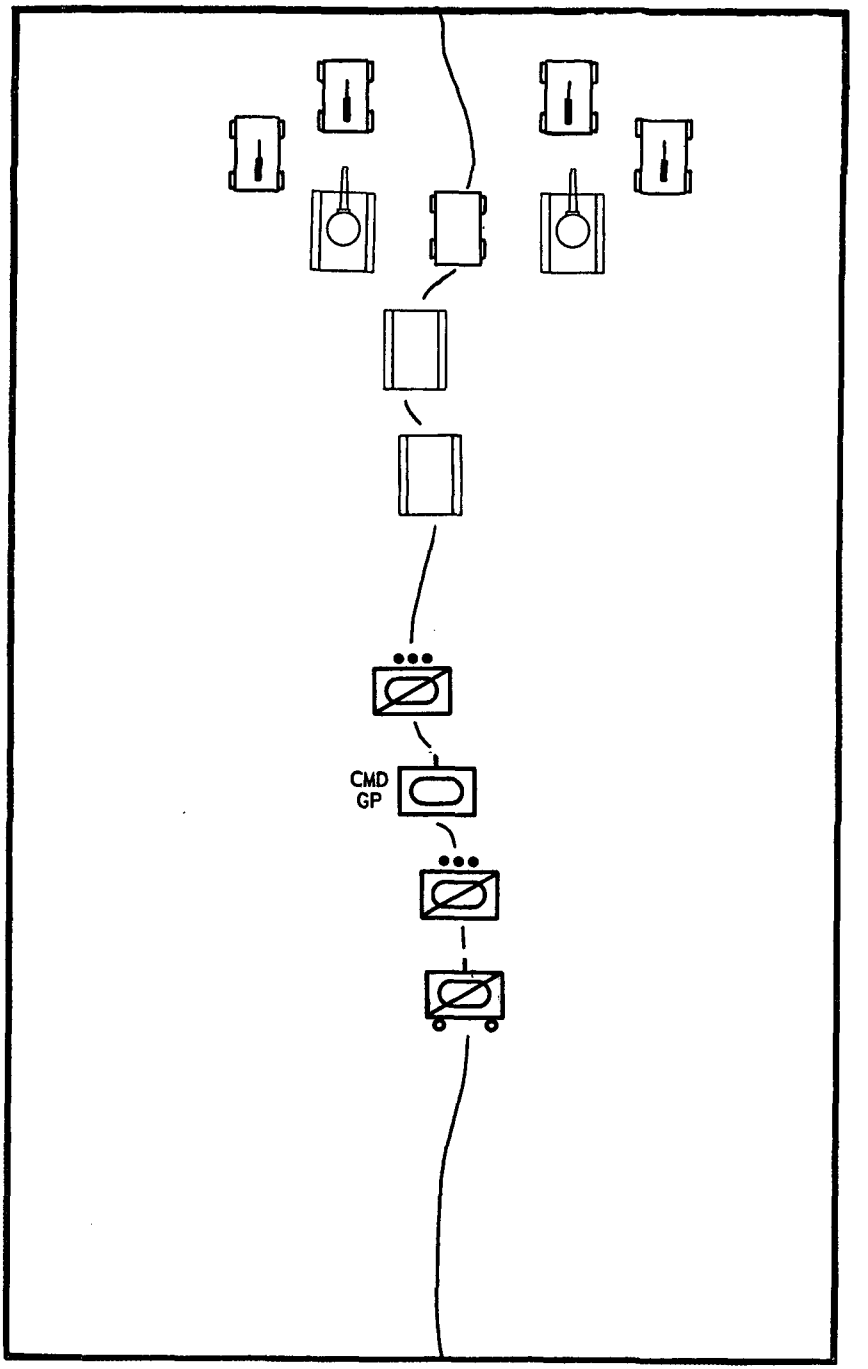



*Figure 68. The reconnaissance troop composed of integrated platoons in a single-column formation. The leading platoon performs the reconnaissance within the troop zone.*

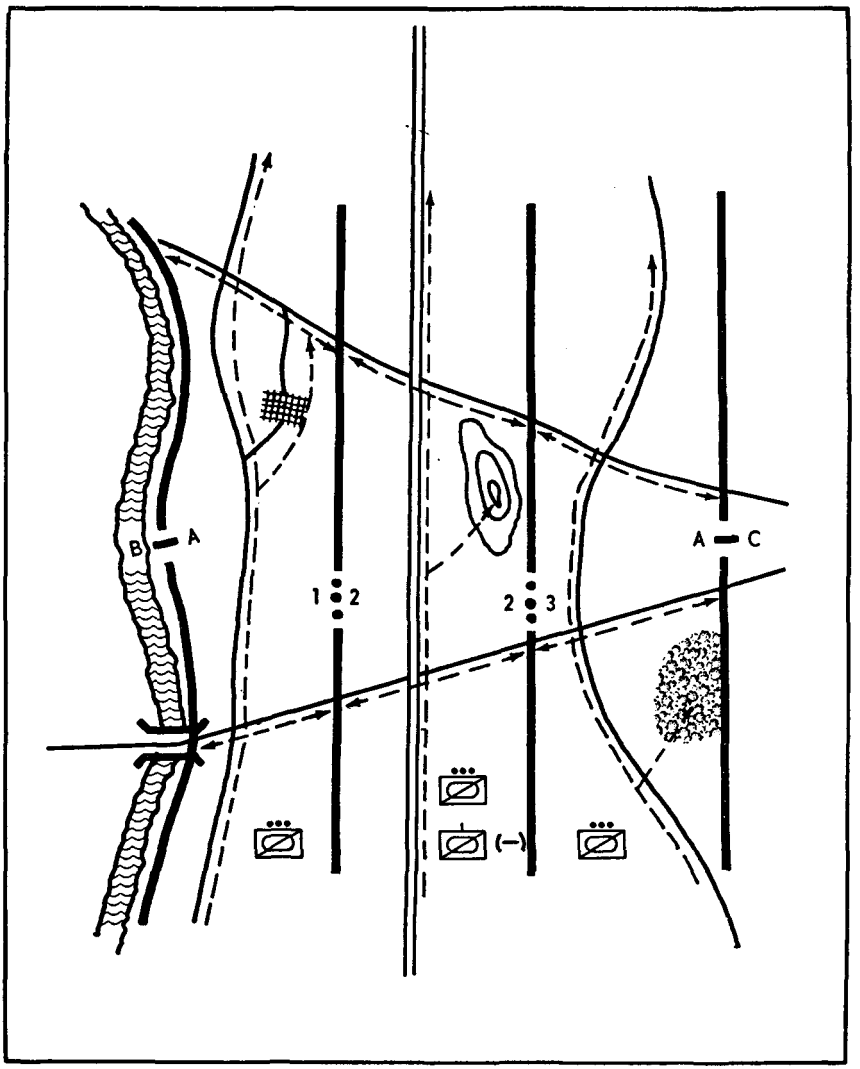



*Figure 69. Zone reconnaissance is the reconnaissance of all routes and terrain features between definitely assigned boundaries.*

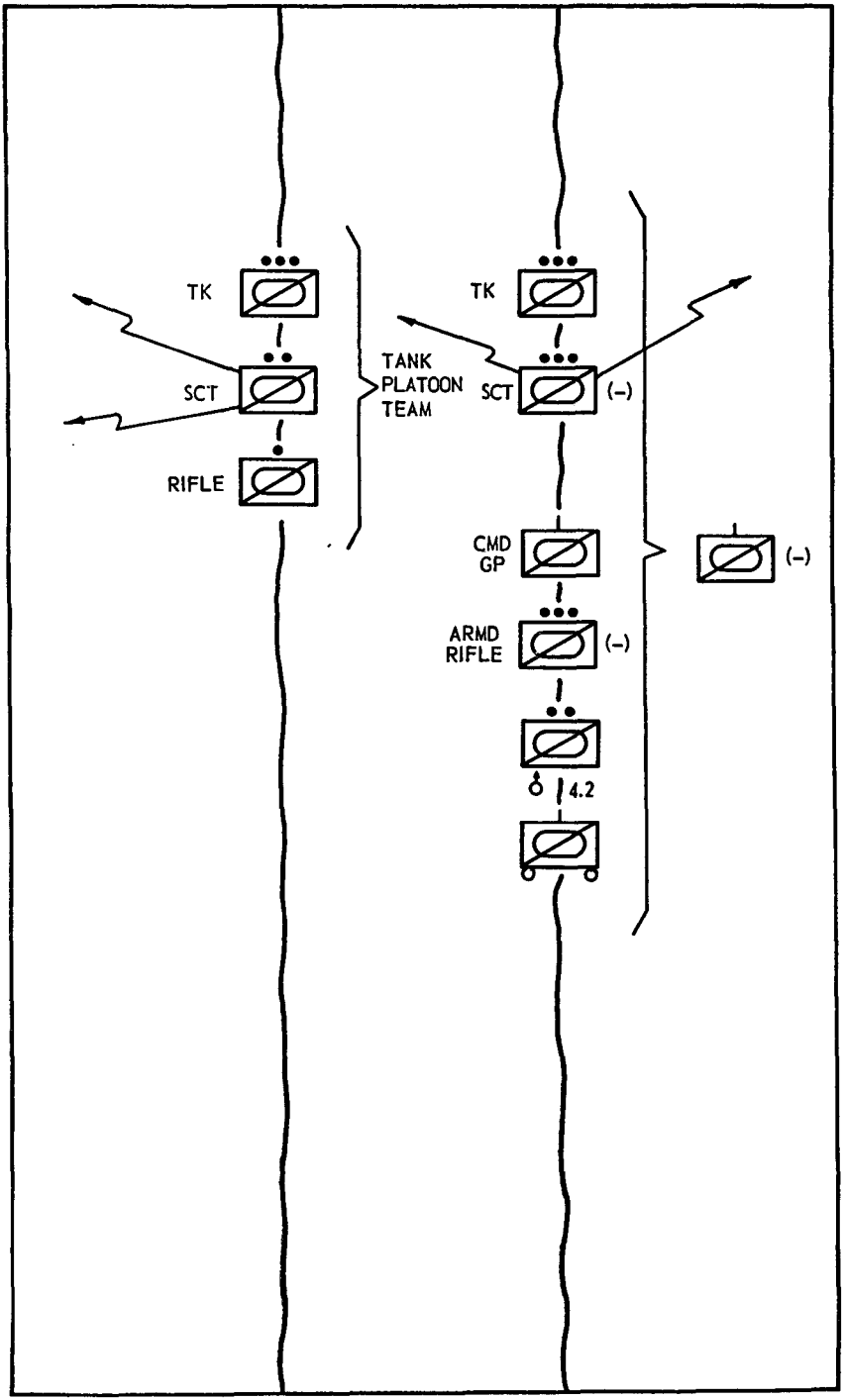



*Figure 70. Integrated reconnaissance troop advancing on two routes.*

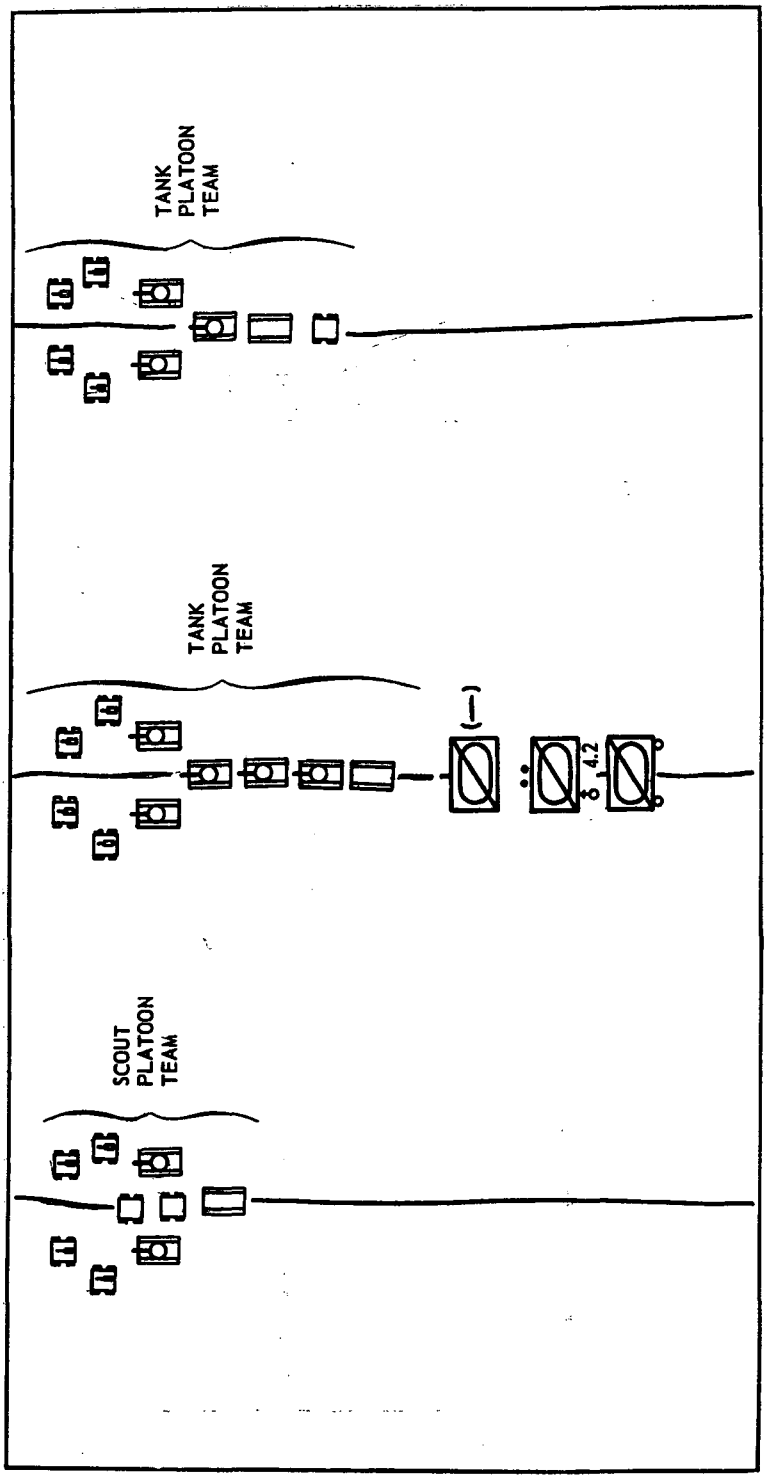



*Figure 71. Integrated reconnaissance troop advancing on three routes.*

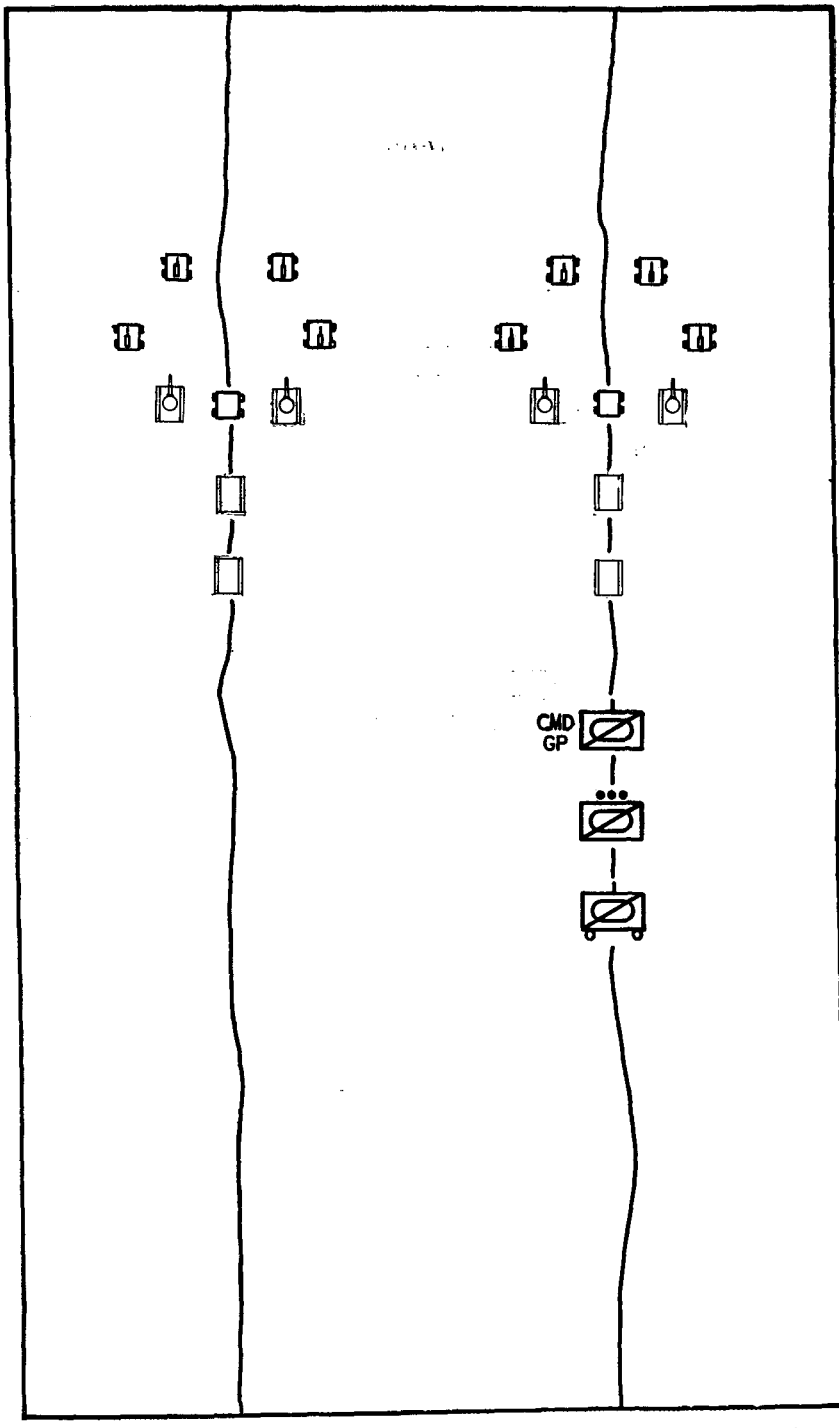



*Figure 72. Reconnaissance troop composed of integrated platoons advancing on two routes.*

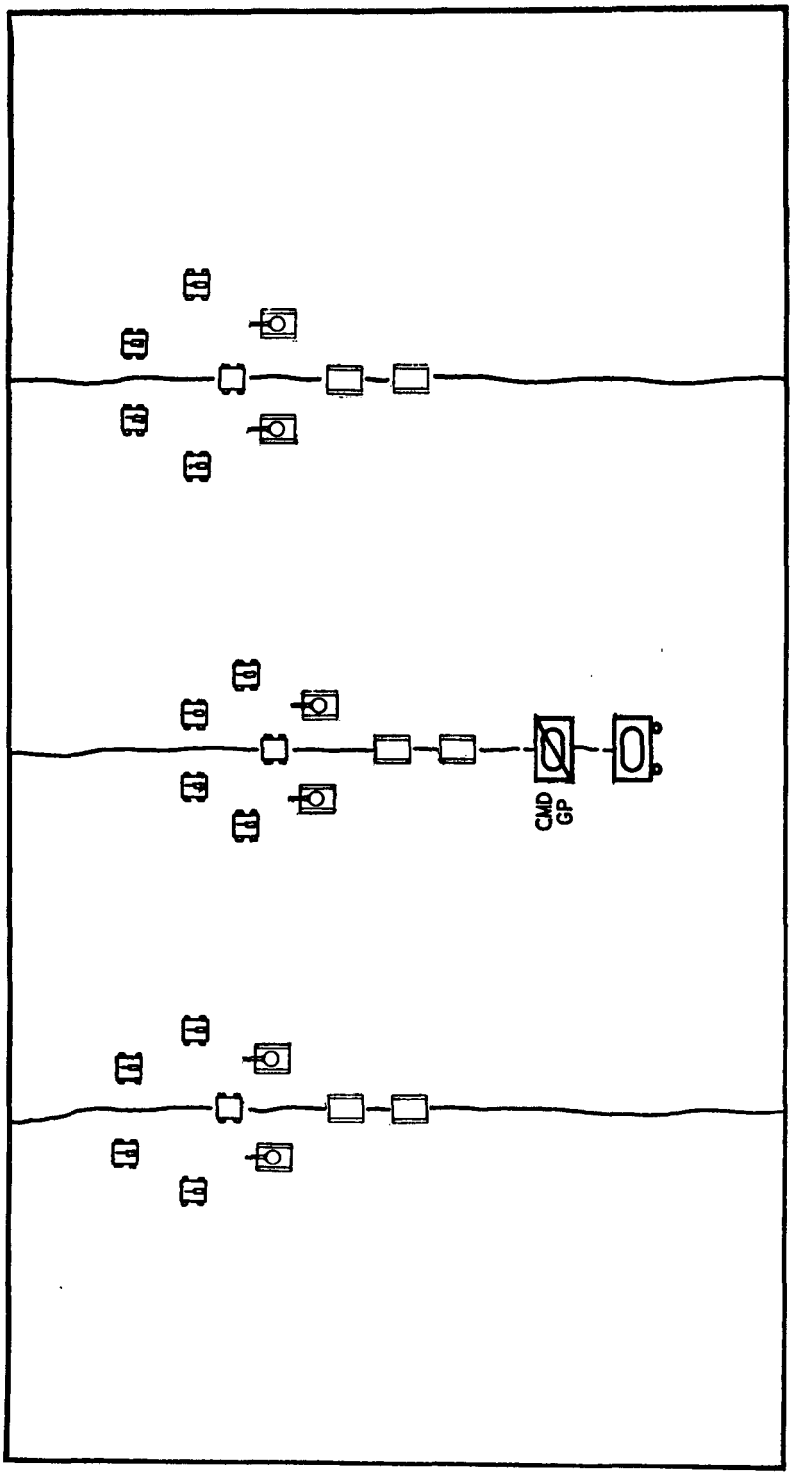



*Figure 73. Reconnaissance troop composed of integrated platoons advancing on three routes.*

# CHAPTER 18

# SECURITY OPERATIONS, RECONNAISSANCE TROOP

## 252. General

*a.* Security forces may be employed to the front, flanks, and rear of a main body to protect it from enemy interference. The size of the security force will vary with the mission, terrain, distance from the supported unit, and tactical situation. A security force must be as mobile as the main body it protects and must move aggressively at all times. The reconnaissance troop is well suited for use as a security force because of its inherent mobility and excellent means of communication. The troop may be employed on security missions alone or as part of a larger force.

*b.* FM 17–1 (pars. 160–178) covers in detail the principles of security operations and the fundamentals of employment for each type security force.

## 253. Troop as Advance Guard—General

The reconnaissance troop may be employed as an advance guard (par. 165, FM 17–1) for its squadron or for a battle group. Rarely is the troop employed as the advance guard when attached to a combat command of an armored division. An artillery forward observer should be furnished the troop. Army aircraft give valuable assistance to the advance guard and should be provided. These aircraft are used to extend observation and to provide warning of enemy activity to the front and on the flanks of the advance guard. The troop, when acting as advance guard, should march about 1,000 to 3,000 yards in front of the main body.

## 254. Troop as Advance Guard—Formation

*a. Troop Composed of Integrated Platoons.* One platoon is designated as the advance guard for the troop. The balance of the troop follows in column, prepared to support the leading platoon in any action necessary to accomplish the mission. The tanks and armored infantry of the two remaining platoons may be grouped under one platoon leader to provide a striking force for the troop. The scout sections of these two platoons may be grouped under the third platoon leader to provide flank security. The three support squads normally are grouped and employed under control of the troop commander (fig. 74).

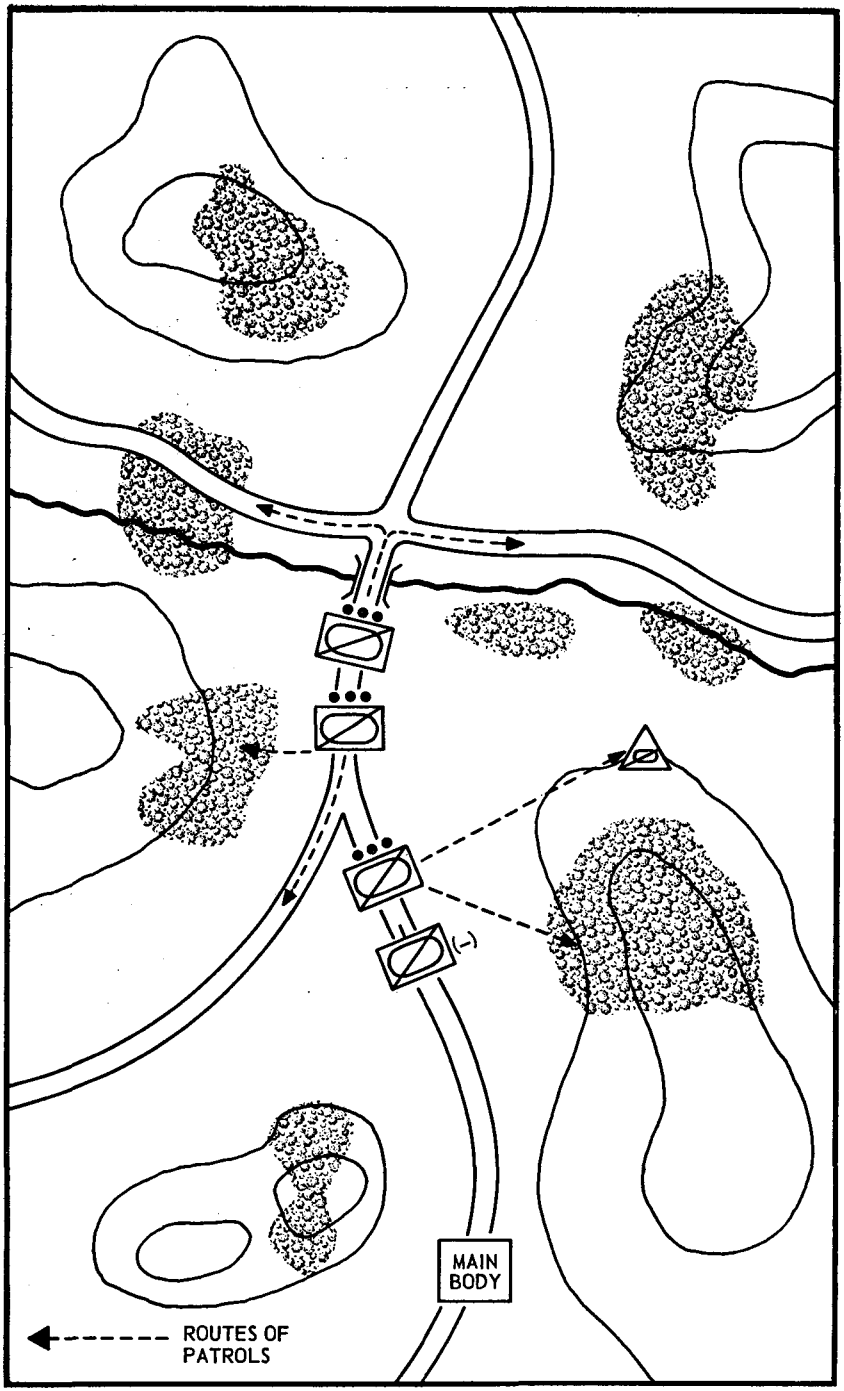



*Figure 74. Typical formation for reconnaissance troop, composed of integrated platoons, employed as an advance guard.*

*b. Integrated Troop.* Elements of the scout platoon are deployed on the flanks of the troop and may operate forward of the leading elements under certain conditions. The balance of the troop is in column with the tank platoons leading, followed by the armored rifle platoon and mortar section (fig. 75). When enemy contact is not imminent, scout elements may lead; when contact with the enemy is imminent or when the advance guard is under fire, the tank elements will lead.

## 255. Troop as Advance Guard—Conduct

Once enemy forces are encountered, the troop commander takes prompt and aggressive action according to the situation developed by the leading platoon. The action taken on contact includes four steps: deploy, develop the situation, choose a course of action, report. The troop attacks at once to push the enemy aside and permit the advance of the main body, or to develop the situation. While deploying his troop to attack, the troop commander places mortar fire on the hostile position and calls for artillery fire. If he is unable to dislodge the enemy, he is prepared to provide the base of fire for an attack by the main body. Scouts and aerial observers attempt to locate and report the flanks of the enemy position.

## 256. Troop as Flank Guard—General

The reconnaissance troop may execute a flank guard mission (pars. 167–172, FM 17–1) alone or as part of a larger force. The flank guard protects the main body from ground observation, direct fire of hostile weapons, and surprise attack. The flank guard may be mobile or stationary, depending upon the actions of the main body.

## 257. Troop as Part of Squadron Conducting Mobile Flank Guard

*a. Leading Troop.* The leading troop of the squadron conducting flank guard has a threefold mission: secure the squadron route of advance, maintain contact with the main body, and secure the area between the flank of the main body and the squadron route of advance. If the area to be secured is not too wide, one platoon or platoon team may be given the mission of securing this area and maintaining contact with the main body. Contact is maintained by radio and by physical contact at prescribed contact points. The elements of the troop responsible for the area between the main body and the squadron route of advance employ zone reconnaissance tactics. The remainder of the troop normally moves on the squadron route of advance and employs advance guard tactics.

*b. Following Troop.* The remaining troops move in column formation along the squadron route of advance. As blocking positions are uncovered by the leading troop, the next troop is prepared to seize and

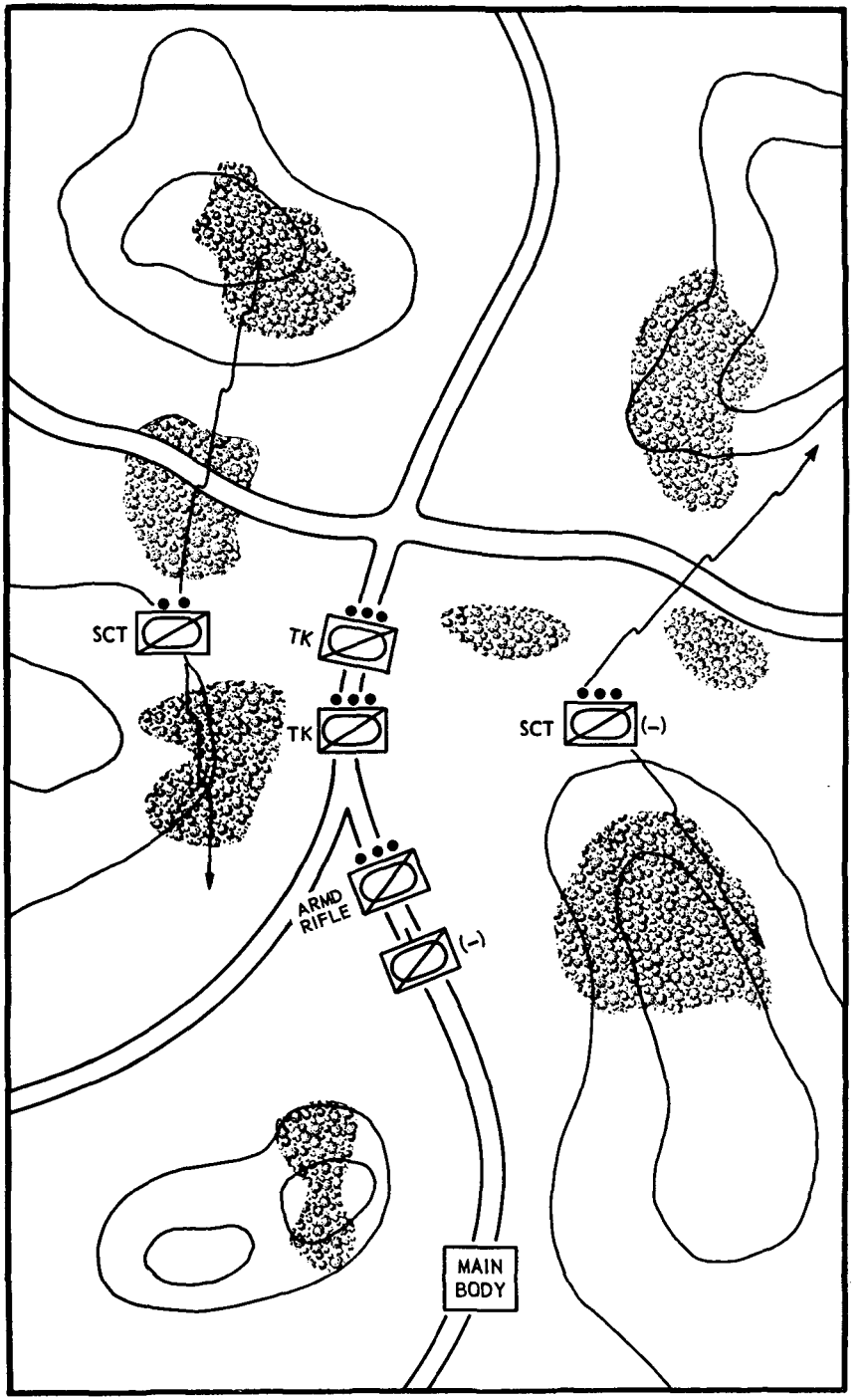



*Figure 75. Typical formation for an integrated reconnaissance troop employed as advance guard.*

occupy the position alone or to participate in a squadron attack to seize the blocking position. When directed to occupy a blocking position, the troop establishes either a defensive position or a delaying position. The troop commander establishes contact with adjacent units. He provides for early warning of enemy approach by extending his reconnaissance to the flank. If attacked, he holds the position until authorized to withdraw by the squadron commander.

## 258. Troop as Mobile Flank Guard—Planning

*a.* In planning for a mobile flank guard mission (fig. 76), the troop commander must consider the selection of blocking positions on the flank, the scheme of maneuver to be used, the control measures to be employed, and the formation of the troop.

*b.* The troop commander makes a map study of the area of operation and selects a series of blocking positions on the flank and parallel to the axis of advance of the main body. The positions are selected to prevent enemy direct fire on and observation of the main body. They should be located on defensible terrain that dominates the likely avenues of enemy approach. Further, the blocking positions should be a sufficient distance from the flank of the main body to permit timely warning of enemy approach and to provide sufficient maneuver room for the main body to react to an enemy threat. In the selection of a blocking position, special attention should be given to existing road nets and terrain that will permit the rapid movement of hostile armor into the flank of the main body. The troop commander designates the blocking positions as troop objectives.

*c.* The troop commander must develop a scheme of maneuver by means of which he can seize and hold selected troop objectives, as well as maintain contact with the leading elements of the main body. The scheme of maneuver must include provisions for seizing troop objectives either by separate platoon actions or by a coordinated troop effort. Once the troop objective is secured, the troop commander must decide the strength required to hold the objective.

*d.* Contact points are designated between the troop objectives to delineate the area of responsibility for the unit holding each objective. When a platoon or platoon team is ordered to occupy an objective, it assumes the responsibility for the area from the objective to the contact point on each flank. In addition, the platoon is required to make physical contact with adjacent units at the contact point.

*e.* A route of advance for the troop is selected. This route should be far enough from the main body's axis of advance to insure that the movement of the troop will not interfere with the maneuver of the main body. When possible, this route should be close to the line of troop

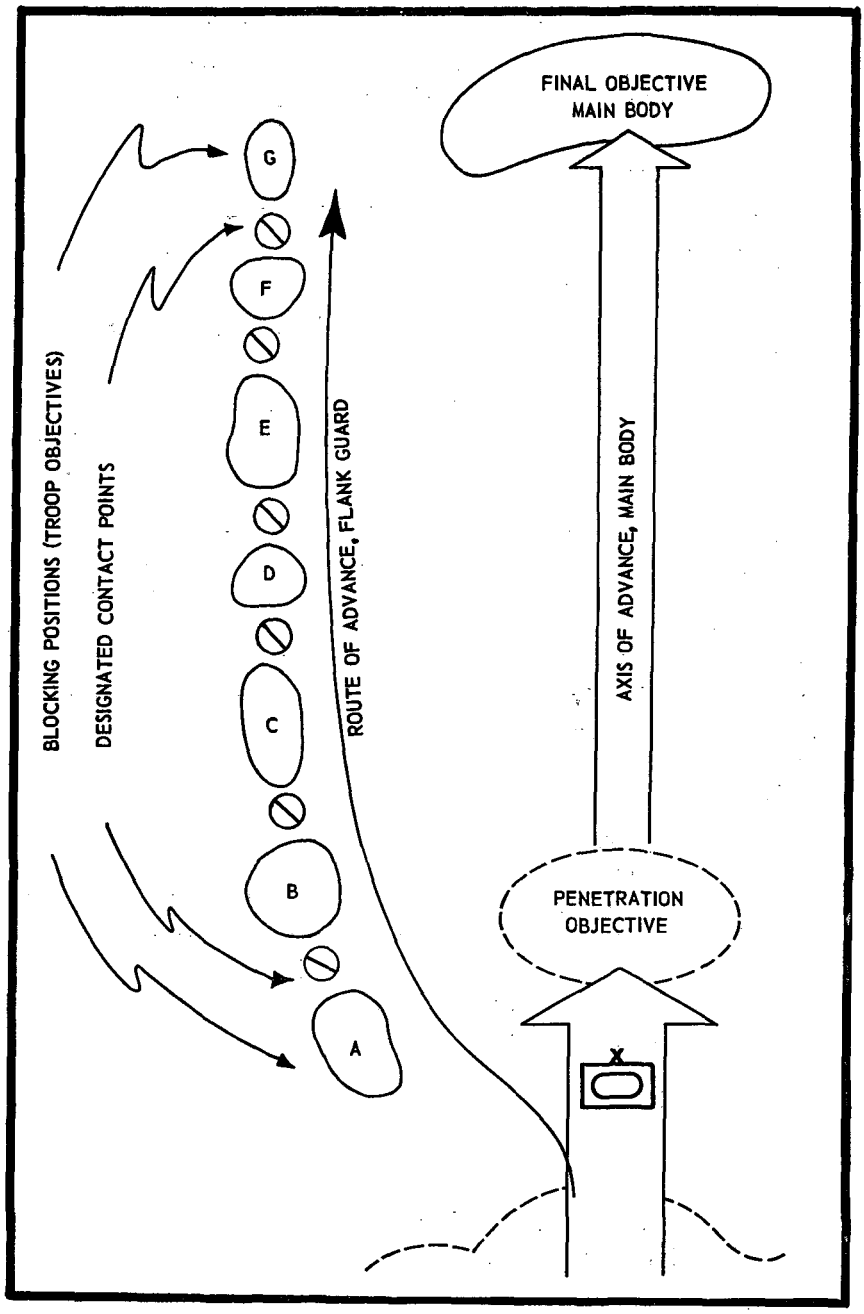



*Figure 76. Planning for the employment of the reconnaissance troop as a flank guard includes selection of the route of advance, blocking positions, and contact points.*

objectives and between these objectives and the main body's axis of advance. If a suitable route does not exist, the troop may be required to operate cross-country.

*f.* The troop commander adopts a formation that will permit rapid employment against enemy resistance encountered. The formation must provide the maximum flexibility of employment, and be geared to meet any changes in the situation. The formation that provides the best control and flexibility of employment is the column formation. Security must be provided for the troop formation. This normally is accomplished by charging each platoon or platoon team with the security of its exposed flank. Normally, the scout elements are employed to furnish this security and to extend reconnaissance to provide early warning of enemy approach.

## 259. Troop as Mobile Flank Guard—Conduct

*a.* The troop moves parallel to the axis of advance of the main body, regulating its rate of advance to that of the main body. The leading platoon or platoon team acts as the advance guard for the troop and secures the area between the main body and the line of troop objectives. In addition, the leading platoon maintains contact with the rear of the leading battalion or battle group. Under certain conditions of terrain or limited visibility, this three-fold mission may be beyond the capabilities of the leading platoon, and it may be necessary to commit an additional platoon or platoon team to maintain contact with the main body (fig. 77).

*b.* The remainder of the troop marches in column, prepared to secure the troop objectives on order. The decision to occupy these objectives will depend upon the speed with which the main body is advancing and the strength of the enemy on the flank.

*c.* There are three methods of movement which the troop may employ to furnish the required flank protection: leapfrogging, movement by bounds, and marching. See paragraph 168, FM 17–1.

*d.* Overextension of the reconnaissance troop may render it unable to furnish the desired protection during the advance of the main body. If the area to be secured becomes so wide that the troop cannot adequately secure it, the troop commander should ask for permission to cover part of the area by screening or to be relieved of responsibility for the rear part of the area. This request would be in the form of a recommendation to the main body commander.

## 260. Troop as Mobile Flank Guard for a Retrograde Movement

The conduct of a flank guard for a unit performing a retrograde movement is similar to that of an advancing force. The area of responsibility is from the front of the last battalion task force (which may be the rear

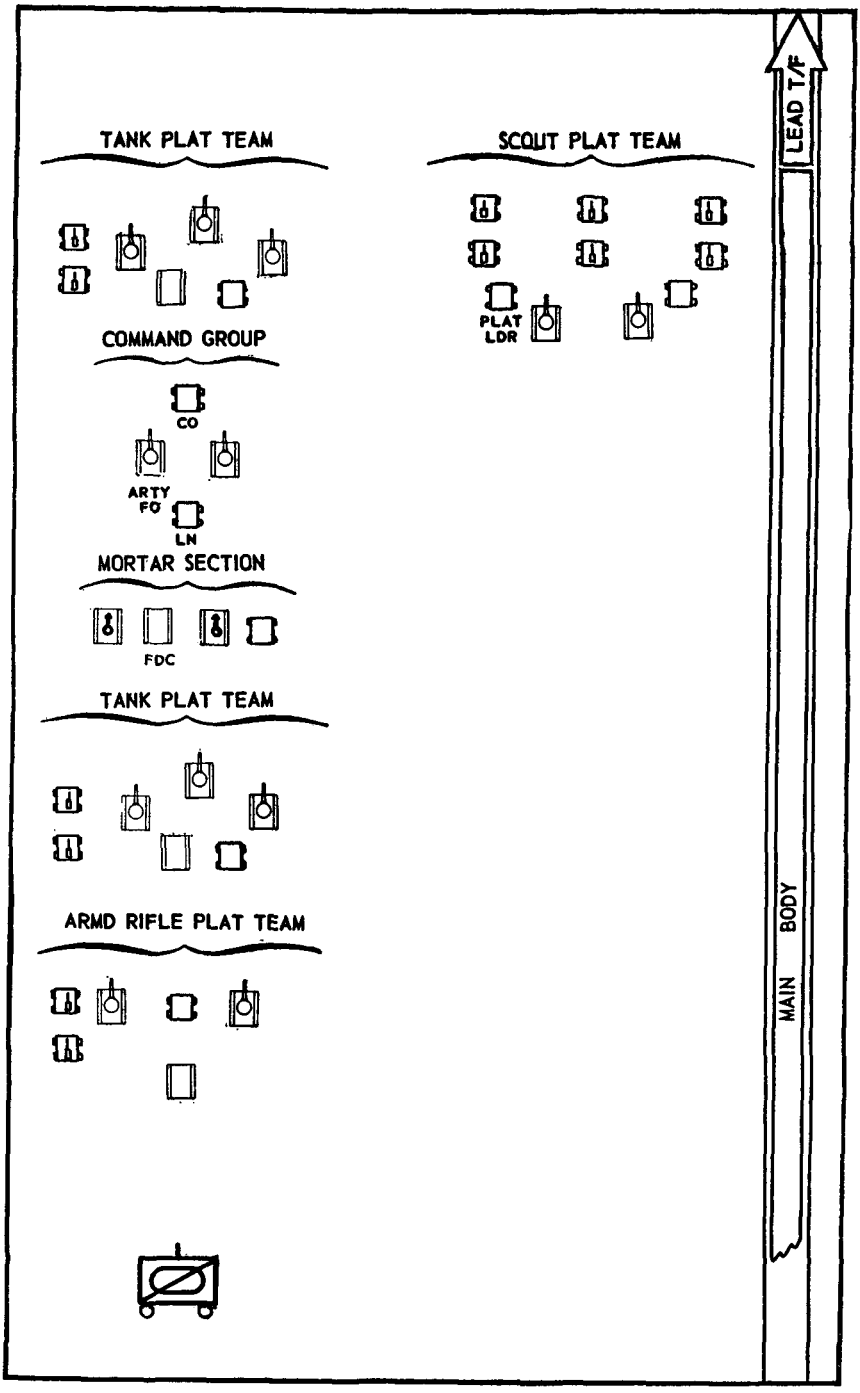



*Figure 77. An integrated reconnaissance troop employed as a flank guard, with one platoon team committed to maintaining contact with the main body.*

guard) to the front of the specific unit designated. The platoons are leapfrogged to the rear, and the area between the front of the last battalion task force and the line of troop objectives is covered by one platoon.

## 261. Troop as Rear Guard—General

*a.* The rear guard follows the main body on a specified route and orients its movement to that of the main force. The rear guard is prepared to intercept and engage enemy forces that constitute a threat to the rear of the main force. If attacked, the rear guard employs the techniques of delaying action in the accomplishment of its mission.

*b.* Within the integrated troop conducting a rear guard action, combined-arms platoon teams of tanks, armored infantry, and scouts may be formed. A troop reserve, if one is constituted, should be strong in tanks.

## 262. Troop as Rear Guard—Planning

*a.* When assigned a rear guard mission, the troop commander makes a map study of the terrain over which the troop will operate. He selects a series of delaying positions along the prescribed route of withdrawal. Depending upon the terrain and road net, the troop may be required to withdraw on more than one route.

*b.* He must determine the number of platoons or platoon teams to be employed in the initial position. If the situation will permit the retention of a reserve, he must decide the size and composition of the reserve. In addition, he assigns a troop route of withdrawal and designates the necessary control measures that will assist him in the execution of his mission. The control measures that may be employed are phase lines, check points, and contact points.

*c.* The troop commander must make plans for the security of his flanks and extend reconnaissance to the front and the flanks. Active measures must be taken to insure that the enemy does not bypass the rear guard and attack the rear of the main body. Measures to be taken may include the assignment of a reconnaissance mission to one or more platoons or platoon teams to reconnoiter a given area to the front or flanks. However, the normal method is to assign the additional mission of protecting the flanks and extending reconnaissance to the platoons or platoon teams in the delaying position. This mission will be accomplished by the scout elements of the platoons or platoon teams. If an Army aircraft is available, it may augment the efforts of the platoons by flying observation flights to the front and flanks.

*d.* Frequently engineers are attached to or in support of the rear guard. The troop commander, together with the engineer unit leader,

makes plans to construct obstacles that will delay the enemy. When artillery is in support of the troop, the troop commander, in coordination with the forward observer, develops a fire-support plan for the operation. This will include planned artillery fires and the fires of organic weapons on each of the troop's delaying positions.

*e.* Plans must be made for the establishment of liaison with the rear of the main body and the reconnaissance of successive delaying positions. It is necessary to establish liaison with the rear of the main body in order to regulate the rate of withdrawal of the rear guard to that of the main body. In addition, it is necessary to have information of halts made by the main body and other situations that affect the rate of withdrawal of the main body. A liaison agent may be designated to accompany the main body to effect this liaison. An alternate solution would have to have the necessary information relayed by the troop command post when it closely follows the main body (*f* below). The troop executive officer may be used to make a reconnaissance of and to organize each successive delaying position.

*f.* The troop commander must make plans for the location and movement of the troop command post. The command post normally is located on the next delaying position; however, it may follow closely to the rear of the main body. Consideration must be given to the security of the command post. The formation of the troop and the proximity of the main body will normally provide the security required.

## 263. Troop as Rear Guard—Conduct

*a.* The rear guard must be prepared to follow the main body by bounds, occupying successive delaying positions or following the main body at a given rate of speed. If there is no enemy contact, the rear guard moves by bounds behind the main body. It occupies each delaying position, remaining in each until the main body has cleared the next delaying position. The distance between the main body and the rear guard should never be so great that the enemy can encircle the rear guard and attack the rear of the main body undetected (fig. 78).

*b.* The rear guard engages all enemy that present a threat to the main body and fights to the extent necessary to insure that the enemy does not force the rear guard in on the main body. The rear guard normally fights a delaying action, trading space for time until the main body has moved out of danger. It engages the enemy until the enemy no longer presents a threat to the main body, at which time it disengages and withdraws by bounds in rear of the main body. Once contact with the enemy has been gained, it should be maintained until the enemy is no longer a threat to the main body or has moved out of the area of responsibility.

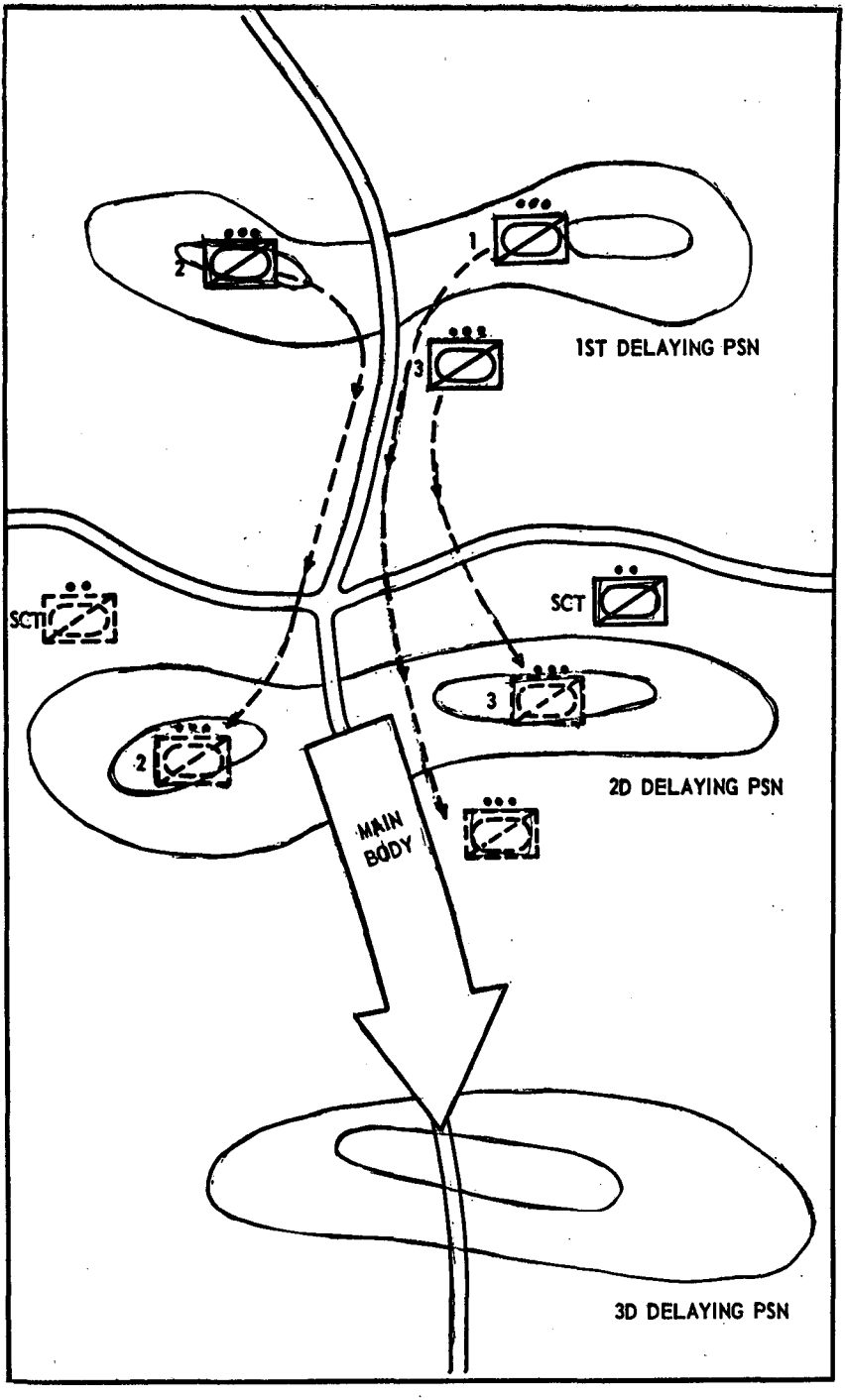



*Figure 78. Conduct of a rear guard action by a reconnaissance troop composed of integrated platoons.*

*c.* If the main body is moving rapidly, and no contact is made with the enemy, the rear guard moves at a given rate of march behind the main body. It regulates its speed so as to stay one bound in rear of the main body. This permits the rear guard to occupy a delaying position if the main body halts.

## 264. Troop on a Screening Mission—General

*a.* A screening mission is assigned when a wide area requires securing and there are few units available to perform the mission. The mission is accomplished by establishing a series of observation posts and patrols that are capable of observing all approaches into the sector. The width of the sector to be screened, therefore, is the overriding consideration in determining the distribution of forces to accomplish the mission. The establishment of numerous small groups to cover a wide sector results in a dissipation of the troop's combat strength, precluding the rapid massing of forces to engage in offensive action.

*b.* The primary mission of screening forces is to provide early warning and to maintain contact with enemy forces. Forces disposed on a screening mission cannot be expected to offer strong resistance to the enemy. Screening forces can, however, be expected to attack, destroy, or repel enemy patrols that penetrate the screen.

*c.* A reconnaissance troop may be given a screening mission (fig. 79). The scout elements, supplemented by armored infantry when necessary, establish observation posts and conduct patrols across the assigned sector. The tanks and the bulk of the armored infantry normally are retained in positions behind the screening force for employment in limited offensive action in support of the screening force. The support squads of integrated platoons are retained under platoon control. The mortar section of the integrated troop is normally positioned where it can support the most critical portion of the sector, and may be moved to support any particular action.

## 265. Troop on Screening Mission—Planning

*a.* Upon receipt of a screening mission, the troop commander makes a map reconnaissance. The width of sector, and the distance he would be required to travel, often preclude his making a personal reconnaissance. If an Army aircraft is available, he may make a reconnaissance flight over his sector.

*b.* Based upon his reconnaissance, he formulates his plans and assigns tasks to his subordinate units. He plans for the establishment of a series of observation posts and patrols to cover the sector by observation. In this connection, sectors of observation covered by the OPs should be interlocking. In the event it becomes necessary to augment OPs with armored infantry to cover an extended area, wheeled vehicles

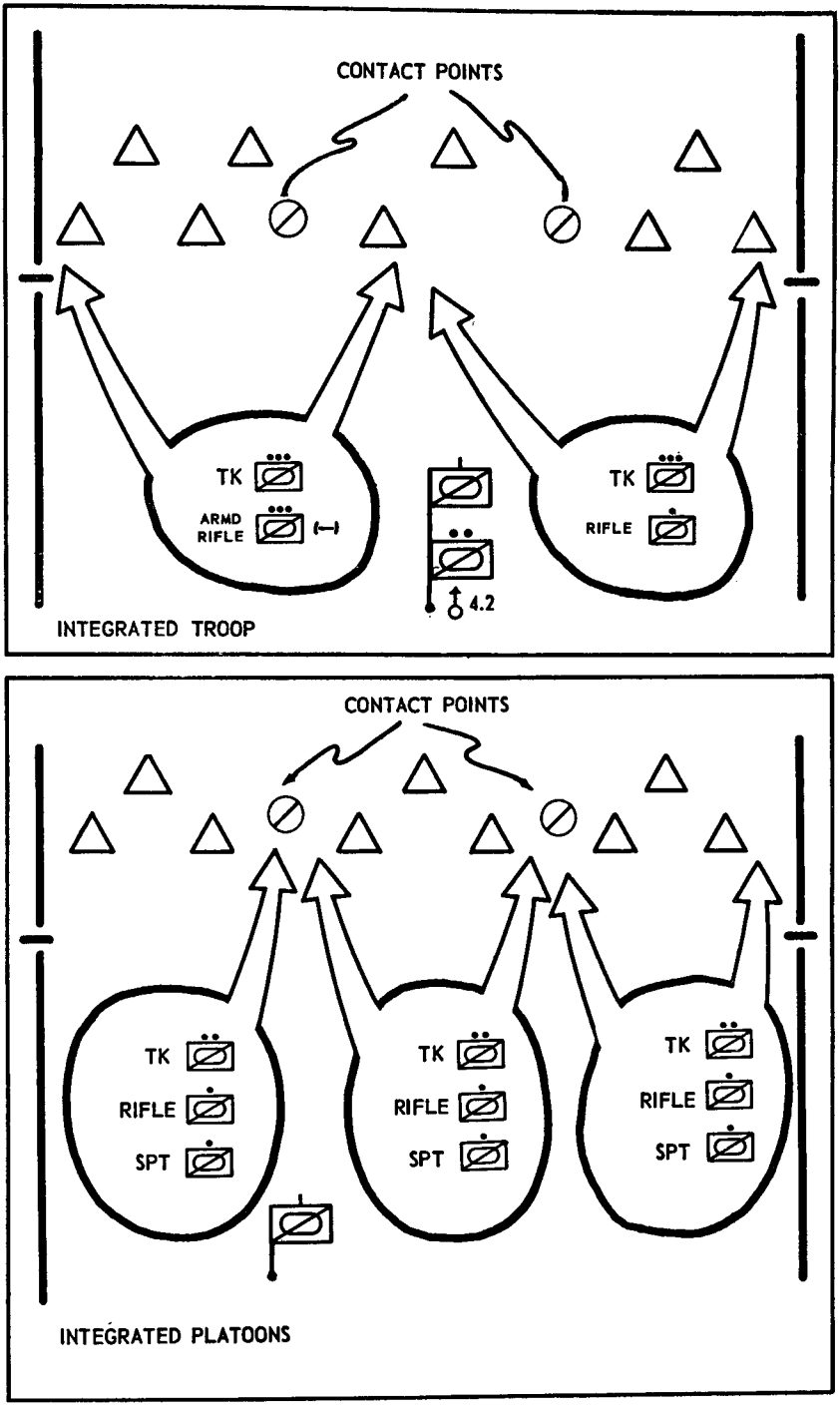



*Figure 79. Two methods of disposing the reconnaissance troop on an extended screening mission.*

of the troop (such as the platoon leaders' ¼-ton trucks) should be used. Normally, high-silhouette vehicles such as tanks or armored personnel carriers should not be employed at the OP sites. Within the integrated troop, the scout platoon leader normally commands the OPs and connecting patrols. The troop commander makes plans to locate his troop command post well to the rear on high ground that provides adequate communication over the wide front. This location should afford good concealment from the air and ground, as secrecy of the location will be its main security.

*c.* The troop commander specifies the locations of, and possible counterattack routes for, those elements not employed in the OP system. In addition, phase lines and check points may be used to control movement in the event the screen is forced to the rear. Contact points may be established between elements of the OPs to insure coordination and to provide a point where physical contact can be established.

*d.* If supporting fires are available, he coordinates with the attached forward observer on their employment. His plan should include harassing fires on the enemy at defiles or other confining terrain features. The fires should also include protective fires for OPs.

*e.* If Army aviation or elements of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon are in support of the troop, plans must be made for their employment. Aircraft may be used to extend observation and reconnaissance to the front of the sector or to make periodic flights over sensitive areas, or to transport patrols.

*f.* When the troop is operating as part of a larger force, the commander must effect the necessary coordination with adjacent units to insure that the area between the two units is adequately covered by observation. He obtains from the higher commander other control and coordination measures.

## 266. Troop on Screening Mission—Conduct

*a.* Small enemy patrols that approach the position may be permitted to infiltrate the screen. The OP observing the patrol reports its location and progress. The OP also remains hidden so as not to disclose its location. Tank and armored infantry elements are employed to destroy the enemy patrol or drive it from the sector.

*b.* When an enemy force that presents a threat to the main force approaches the position, it is reported by the fastest means available. Every effort is made to develop the situation and to obtain the strength, composition, disposition, and direction of movement. Once contact has been gained, one or more OPs may be assigned the mission of maintaining contact with the enemy force. Depending upon the situation, the remainder of the troop may reinforce the general line of OPs, with cer-

tain elements moving to conform to the advance of the enemy. In other situations, the troop may be forced to withdraw to a new line of OPs.

*c.* The troop commander should use all fire support available to bring harassing fires upon the enemy. Every effort should be made, within the scope of the mission, to hinder the enemy's forward progress. Obstacles, deception, and other passive measures should be employed to annoy and harass the enemy.

*d.* Once contact has been gained with the enemy, it must be maintained until the enemy moves out of the troop's sector of responsibility. If the enemy moves into another unit's sector, measures must be taken to insure that the adjacent unit establishes contact with the enemy force.

## 267. Troop on Surveillance Missions

*a. General.* The reconnaissance troop, alone or as part of a larger force, frequently may be employed on surveillance missions as part of a mobile or position defense (fig. 80). When so employed, the troop normally executes such missions by establishing OPs and outposts within and/or forward of the larger unit's strongpoint and by active mounted patrolling of areas not occupied or adequately covered by observation. The entire armored cavalry squadron may be assigned the mission of conducting surveillance for the entire division defensive position, or reconnaissance troops may be attached to combat commands or battle groups for surveillance operations within their sectors of responsibility.

*b. Outposts.*

(1) An outpost is a security force distributed at some distance from the main body of troops, while at halt, in camp or bivouac, or in position defense, to protect it from ground observation and surprise by the enemy.

(2) Local outposts are used by all units for close-in security while at a halt or in bivouac. They are very small and have a primary mission of warning the main body of enemy approach. This is accomplished by means of security sentinels, observation posts, and listening posts. The scout elements of the reconnaissance troop normally perform this mission for the troop.

*c. Observation Posts and Listening Posts.*

(1) Observation posts and listening posts are a means of providing security to a unit. Observation posts are usually located on high ground, to afford good observation of the likely avenues of hostile approach. Observation posts are used during daylight. Listening posts are used during darkness or poor visibility and are located on or near likely avenues of hostile approach. The mission of both observation and listening posts is to afford the main body early warning of enemy approach.

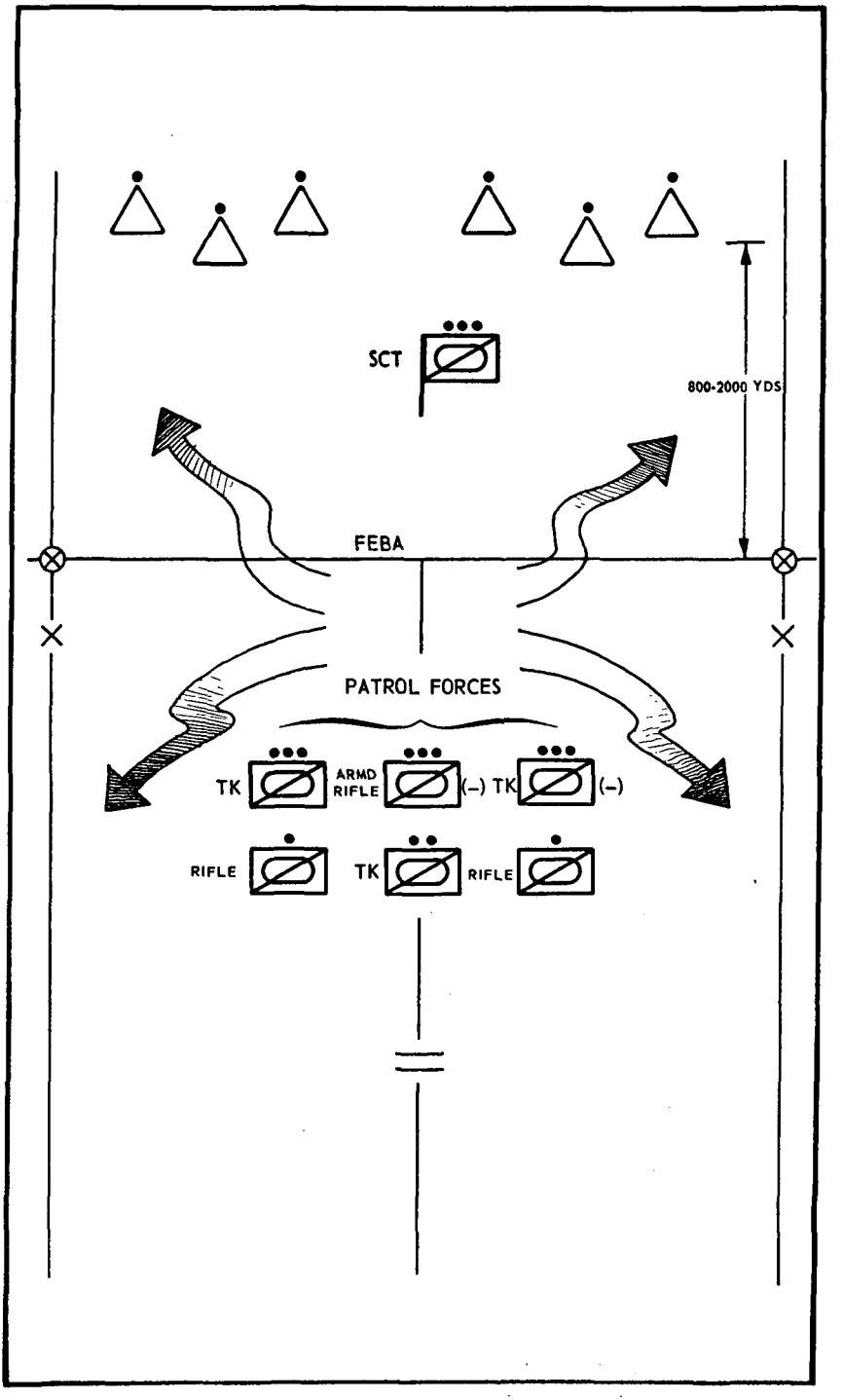



*Figure 80. Reconnaissance troop surveillance operations as part of a combat command conducting mobile defense.*

(2) Frequently the observation posts are carried to or near their position, resupplied, and evacuated by helicopters.

(3) The effectiveness of an observation post system may be greatly enhanced during daylight through use of fixed-wing reconnaissance aircraft and aerial observation posts established with helicopters. Before employing such means, however, the commander must give due consideration to the danger of revealing the location of his unit.

(4) Observation or listening posts established for security are inadequate unless equipped with a means of fast communication, usually radio or wire.

(5) The scout elements establish and man observation and listening posts for the reconnaissance troop. Composition of the posts varies with the situation, but one scout squad normally is assigned to each post. Armored infantry elements, mounted or dismounted, may also be assigned the mission of manning observation and listening posts. No more than two posts should be assigned to a rifle squad, and each post should be equipped with a radio.

(6) The effectiveness of observation posts can be improved by the use of electronic and infrared equipment. The use of this equipment should be exploited during periods of poor visibility.

*d. Patrols.* Whenever possible, patrols should be mounted and capable of limited offensive action to destroy or repel small hostile reconnaissance forces. Patrols frequently include all elements of the troop: tanks, armored infantry, and scouts. These patrols operate on an irregular schedule within and forward of the forward defensive area, concentrating on critical routes into the areas that are not secured by other means.

## 268. Troop Employment as a Covering Force as Part of a Larger Security Force

*a.* A covering force operates beyond the security detachments of the main body. Its mission is to force an early development of the situation, to defeat hostile resistance within its capabilities, or to delay, deceive, and disorganize the enemy. It engages in any type of action necessary for the successful accomplishment of its mission, but should not become decisively engaged with the enemy force.

*b.* The reconnaissance troop is rarely used alone as a covering force; it normally operates as part of the squadron on such missions. The troop may be required to perform a covering force mission when attached to a combat command or a battle group on an independent mission. It can expect to perform a covering force mission, as part of the armored cavalry squadron, when the division is engaged in a mobile or a position defense or is conducting a retrograde movement.

*c.* When the troop is employed as part of a covering force for an advancing unit, the missions generally conform to the conduct of a reconnaissance mission. The troop performs reconnaissance within its sector to locate enemy forces, bypasses of natural obstacles and barricades, and alternate routes when the prescribed route cannot carry the required traffic. When contact is made with an enemy force, the troop attacks and destroys it if within its capabilities. An enemy position is bypassed only upon order of the next higher commander. The reconnaissance troop may be assigned objectives in addition to the reconnaissance mission. The troop commander must assume an advance-to-contact formation, prepared to rapidly employ his troop against enemy resistance.

*d.* Frequently the reconnaissance troop is employed as part of a covering force for a unit conducting a defense or retrograde movement. The higher command directing the covering force will designate the general area in which it is to initiate its operations. Instructions will also include a general line in front of which the enemy is to be held, and the time required to accomplish the mission. The time element is normally expressed in days or hours. In the performance of a covering force mission as part of a larger force, the troop is assigned a sector. The troop accomplishes the mission by employing the techniques of delaying action.

## 269. Troop on a Rear Area Security Mission

*a. General.* A reconnaissance troop may be part of a larger rear area security force which is protecting a unit, locality, or installation in the rear of the line of contact from surprise attack (ground or airborne), annoyance, and sabotage. This threat may be from bypassed enemy units, partisans or guerrillas, or airborne troops. Armored cavalry units engaged in this type operation must carefully coordinate their efforts with those of the service and other combat units within the area.

*b. Securing Lines of Communication* (fig. 81). The method employed to guard lines of communication varies according to the terrain, the road net, the length of the lines of communication, and the type of enemy action expected. The following two methods usually form the basis of any plan for the security of lines of communication.

(1) If the lines of communication are threatened for only a short distance, sufficient units are assigned sectors to insure that the area of responsibility is completely secured. Small security detachments, equipped with radios, are placed on likely avenues of enemy approach and dominating terrain features. The security force commander maintains as large a mobile reserve as possible to counter any enemy threat which might develop in the area of responsibility.

(2) If the lines of communication are long and must be guarded over a great distance, much larger sectors must be assigned to

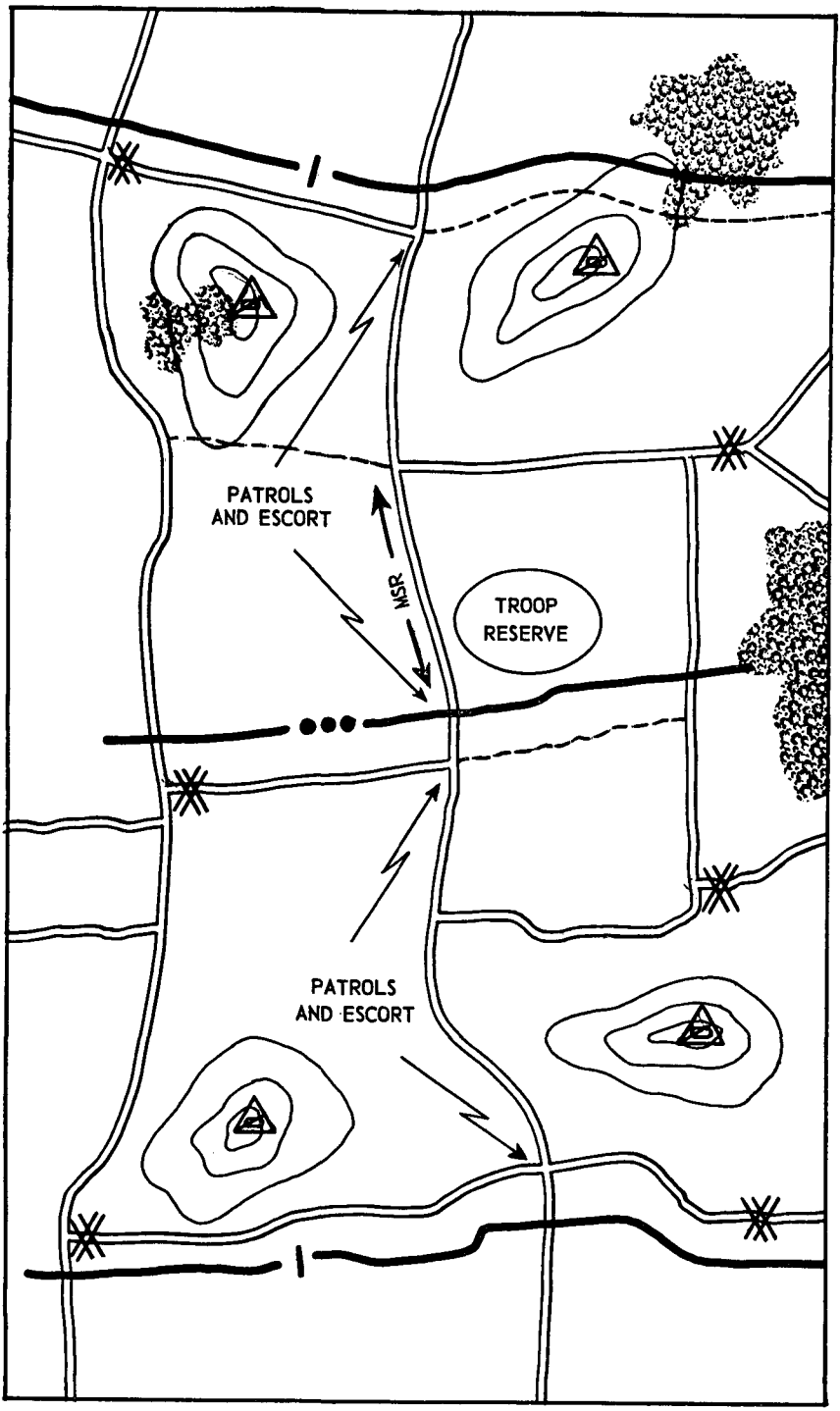



*Figure 81. The reconnaissance troop guarding lines of communication.*

each unit. Sufficient units are assigned sectors to insure that both flanks of the main supply route are covered by a series of observation posts. These observation posts are equipped with radios and have the mission of giving warning of an enemy threat. The remainder of the security force is used to patrol the main supply route and escort convoys through the threatened area. The unit that is escorting the convoy holds the major portion of its force in the forward part of the convoy and establishes patrols to the flanks and rear. The security force commander should use such strength as he feels is necessary for any given escort mission.

(3) The reconnaissance troop normally is employed as part of a larger unit securing lines of communication. The scout elements are used for observation posts and patrolling. They may be augmented by the rifle squads as required. The remainder of the troop is held in reserve to escort convoys.

# PART FOUR

# ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

# CHAPTER 19

# GENERAL

## Section I. GENERAL

### 270. Purpose and Scope

Part four provides a guide for employment of the armored cavalry squadron. It covers employment, organization for combat, offensive operations, defensive operations, retrograde operations, reconnaissance operations, and security operations.

### 271. Types of Armored Cavalry Squadrons

Armored cavalry squadrons are organic to the armored division and the infantry division. The armored cavalry squadron of the armored division contains a headquarters and headquarters troop and four reconnaissance troops. Within this squadron, the elements of combined arms are integrated at troop level. The infantry division cavalry squadron consists of a headquarters and headquarters troop and three reconnaissance troops. Within this squadron, the elements of combined arms are integrated at platoon level. For details on organization, see paragraphs 6 through 22, 44 through 50, and 192 through 195.

### 272. Roles, Armored Cavalry Squadron

Armored cavalry squadrons have three principal roles. They are best utilized in the performance of reconnaissance missions. They may provide security for the unit to which assigned or attached. They may also be employed to execute combat missions as an economy force. They are organized, equipped, and trained to engage in offensive, defensive, or retrograde combat in the execution of these missions. The basic missions assigned to the squadrons will generally be the same regardless of whether the squadron is organic to the armored division or the infantry division.

## 273. Administration, Armored Cavalry Squadron

The application of sound principles of personnel management is essential to the efficient operation of any military unit. By careful selection of individuals to fill positions in the unit, the commander can reduce the amount of time necessary for supervision of administrative matters, allowing himself more time for the supervision of combat operations.

## 274. Logistics, Armored Cavalry Squadron

The tactical success of the armored cavalry squadron is dependent upon adequate and continuous logistical support. Prior logistical planning is essential to accomplish this support. Supply, medical evacuation, transportation, and maintenance must be adequate and timely to support tactical operations. The procedures for resupply, medical evacuation, transportation, and maintenance; the logistical elements available to the commander; and the employment of the squadron's trains are discussed in detail in FM 17–50.

# Section II. EMPLOYMENT, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

## 275. General

*a.* Armored cavalry squadrons may be employed on reconnaissance, security, or economy-force missions for the unit to which assigned or attached. The situation confronting the higher commander will determine the best employment of the squadron.

*b.* The following missions are particularly suitable for the armored cavalry squadron—

(1) Exercise surveillance over wide fronts and at extended depths.
(2) Collect and report information of an intelligence nature, to include assistance in acquisition of targets and damage assessment.
(3) Protect the flanks of the division.
(4) Provide security between elements of the division and/or between the division and adjacent units.
(5) Act as a covering force in offensive, defensive, or retrograde operations.
(6) Screen the concentration of larger units.
(7) Secure rear areas, lines of communication, and installations from attack by enemy guerrilla or airborne forces.
(8) Maintain combat liaison and contact between major units.
(9) Provide alternate command and communication systems for higher headquarters by the use of ground and airborne radios, messengers, and command facilities.

(10) Conduct offensive, defensive, and retrograde operations as an economy-force unit.

*c.* The armored cavalry squadron is one of the most effective organic atomic target acquisition agencies available to a commander. It will frequently be through its efforts that possible atomic targets are first identified and, in conjunction with other information-collecting agencies, sufficiently developed to clearly define a target for atomic attack. The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon, organic to the armored cavalry squadron, increases the capability of the squadron in the identification of likely targets for atomic attack.

*d.* The armored cavalry squadron may, when properly reinforced, be employed on an economy-force mission to exploit the effects of an atomic explosion by conducting limited offensive action through the area of the detonation.

*e.* Armored cavalry units may frequently be employed to conduct post-strike reconnaissance within the area affected by an atomic explosion, either friendly or enemy, to determine the extent of damage and the degree of residual radioactivity prior to the entry by other forces. When this is done following an enemy atomic attack, the armored cavalry unit may have the mission of assisting in the reorganization and reestablishment of communication within an affected unit, and may temporarily assume the mission of the affected unit.

*f.* The tactics, techniques, and procedures of employment of both types of armored cavalry squadrons are generally the same. Differences in employment exist only in the scope of operations, area of operations, and operational control of the two squadrons, necessitated by inherent differences in the armored and infantry divisions.

## 276. Employment of Armored Cavalry Squadron of the Armored Division

*a.* The armored cavalry squadron may operate under direct control of the division or under control of one of the combat commands, or elements of the squadron may be attached to other elements of the division. The armored cavalry squadron is most effectively employed as a unit, without detachments, under either division or combat command control. The decision as to what headquarters will control the armored cavalry squadron is made by the division commander. This decision is usually based upon these factors:

(1) Mission of the squadron.
(2) Major unit (division or combat command) which has the primary interest in the mission assigned the armored cavalry squadron.
(3) Terrain as it affects the proposed operation.
(4) Enemy situation.

*b.* The armored cavalry squadron is retained directly under division control when the squadron mission is of primary interest to the division as a whole, regardless of the combat formation of the division. Under these circumstances, the squadron receives its instructions in the form of mission-type orders from the division commander; it submits reports directly to the division command post and, as desired, to other agencies having vital need of the information.

*c.* The squadron may be attached to a combat command when the mission of the squadron is of primary interest to one combat command. For instance, if the combat formation of the armored division is a column of combat commands, the armored cavalry squadron may be attached to the leading combat command. In this formation, the squadron is best suited for the mission of providing security for one or both flanks of the leading combat command, and of reconnoitering the axis of advance. Regardless of the method of operation, the squadron commander normally controls and coordinates all elements of his unit.

*d.* When required, one of the reconnaissance troops of the armored cavalry squadron may be attached to a combat command. This attachment is justified only when adequate armored cavalry support cannot be provided with the troops under squadron control. Under these circumstances, the reconnaissance troop will have attached, from the squadron logistical elements, a proportionate share of the fuel and lubricant and ammunition trucks and a medical aid-evacuation team.

## 277. Employment of Infantry Division Cavalry Squadron

*a.* The infantry division cavalry squadron may operate under direct control of the division, under control of the brigade, or under control of one of the battle groups; or elements of the squadron may be attached to other elements of the division. It is most effectively employed as a unit, without detachments, under division, brigade, or battle group control. The decision as to what headquarters will control the squadron is made by the division commander based upon a consideration of the following factors:

(1) Reconnaissance and security requirements of the division.
(2) Reconnaissance and security requirements of each major subordinate command.
(3) Terrain as it affects the proposed operation.
(4) Enemy situation.

*b.* The squadron normally is employed directly under division control. The squadron receives its instructions from the division commander; it submits reports directly to the division command post and, as desired, to other agencies having need of the information.

*c.* The squadron may be attached to the brigade or to a battle group when the mission of the squadron is of primary interest to that headquarters. For instance, if the combat formation of the division is a column of battle groups, the squadron may be attached to the leading battle group. In this situation, the squadron is best suited for the mission of reconnoitering the axis of advance and providing security for one or both flanks of the leading battle group. The squadron commander normally controls and coordinates all elements of his unit, even when conducting multiple missions.

*d.* The attachment of a reconnaissance troop is justified only when adequate armored cavalry support cannot be provided with the troops under squadron control. This may occur when a battle group is on an independent mission or when weather or terrain restricts operations.

## Section III. ORGANIZATION FOR COMBAT, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 278. General

The armored cavalry squadron commander is responsible for the organization for combat of his squadron. In order to determine the most feasible organization and employment of his forces to accomplish the assigned mission, the squadron commander considers the mission, the enemy situation, the terrain and weather, and the troops and resources available to him (METT). The essential elements of combined arms are present within the squadron. This enables commanders to organize for combat into combined-arms teams, and to apportion tanks, armored infantry, scouts, and mortars to suit the particular mission.

### 279. Organization for Combat, Armored Cavalry Squadron of the Armored Division

*a.* The squadron commander normally employs the reconnaissance troops directly under his control and without change from the troop TOE. The reconnaissance troops are basically organzied as combined-arms teams consisting of tanks, armored infantry scouts, and mortars. In the accomplishment of reconnaissance and security missions, the troops do not require attachment of elements from other reconnaissance troops. Army aircraft and available electronic devices are placed in support of the reconnaissance troops as required.

*b.* Certain situations may arise in which it is desirable to make a temporary reorganization of one or more reconnaissance troops to accomplish specific missions. In this case, the squadron commander shifts the elements of the reconnaissance troops to form larger or smaller troop teams and apportions the tank, armored infantry, scout, and mortar strength of the troops to best accomplish the mission. Two or more troop

mortar sections will frequently be grouped together under squadron control.

## 280. Organization for Combat, Infantry Division Cavalry Squadron

The squadron commander normally employs the reconnaissance troops directly under his control and without change from the troop TOE. The platoons of the reconnaissance troops are basically organized as combined-arms teams consisting of tanks, armored infantry, scouts, and mortars. In the accomplishment of normal reconnaissance and security missions, the troops do not require attachment of elements from other reconnaissance troops. At the squadron level, organization for combat of the infantry divison cavalry squadron does not differ from that of the armored cavalry squadron of the armored division. This is the case because, in each organization, the basic elements of combined arms are present at troop level or lower, and the troops normally do not require attachments from other troops. Elements of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon are placed in support of the reconnaissance troops as required.

## 281. Combat Support, Armored Cavalry Squadron

*a.* Normally, armored cavalry squadrons operate without attachments and without direct-support artillery. On occasion, for a particular mission, tanks and infantry may be attached. Engineers, artillery, and Army aviation may be attached or placed in direct support. Tactical air support may be available. See paragraphs 28 through 33.

*b.* As a rule, the armored cavalry squadron operates without direct-support artillery. In this case, artillery fire support is provided by the artillery units supporting the major command to which the squadron is assigned or attached. When the squadron is operating beyond the range of the artillery units supporting the major conmmand, artillery is normally attached to the squadron. When direct-support artillery is available, the supporting artillery fires must be closely coordinated with the squadron plan of operations. This is effected by conferences between the squadron commander and the artillery battalion commander or the artillery liaison officer.

*c.* If an infantry unit is attached to the squadron, it is usually kept intact as a tactical unit, but may be reattached by smaller units to the reconnaissance troops. The infantry unit may be held in reserve or employed in normal infantry roles. If both tank and infantry units are attached, they are normally formed into a tank-infantry team.

*d.* If a tank unit is attached, it is normally held in reserve as a unit and used by the squadron commander to strike a critical blow during

the action. Tanks may be reattached to reconnaissance troops as required by the situation.

*e.* Engineers may be attached to facilitate demolition, crossing and clearing obstacles, and road maintenance. They should be employed to best assist the movement of the squadron, and may be held under squadron control or placed with one or more of the reconnaissance troops as the situation dictates. Engineer reconnaissance teams are frequently attached to the squadron for the purpose of gathering technical information of roads, bridges, and obstacles.

*f.* Tactical air support may be made available to the squadron. When tactical air support is made available, an Air Force forward air controller is provided. The forward air controller advises the squadron commander in matters pertaining to the employment of tactical air, and controls the air strikes which are flown for the squadron. Close liaison should be maintained between the forward air controller and the artillery liaison officer. The forward air controller should remain with the command post or command group until a target is selected; he then moves to a point where he can observe and direct the strike. He may ride in a tank made available to him by squadron headquarters, or he may direct the strike from an Army aircraft.

*g.* Army aviation support will be provided from the division aviation company. Aircraft for use of the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon will normally be provided. In addition, helicopters may be provided as required. Reconnaissance helicopters are used by the squadron commander and staff and the reconnaissance troop commanders for observation, reconnaissance, and control. Transport helicopters are available to the squadron commander from the division aviation company on a specific-mission basis. These helicopters are used to air-lift scouts (including ¼-ton trucks) and armored infantry on combat or reconnaissance missions, and for the air transport of supplies.

## Section IV. ORGANIZATION AND EMPLOYMENT, HEADQUARTERS AND HEADQUARTERS TROOP, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 282. General

The headquarters and headquarters troops of both armored cavalry squadrons have the same subordinate elements (pars. 6–22). Differences exist in the number of personnel and the amount of equipment within the sections and platoons of the troops; the headquarters and headquarters troop of the infantry division cavalry squadron is smaller than its counterpart in the armored division. However, the difference in personnel strength and equipment does not affect employment.

## 283. Technique of Operation, Squadron Headquarters

The organization of the squadron headquarters and headquarters troop permits flexibility in its organization for combat. It must be organized to provide maximum control of, and logistical support to, the reconnaissance troops. During combat operations, the squadron headquarters usually operates in two echelons, the command post and squadron trains. The composition of the command post and squadron trains may vary according to the situation.

## 284. Squadron Command Post

*a.* The command post (CP) contains the personnel and facilities for the control of combat and administrative operations of the squadron. The command post maintains communication with higher, adjacent, supporting, and lower units. It receives and forwards reports on new developments in the situation, continuously makes plans for current and future operations, provides for liaison with higher and adjacent units, and controls liaison personnel from supporting and lower units. The command post usually includes the squadron commander, the squadron staff, and such liaison personnel as are necessary from attached and supporting units. A television receiver from the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon may be installed in the CP, and a heliport is established. The command post normally follows closely behind the combat elements of the squadron.

*b.* The squadron commander usually operates forward of the command post, taking with him certain key staff officers and only the minimum necessary facilities to form a command group (par. 52, FM 17–1).

## 285. Squadron Trains

Squadron trains consist of those elements of the squadron engaged in administrative and logistical support. The organization, location, and employment of the squadron trains depend upon the administrative situation, the mission, time and space factors, and the tactical situation. For detailed methods of operation, see FM 17–50.

## 286. Squadron Command Post Organization

*a.* The commander of headquarters troop may also act in the capacity of a headquarters commandant. As such, he is responsible for the organization of the command post, its movement under direction of the executive officer, and its security.

*b.* The plan for interior arrangement of the command post must be flexible enough to facilitate means of communication and to take advantage of the road net, concealment, and cover, but stable enough to insure efficient functioning (fig. 82). In the organization of a command post, the following general principles should be followed so far as terrain and tactical conditions permit:

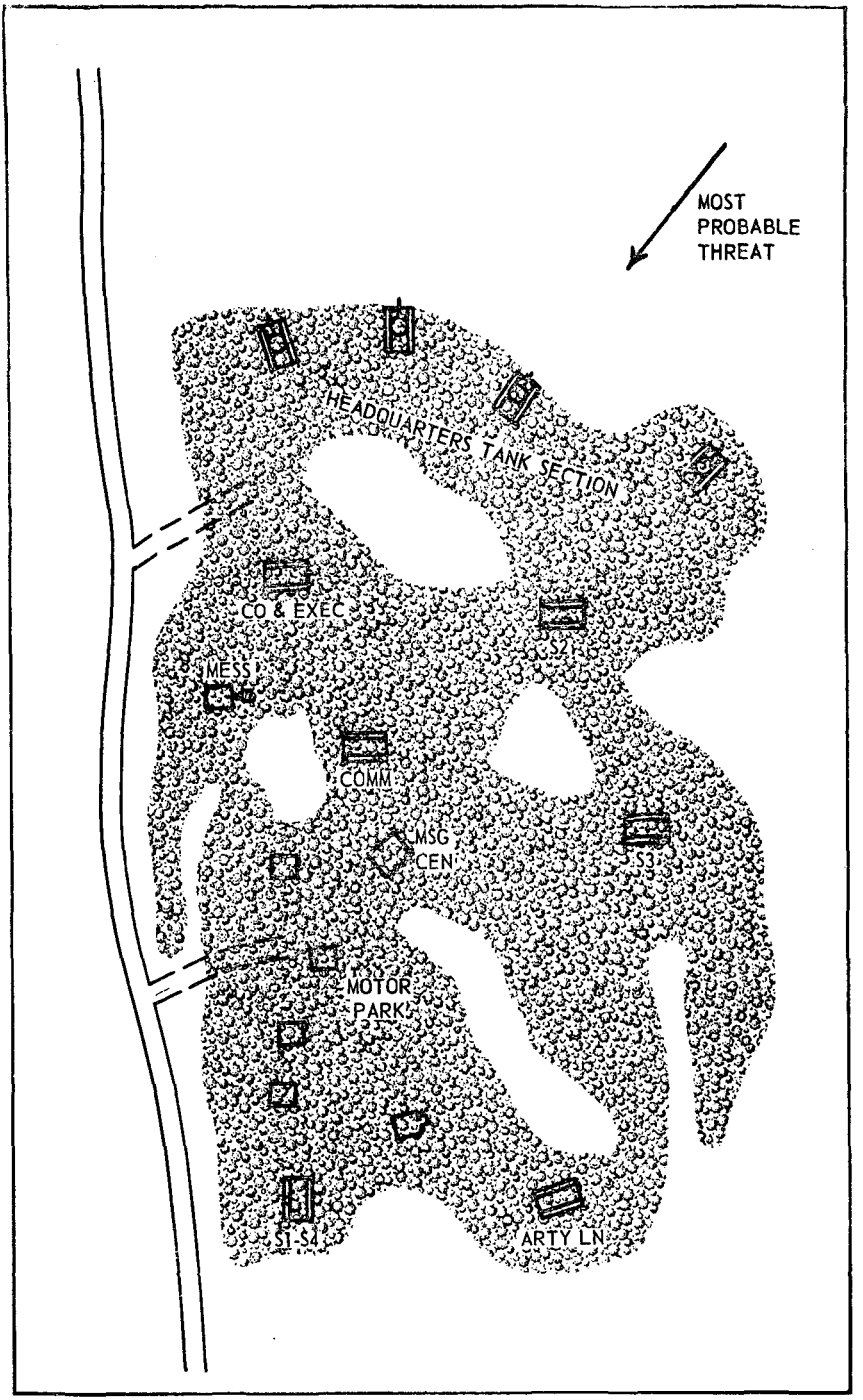



*Figure 82. A method of arranging the elements of the squadron command post.*

(1) The entire command post should be so located as to insure maximum facilities for communication of all types, particularly radio.

(2) Headquarters sections should be located within the perimeter of whatever security is available.

(3) The message center should be located near the entrance to the CP.

(4) The operations section should be centrally located.

(5) The commander and executive officer should be located near each other and near the operations section.

(6) Liaison personnel should be so located as to be readily accessible.

(7) Guides and signs should be placed at appropriate points.

(8) The command post should be located close to suitable helicopter landing areas.

*c.* During actual combat, armored cavalry squadron command posts normally remain mobile and operate from vehicles. In order to control the operation of the reconnaissance troops, the command post must be well forward. The extensiveness of the armored cavalry squadron radio communication system enables the command post to function efficiently while on the move. In order to facilitate departure from an old location, arrival at a new location, and delivery of messages en route, the command post may move in a fixed formation established by standing operating procedure. Key vehicles should be plainly marked.

## 287. Coordination Within and Between Squadron Headquarters Echelons

In the operation of the armored cavalry squadron headquarters, it is most important that constant communication be maintained and that there be a steady flow of information, especially between the command group and the command post. The command post cannot keep higher headquarters informed, nor can it properly exercise overall supervision of the squadron, unless it knows at all times the decisions, location, and activities of the commander. By the same token, the commander cannot direct or command his squadron unless he is fully aware of the squadron situation as a whole and of current information from higher headquarters. To insure this coordination, the executive officer is left at the command post to represent the commander with higher headquarters and to pass on orders and render decisions, in the commander's name, to subordinate units. The commander must so locate himself as to be always in communication with his command post and must not become so involved in local action that he cannot supervise the entire squadron. In order to insure prompt and adequate logistical support

of the squadron, close coordination must be maintained between the command post and squadron trains. This coordination is effected by the timely exchange of information between the S4, located at the command post, and the support platoon leader, who controls, and is located with, squadron trains.

## 288. Command and Control of Squadron

*a.* The squadron commander controls and coordinates the operation of his troops through his command post and command group. See paragraphs 51 through 55, FM 17–1.

*b.* Command and control of the squadron is greatly facilitated by the efficient use of liaison officers. Liaison officers are employed in order to obtain cooperation, exchange of information, and unity of effort between commanders. Armored cavalry squadron commanders normally maintain liaison with adjacent and higher headquarters. Liaison officers spend most of their time at the headquarters to which they are sent, and maintain communication with their parent unit. Squadron liaison officers are equipped to operate in the command net FM of the unit with which they are performing liaison and within the armored cavalry squadron command net FM. In addition, the liaison officer who operates at the next higher headquarters is equipped with AM radio, mounted in a ¾-ton truck, for operation in the squadron command net AM. Thus, the liaison officer at higher headquarters is able to receive information directly from the reconnaissance troops or from the squadron operations section and immediately pass it on to the higher headquarters. He is also able to transmit information and instructions from the higher headquarters to the squadron much more expeditiously than the same information and instructions could be transmitted on the higher headquarters command net.

# CHAPTER 20

# OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

## Section I. GENERAL

### 289. General

The armored cavalry squadron is capable of engaging in offensive action as an economy-force unit, or of operating as a task force when suitably reinforced. It most frequently engages in offensive action to facilitate accomplishment of its reconnaissance and security missions. Attacks made by the squadron are usually individual troop actions, due to the normal dispersion of the squadron while engaged in reconnaissance and security operations. However, the squadron may be required to execute a coordinated attack to accomplish its reconnaissance or security mission or when being employed as an economy-force unit in an offensive operation.

### 290. Employment of Armored Cavalry Squadron in the Offense

*a. Envelopment.* In the envelopment, divisions usually have exposed flanks. The armored cavalry squadron is normally given the mission of protecting the more dangerous flank of the divison. If the armored cavalry squadron is not engaged in a flank security mission, it may be employed either as a covering force, as a rear security force, to guard lines of communication, or to hold terrain features seized by major tactical commands.

*b. Penetration.* In the penetration, the armored cavalry squadron is normally employed initially to provide flank security for the force making the penetration and for maintaining contact with the forces on the flanks of the penetration. As the force making the penetration attacks, the armored cavalry squadron may be employed to provide flank security, to patrol lines of communication, to hold terrain features, or as an independent combat force.

## Section II. ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON IN ATTACK

### 291. General

The armored cavalry squadron conducts a coordinated attack when necessary to accomplish its assigned mission. The squadron may attack

alone, with or without reinforcements, or as part of a larger force. The squadron most frequently launches a coordinated attack in the accomplishment of a reconnaissance-in-force or advance-guard mission or as a part of a striking force or reserve for a larger unit in the defense.

## 292. Squadron Frontages in Attack

*a.* The frontages employed by the armored cavalry squadron in the attack are determined by the hostile dispositions, the mission of the squadron, the terrain, and the volume of supporting fires available. The squadron's frontage must be sufficient to provide adequate room for maneuver.

*b.* A unit with a covering force mission may be properly assigned a wide frontage. The sustained power required for a penetration makes necessary narrow frontage and great depth.

*c.* In wooded terrain, a narrow frontage is necessary to facilitate control. Impassable ground may force a narrowing of the formation. In open terrain, wider frontages are practical and desirable.

*d.* When the enemy has few antitank weapons and his other antitank defenses are light, a wide frontage may be assigned. If antitank defenses are concentrated at one point, a wide frontage may be required for envelopment. If the enemy antitank defenses are strong on a broad front or cannot be avoided, a narrow frontage and formation in depth are desirable.

*e.* When adequate fire support is provided by artillery and tactical air, the frontage may be greater than when such support is light or lacking.

## 293. Distribution of Squadron Forces in Attack

The attacking force is divided into two groups: the maneuvering force, which closes with the enemy, and the base of fire, which furnishes the fires which destroy, pin down, and harass the enemy prior to and during the attack of the maneuvering force. If sufficient forces are available after the requirements of the maneuvering force and the base of fire have been satisfied, forces may be designated as a reserve. If sufficient forces are not available, no reserve is constituted. See figures 83 and 84 for typical task organizations for an attack by the armored cavalry squadron.

## 294. Maneuvering Force, Squadron Attack

The maneuvering force consists primarily of tanks and armored infantry elements. The squadron commander insures that the units in the maneuvering force are organized into tank-infantry teams. This can be accomplished within the armored cavalry squadron, armored division, without reorganization for combat within the reconnaissance troops,

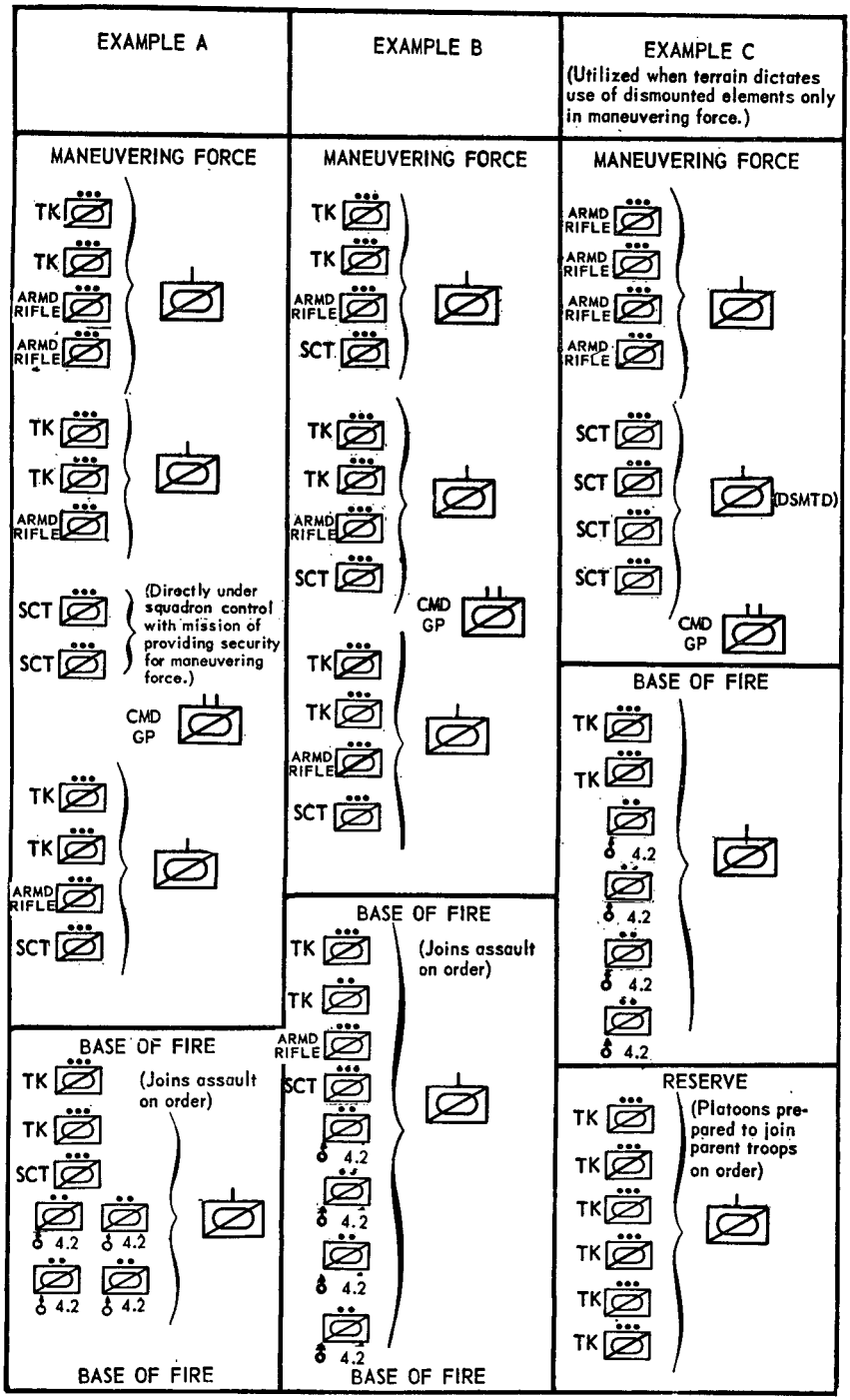



*Figure 83. Typical task organization for an attack, armored cavalry squadron, armored division.*

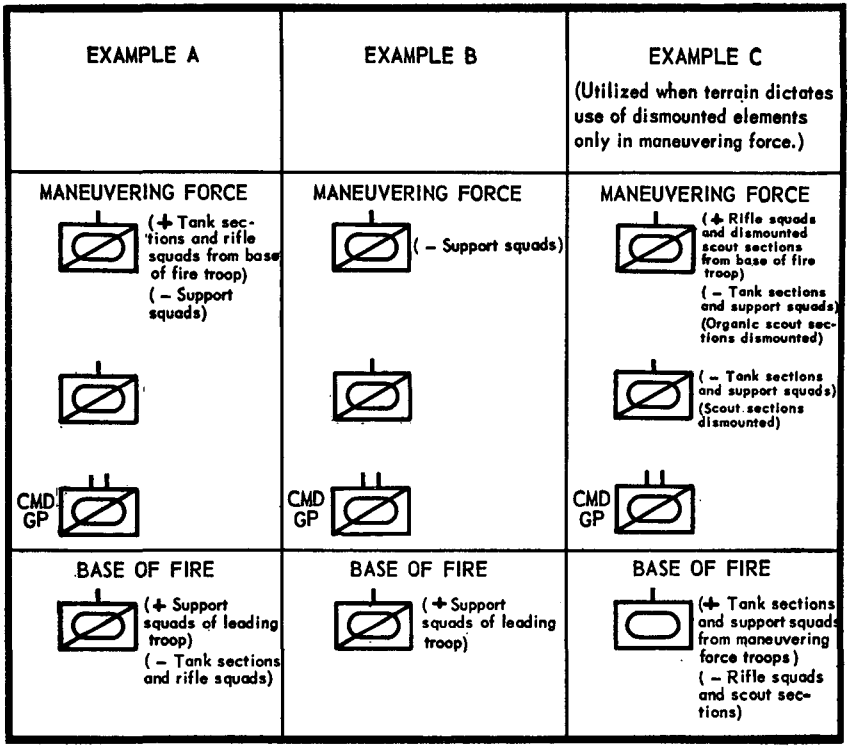



*Figure 84. Typical task organization for an attack, infantry division cavalry squadron.*

since the troops contain both tanks and armored infantry in platoon-size organizations. In the infantry division cavalry squadron, the squadron commander must insure that, within the reconnaissance troops in the maneuvering force, the tank and armored infantry strength is massed sufficiently to form effective tank-infantry teams. Normally, scouts are employed to provide flank security for the squadron. However, if a requirement exists for more armored infantry in the maneuvering force than can be provided from available rifle squads or armored rifle platoons, scout elements may be used in the maneuvering force. In this case, scouts ride in the armored personnel carriers with armored infantry elements. Reconnaissance aircraft execute surveillance to the front, flanks, and rear of the maneuvering force and of the enemy. The maneuvering force makes the main effort of the squadron, closing rapidly with the enemy, utilizing heavy fire. It is usually committed so that its formation has mass and depth. Every effort is made to employ the maneuvering force against an exposed flank of the enemy position and to attempt to envelop rather than penetrate the position. As the enemy

position is reached and overrun, assault fires of all weapons of the maneuvering force are intensified to compensate for the lifting or shifting of support fires.

### 295. Base of Fire, Squadron Attack

In a coordinated squadron attack, the mortars are normally massed under squadron control to provide the nucleus of the base of fire. The base of fire may also contain tanks, machine guns, and artillery. Army aircraft may assist the base of fire by aerial adjustment of fire. Cargo helicopters may be used to air-lift personnel, weapons, and ammunition of the base of fire when movement by ground vehicles is not feasible. The base of fire gives continuous fire support to the maneuvering force until the latter assaults the objective. Tanks are placed in the base of fire if the terrain does not permit their commitment with the maneuvering force or if the supporting fires provided from other sources are inadequate. Scout elements provide security for the base of fire. The machine guns organic to scout elements can be used to increase the automatic weapons fire of the base of fire.

### 296. Reserve, Squadron Attack

*a.* Combat forces should be held out as a reserve only when adequate forces have been assigned to the maneuvering force and base of fire. The reserve may be employed initially to reinforce the base of fire or to provide security. Transport helicopters may be used to air-lift elements of the reserve.

*b.* When insufficient troops are available to permit constituting a reserve, the armored cavalry squadron commander must utilize other means to influence the action (par. 49, FM 17–1).

## Section III. PREPARATION FOR SQUADRON ATTACK

### 297. General

The armored cavalry squadron attempts to gain its objectives in the shortest possible time, thereby reducing its losses and making its gains more effective. In order to accomplish offensive missions quickly and effectively, it attacks with aggressiveness and violence. The conduct of such attacks requires deliberate planning. In planning for the attack, the commander must consider how he can best utilize the terrain over which the squadron will operate, and the troops and fire-support available, to gain his objective most quickly and effectively. His plan must be practical and capable of rapid, forceful execution.

### 298. The Squadron Plan of Attack

Upon receipt of the plan of attack, or attack order, from higher headquarters, the squadron commander begins to formulate his plan of attack.

The plan of attack includes the *plan of maneuver* and the *fire-support plan* (par. 259, FM 17–1).

### 299. Assembly Area for Squadron Attack

The armored cavalry squadron may initiate offensive action from an assembly area if time permits. Most frequently, an assembly area is not used, or an area is used as a combination assembly area and attack position. When used in preparation for an attack, an assembly area should be as close to the enemy position as terrain and enemy activity will permit. See paragraph 244, FM 17–1.

### 300. Attack Position, Squadron Attack

*a.* The armored cavalry squadron may or may not occupy an attack position prior to an attack. Frequently the terrain and the situation are such that it is advisable to have a single area serve the purpose of both an assembly area and an attack position. This might be desirable, for example, when the squadron is making a surprise daylight attack. In this instance the assault units of the squadron would move into a combination assembly area-attack position during darkness. Here they would make combat groupings and effect refueling, maintenance, and resupply, and then launch the attack.

*b.* When used, the attack position is occupied by only those units actually attacking. In the attack position, last-minute orders are issued, and final details of coordination and reconnaissance are completed. The minimum length of time is spent in the attack position.

### 301. Control Measures, Squadron Attack

In order to maintain control of his squadron during the attack, the armored cavalry squadron commander utilizes appropriate control measures (par. 243, FM 17–1).

### 302. Squadron Attack Order

The squadron commander normally issues an oral attack order to his assembled subordinate commanders and staff officers. The order must be complete, covering all phases of the attack, and may include the issuance of maps and overlays as necessary. It should follow the form of a written operation order. When time permits, written orders should be issued.

## Section IV. CONDUCT OF SQUADRON ATTACK

### 303. General

*a.* Once the attack is launched, it must be executed with violence, utilizing all available firepower. Under cover of the base of fire, the maneuvering force maneuvers to close rapidly with the enemy. From

the moment this force comes into view of the enemy, its movement must be as rapid as the terrain permits. Each commander must be impressed with the fact that vehicle and personnel losses may often be in proportion to the time it takes to close on the objective. When the assault is launched by the maneuvering force, fire is delivered continuously so that when supporting fires are lifted the enemy is smothered with fire until he is destroyed or captured. Aggressive leadership at all levels of command will go far toward increasing the chances for success. Initiative and aggressiveness on the part of small-unit leaders will often bring victory out of seeming defeat.

*b.* The squadron commander moves to a point where he can best control his maneuvering force. He may operate from his tank, his ¼-ton truck, or Army aircraft. During the attack, he must depend primarily on radio communication to control his troops. He usually is immediately to the rear of the attacking elements, where he can actually see the greater portion of the action. By remaining in a forward position and by maintaining personal contact with his troop commanders, he can effectively control the action. The S3, artillery liaison officer, and forward air controller usually move with the squadron commander. The staff should be used to assist the commander in maintaining control, but must not interfere with the troop commander's prerogatives of command.

*c.* Army aircraft should be used to assist the commander by providing information, maintaining security, and facilitating control of the troops. Army aircraft may also be employed to assist in protection of the flanks and to extend reconnaissance to the front to facilitate the continuation of the attack.

## 304. Conduct of Squadron Maneuvering Force

*a.* The maneuvering force moves, preferably toward an enemy flank, utilizing all available cover and concealment, to a position where fire-and-movement techniques may be employed to close with and destroy the enemy on the objective. See paragraph 276, FM 17–1.

*b.* Tanks in the maneuvering force assault the objective in a deployed formation. They use their machine guns and main tank guns, coupled with maneuver, to close with and destroy the enemy.

*c.* Rifle squads are transported as close to the objective as feasible before dismounting. Dismounted elements use assault fire in the final phase of the assualt and mop up any enemy personnel not destroyed by the tanks. Machine guns of the armored personnel carriers reinforce the tank fires and support the assault of the dismounted troops when possible.

*d.* The actual closing with the enemy must be an aggressive, continuous, well-coordinated assault. All enemy personnel who continue to resist after the objective is seized are destroyed and their weapons rendered inoperative.

*e.* It is normal for the bulk or all of the tanks and rifle squads in an armored cavalry unit to be employed together in the maneuvering force.

## 305. Conduct of Squadron Base of Fire

On order, all weapons in the base of fire open fire on designated targets or areas. When the maneuvering force arrives at the objective or masks supporting fire, the base of fire lifts its fires or shifts them to rear or flank targets. See paragraph 278, FM 17–1.

## 306. Actions on Objective, Squadron Attack

See paragraph 281, FM 17–1.

## 307. Continuation of Squadron Attack

*a.* After seizing an objective, the armored cavalry squadron relentlessly continues the attack in order to prevent the enemy from reconstituting his defense, to exploit its initial success, or to execute its next mission. The armored cavalry unit commander should have a complete picture of the overall plan of the higher commander and make a continuous estimate of the situation. By use of this estimate and his knowledge of the higher commander's plan, he can adopt formations which enable the unit to readily continue the attack. If this procedure is followed, his subordinate commanders will need only brief oral orders to resume operations.

*b.* Usually the squadron halts on intermediate objectives only when the mission, the enemy reaction, or the necessity for reorganization or displacement of supporting weapons makes halting imperative. During such halts, the squadron maintains contact with the enemy by observation and fire or by aggressive patrolling, to discover enemy withdrawals or to avoid a surprise counterattack.

## 308. Employment of Reconnaissance and Surveillance Platoon in Squadron Attack

During the attack, the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon is used to adjust the fire of indirect-fire-support weapons, to provide information of the enemy and the terrain, and to provide security for the squadron by giving early warning of enemy threats to the squadron formation. Army aircraft are normally employed, under squadron control, to provide surveillance to the front and flanks of the formation. Observers in these aircraft report on approximate enemy strengths, enemy dispositions, movement of enemy forces and their reserves, and

target locations. They also adjust mortar and artillery fire as required. These aircraft greatly facilitate control of the elements of the squadron by the squadron commander. The aerial television section is used to perform television surveillance of critical areas such as bridges or defiles or to televise a portion of the action as required. It may also be used to televise the movement of enemy forces. The aerial radar and aerial infrared sections are employed to detect enemy movement and concentrations which cannot be detected by visual aerial or ground observation. The photo section is used to obtain aerial or ground photographs of enemy positions or installations. The capability for rapid developing and printing of these photographs enables the squadron commander to obtain the desired photographs in time for them to be of benefit to the squadron effort. The ground radar section is used to provide security by surveillance of possible enemy avenues of approach. This section may operate under squadron control, or its teams may be attached to reconnaissance troops.

## Section V. SQUADRON IN EXPLOITATION AND PURSUIT

### 309. General

The armored cavalry squadron normally is employed on reconnaissance and security missions during the exploitation. When assigned a reconnaissance mission, the squadron usually is employed on the flank or flanks of the division. Under certain circumstances, such as when enemy resistance is light or sporadic, the squadron may precede the division on a reconnaissance mission. The squadron also may be employed as an economy force during exploitation.

### 310. Armored Cavalry Squadron as Economy Force in Exploitation

*a.* When the frontage of the division is large, and enemy resistance is weak and disorganized, the higher commander may assign an axis or route of advance to the armored cavalry squadron in the exploitation. The squadron's axis or route of advance normally is on one of the flanks of the division; however, the mission is one of exploitation rather than flank security.

*b.* The squadron usually is given an axis of advance which will allow it to advance in column on the best available road net. The command post should be approximately at the center of the column, with the command group located well forward. The squadron trains are held toward the rear of the column, protected by the rear reconnaissance troop or platoon. Isolated enemy defense areas may be bypassed for more profitable objectives if permitted by the plan of the next higher commander. The next higher commander should be kept informed of

the situation, especially with respect to location and estimated strength of any enemy strongpoints which the commander proposes to bypass. Small enemy elements are attacked from march column. If the leading troop is halted by enemy resistance, an attack is launched from march column. Army aircraft are employed to the front and flanks, for maintaining liaison with adjacent units, and to assist in command control. Transport helicopters may be used to air-lift personnel, equipment, and supplies.

## 311. Armored Cavalry Squadron in Pursuit

During pursuit, the armored cavalry squadron may be employed as the direct-pressure force or the encircling force. It may perform reconnaissance when contact with the enemy has been broken, or may be given a flank security mission.

*a. Direct-Pressure Force.* Although the armored cavalry squadron is best suited to act as an encircling force during the conduct of a pursuit, on occasion it may function as all or part of the direct-pressure force. The squadron advances along its assigned axis, usually employing multiple columns, to close quickly with the retreating enemy. Every effort is made to break through the enemy rear guard elements and engage the enemy main body. When the enemy has been forced to halt and establish a defensive position, the squadron continues to maintain constant pressure by fire and maneuver, employing offensive tactics as discussed in paragraphs 303 through 308.

*b. Encircling Force.* The armored cavalry squadron may be employed as an encircling force. The squadron may act alone on this mission or as part of a larger encircling force. This mission may be assigned when the bulk of the division has become engaged with the enemy and a light mobile force is needed to effect an encirclement. Included in such a mission may be the task of cutting the enemy supply lines, requiring seizure and defense of critical areas on the enemy line of retreat. Army aircraft are used to reconnoiter routes for the squadron, for command control, and for rapid movement of small combat elements.

# CHAPTER 21

# DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

## Section I. GENERAL

### 312. General

*a.* There are two basic types of defense: *mobile defense* and *position defense.* Armor units frequently employ a variation of the perimeter defense, in which they use techniques of both mobile defense and position defense.

*b.* The armored cavalry unit commander organizes and conducts the defense through application of the following basic considerations, which are discussed in chapter 9, FM 17–1:

(1) Proper utilization of the terrain.
(2) Security.
(3) Mutual support.
(4) Defense in depth.
(5) All-round defense.
(6) Coordinated fire plan.
(7) Strengthening of defensive area.
(8) Flexibility.
(9) Dispersion consistent with mission.
(10) Maximum use of offensive action.

### 313. Employment of Armored Cavalry Squadron in Defense

*a.* The armored cavalry squadron, by reason of its equipment, organization, and training, is best employed on reconnaissance and security missions during defensive operations. Rarely will an armored cavalry unit be engaged in independent defensive operations; it normally operates as part of a larger unit. In mobile defense, it might be given a fixing force mission or the mission of serving as all or part of the striking force. In position defense, it might be given the mission of occupying a defensive sector as part of the forces in the battle area or serving as all or part of the reserve.

*b.* The employment of armored cavalry units to organize mobile defense strongpoints, or to serve as part of the forces in the battle area

in position defense, must receive careful consideration by the higher commander. Their employment in this manner should at best be considered an economy-force measure and should be undertaken only when the need for economy forces is greater than existing reconnaissance and security requirements.

*c.* The armored cavalry squadron or any of its components may adopt the perimeter defense when halted on the exploitation for resupply, or at any other time the unit is halted and a requirement for defense against a surprise attack exists.

## 314. Squadron as Flank Guard in Defense

*a.* In either type of defensive operation, the armored cavalry squadron may be assigned the mission of securing one or both open flanks of the division.

*b.* Whenever possible, the squadron is retained as a unit under the direct control of the division commander for employment on one flank of the division. Should it become necessary to provide security on two open flanks simultaneously, the most desirable employment of the squadron would be to retain the squadron, minus one troop, directly under division control on the more critical flank, attaching the remaining troop to the battle group or combat command responsible for the other flank.

*c.* Flank security for forces engaged in either mobile or position defense is provided by the occupation of blocking positions located on critical terrain on the flanks of the defensive position. The positions occupied should be selected to block the most likely avenues of hostile approach, with the intervals between them covered by aerial and ground observation, patrols, and preplanned fires. In addition to providing early warning of enemy approach, the flank guard forces have the mission of delaying, disrupting, and disorganizing approaching forces in order to provide the force being secured the time necessary to reorient all or part of the defense to counter this threat. Maximum use should be made of Army aircraft to extend the limits of observation of the flank guard forces.

## 315. Squadron Providing Gap Surveillance and Security in Defense

The surveillance and security of the areas between forces occupying widely separated defensive positions is a mission for which armored cavalry units are well suited. The normal responsibility for such surveillance and security is assigned to the forces occupying the defensive position through the establishment of boundaries, and these forces may be reinforced by armored cavalry units for this purpose. Only in rare instances will the entire armored cavalry squadron be attached to one battle group or combat command for this purpose; instead, one or more

troops will be attached to each of the battle groups or combat commands occupying the defensive positions for the purpose of securing the gaps and maintaining contact with adjacent units. The conduct of forces so engaged will be as discussed in chapters 23 and 24.

### 316. Squadron Providing Rear Area Security in Defense

The armored cavalry squadron is particularly well suited to provide rear area security for the division, especially following completion of a covering force mission. The procedures outlined in chapter 24 cover the actions of the squadron and elements thereof in this type operation.

### 317. Employment of the Reconnaissance and Surveillance Platoon in Defense

In the defense, the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon is employed primarily to execute surveillance missions to detect enemy movement and to give early warning of enemy attacks. During daylight hours, the aerial reconnaissance section is used to perform visual surveillance to the front and flanks of the defensive area. Enemy strengths, movements, and target locations are reported. The reconnaissance section may adjust the fire of indirect-fire weapons on targets which cannot be observed from the ground. This section also takes aerial photographs. The aerial television section performs television surveillance of critical areas or televises enemy movements. The aerial infrared and aerial radar sections are employed during darkness or periods of reduced visibility to detect the presence and movement of enemy forces. The ground radar section is employed to detect movement of enemy patrols or forces close to the forward edge of the battle area. This section may be employed under squadron control, or its teams may be attached to the reconnaissance troops, as required by the situation. The ground photo section is employed to take periodic photographs of enemy positions in order to detect any changes in dispositions. If the armored cavalry squadron is in a reserve or striking force role, the entire reconnaissance and surveillance platoon may be attached to a battle group or combat command or may operate directly under division headquarters.

## Section II. ORGANIZATION OF DEFENSE, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 318. General

This section discusses techniques employed by the armored cavalry squadron and its subordinate elements in preparing for any type of defensive action. It includes discussion of the organization of the ground and planning of fires. For a discussion of reconnaissance, planning, command, control, and surveillance, see chapter 9, FM 17–1.

## 319. Organization of Ground, General—Squadron in Defense

Measures for increasing the effects of fire and maneuver take precedence over all other work in the defense. The ground is organized to bring accurate fire on the enemy while avoiding his fires and to impede enemy movement while facilitating that of elements of the squadron. The armored cavalry squadron and its subordinate elements use the same techniques when organizing a strongpoint position in either the mobile, position, or perimeter defense.

## 320. Preparation of Squadron Defensive Positions

Troop strongpoints are organized on key terrain features. The locations of these positions depend on the importance of the terrain and the approaches that they dominate. Alternate and supplementary strongpoint positions are selected and prepared to permit the squadron commander to withdraw his forces or shift them to other positions to prevent their capture or destruction, or to draw the enemy into areas favorable for counterattack. Some areas of the squadron position may be covered only by observation. Forces occupying strongpoints may or may not be mutually supporting by fire, depending on the frontage to be defended and the type of terrain. However, complete coverage of the squadron position is maintained by aerial and ground observation, listening posts, and patrolling in accordance with the surveillance plan prepared by the squadron.

## 321. Strengthening Squadron Defensive Position

Strengthening of a defensive position includes not only the measures taken in the preparation of the position and counterattack routes but also the use of demolitions and obstacles. Obstacles, to include mines, are located to stop or divert the enemy attack and to hold the enemy in areas covered by automatic weapons and tank guns. The use of demolitions for the destruction of bridges, felling of trees, and cratering of roads should be considered in the strengthening of the defensive position. Supplementary positions are prepared and strengthened to be occupied in the event of an enemy attack from another direction, or to cover an avenue of approach not otherwise covered. Strengthening of the defensive position continues as long as it is occupied.

## 322. Fire Planning in Defense, Armored Cavalry Squadron

*a.* Fire planning provides for bringing the enemy under fire as early as practicable, for increasing the fire as he nears the defensive position, for breaking up the enemy's assault, and for limiting possible penetrations of the defensive positions. Defensive fires must be carefully planned to insure that they will be effective during both darkness and daylight.

*b.* The squadron fire-support plan includes detailed plans for coordinating fires of automatic weapons, tanks, mortars, and all other fire-

support means. As soon as the squadron commander has selected his troop strongpoints, a fire-support plan is prepared which includes long-range fires usually controlled by a higher headquarters, close defensive fires to support the strongpoints, and fires to support the attack by the striking force. The squadron commander, in conjunction with the artillery liaison officer, requests the supporting artillery fires he needs to accomplish his mission. Fires should be planned on critical areas, such as likely avenues of approach and possible assembly areas and attack positions, as well as known or suspected enemy locations. Each of the preplanned concentrations is designated so that it can be called for easily by any member of the command.

## Section III. MOBILE DEFENSE, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 323. General

Elements of the mobile defense consist of the *security force, fixing force,* and *striking force* (par. 367, FM 17–1). An armored cavalry squadron may participate in mobile defense as—

*a.* The security force.

*b.* Part of the fixing force.

*c.* Part of the striking force.

### 324. Squadron as Covering Force in Mobile Defense

*a.* Armored cavalry units are particularly well suited to perform covering force missions in the mobile defense. When so employed, the squadron establishes a covering force well forward of the forward defensive area. This covering force initially operates 10 to 15 miles in front of the forward defensive area. Its mission is to give early warning of enemy approach, to develop the situation, to destroy enemy forces within its capabilities, to disorganize and inflict maximum delay on the enemy, and to deceive the enemy as to the true location of the forward defensive area. When assigned such a mission, the squadron normally is reinforced with a battalion of light artillery and a company of engineers. If additional strength is desired, a company team of tanks and mounted infantry may be attached. Once organized for combat, the armored cavalry squadron conducts the covering force mission as discussed in paragraphs 376 and 377.

*b.* Once contact with the enemy force has been gained, it is maintained throughout the covering force mission. Maximum use is made of natural and artificial obstacles to impede the advance of hostile forces. Upon completion of the covering force mission, the armored cavalry squadron should be assigned a new reconnaissance or security mission to the

flanks of, in rear of, or within the forward defensive area. Under certain circumstances, the squadron may be directed to reinforce or to constitute the striking force or to occupy an assigned strongpoint.

### 325. Armored Cavalry Squadron as Part of the Fixing Force

In the mobile defense, the armored cavalry squadron may be given the mission of organizing a portion of the forward defensive area, although the assignment of such a mission is not the most economical use of this type unit. For details, see paragraphs 369 and 370, FM 17–1.

### 326. Armored Cavalry Squadron as Part of the Striking Force

The armored cavalry squadron may be employed as a part of the striking force, usually after it has performed a covering force mission and has withdrawn through the combat elements in the forward defensive area. The operations of the striking force will be generally similar to those of normal offensive operations (ch. 20).

## Section IV. POSITION DEFENSE, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 327. Missions of Armored Cavalry Squadron in Position Defense

*a.* In the position defense, the armored cavalry squadron is most effective when assigned missions where it can use its mobility and shock action to the greatest possible extent under the existing conditions. These missions will include—

(1) Forming a covering force or general outpost for a larger force.

(2) Acting as all or part of the reserve for a larger unit.

*b.* In position defense, the armored cavalry squadron may be employed in one or more of the echelons of defense: security force, forces in the battle area, and reserve. The squadron normally is not employed to hold a portion of the battle area except as an economy force, and then it should be assigned a narrow sector, one of relatively minor importance. For details on organization of the position, see paragraphs 318 through 322.

### 328. Squadron as Covering Force in Position Defense

*a.* As in the mobile defense, the capabilities of the armored cavalry squadron are best exploited when the squadron is employed as the covering force in the position defense. The squadron is organized and operates in the same manner as in the mobile defense, initially operating 10 to 15 miles forward of the battle area with missions identical to those discussed for the mobile defense.

*b.* Upon completion of the covering force mission, the squadron should be assigned a reconnaissance or security mission to the flanks of, in rear of, or within the battle area. Under certain circumstances, the squadron may be directed to reinforce or constitute the reserve or, more infrequently, to comprise part of the forces in the battle area.

## 329. Squadron as General Outpost in Position Defense

*a.* The general outpost of a position defense is normally located and controlled by the division or higher commander. The general outpost is normally located approximately 6,000 to 12,000 yards in front of the forward edge of the battle area (FEBA). The mission of the general outpost is to give early warning of enemy approach, to disorganize and delay his advance, and to deceive him as to the true location of the battle area. If a covering force has been employed beyond the general outpost, it normally withdraws through the general outpost and relinquishes its missions to the general outpost.

*b.* The armored cavalry squadron, reinforced by engineers, artillery, and Army aviation, is well suited for employment as all or part of the general outpost of a division engaged in position defense. When given a general outpost mission, the squadron commander initiates immediate reconnaissance, preferably a personal reconnaissance supplemented by a map and aerial photo study. He then formulates his plan, which includes security measures, disposition and frontages of subordinate elements, selection of advantageous delaying positions between the general outpost and the forward edge of the battle area, organization and coordination of fires, organization of the ground to include obstacles, means for deceiving and disorganizing the enemy throughout the action, and the procedure for movement to successive positions to the rear. Because of the extended frontages inherent in this type operation, intervals between units are covered by patrolling, aerial and ground observation, and fires.

*c.* Squadron actions during the conduct of a general outpost mission are essentially the same as explained for a covering force mission (pars. 376 and 377). Unless the outpost is required to hold for a specified time, it begins its withdrawal to rearward positions as soon as it is apparent that a superior enemy force is deployed for attack and the general outpost is likely to become decisively engaged. The conduct of the general outpost is similar to that of a delaying force (pars. 336–348).

## 330. Armored Cavalry Squadron as Reserve in Position Defense

*a. General.* When the squadron is designated as the reserve, it may be employed to—

(1) Plan and execute counterattacks.

(2) Conduct spoiling attacks forward of the FEBA to harass the enemy and disorganize his forces as he prepares to attack.

(3) Defend against airborne attack.

(4) Prepare positions to extend the depth of the battle area, and to protect the flanks and rear of the higher command.

*b. Location.* The squadron should be positioned near a good road net that will permit rapid employment. It occupies a blocking position to add depth to the division defense.

*c. Squadron Counterattack Plans.* The primary mission of the reserve is to launch counterattacks. Counterattacks are of two general types: those designed to restore the original position by striking hostile forces in the flank or rear, and those designed to destroy or disorganize the enemy as he prepares to launch his attack against the main battle area. Plans must be closely coordinated with adjacent units and with forces in the battle area to insure mutual support and to prevent firing into friendly positions. Each counterattack plan is designed to capture a specific objective. Each plan also provides for an assembly area, an attack position, a line of departure, fire support, the formation and direction of the counterattack, action upon reaching the objective, communication, rehearsals or briefing of unit commanders, and coordinating instructions. Commanders at all echelons should reconnoiter the ground and familiarize their troops with the details of the plan.

*d. Conduct of Counterattacks.* Counterattacks are primarily offensive actions and are conducted as discussed in chapter 20.

## Section V. PERIMETER DEFENSE, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 331. Armored Cavalry Squadron in Perimeter Defense as Part of a Larger Unit

When participating in a perimieter defense as part of a larger unit, the armored cavalry squadron may provide all or part of the security force, occupy strongpoints along the defense perimeter, or participate as all or part of the striking force. When operating as part of a larger force, the squadron is best employed on a security force mission, oriented in the direction of an expected enemy attack.

### 332. Armored Cavalry Squadron Operating Independently in Perimeter Defense

*a. General.* Because the armored cavalry squadron frequently operates independently and at a considerable distance from the rest of the division, it often must establish a perimeter defense in order to protect itself as a temporary measure while preparing for some other action.

Usually, the situation requiring establishment of a perimeter defense allows little prior planning. Each troop on the perimeter is assigned a sector covering possible avenues of enemy approach designated by the squadron commander. Troops organize the ground as explained in paragraphs 318 through 322, in as much detail as time will permit. See paragraphs 388 through 391, FM 17–1.

*b. Security.* Each troop on the perimeter provides for its own security force, employing the scouts of its platoons along the trace of a line established around the entire squadron perimeter by the squadron commander. Army aircraft are employed to extend the area of surveillance of the scouts, with emphasis being placed on the most likely avenues of enemy approach. Also, the squadron commander should include in his plans maximum use of available aerial reconnaissance for purposes of warning.

*c. Striking Force.* The squadron commander should constitute as large a striking force as possible. Counterattack plans are prepared to meet the various enemy threats. These plans must be as detailed as time and the enemy situation will permit. Any attached tank units should be used to form the nucleus of a striking force.

*d. Plan for the Use of Supporting Fires.* A fire-support plan is prepared as discussed in paragraph 363, FM 17–1. The armored cavalry squadron on an independent mission may have artillery attached. If possible, the artillery should be so located as to be able to support each troop. All available supporting weapons are integrated into the fire-support plan.

*e. Conduct of Perimeter Defense.* During conduct of the perimeter defense, actions by the squadron are essentially the same as for mobile defense (pars. 323–326).

# CHAPTER 22

# RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

## Section I. GENERAL

### 333. General

The armored cavalry squadron is frequently required to make retrograde movements in the accomplishment of its missions. Retrograde movements may be classified as delaying action, withdrawal from action, or retirement (chap. 10, FM 17–1).

### 334. Employment of Armored Cavalry Squadron During Retrograde Movements

*a.* During a retrograde movement of a larger command, the armored cavalry squadron may provide the security force for the main body by acting as a covering force, as a rear guard, or as a flank guard.

*b.* When employed as a covering force to protect the withdrawal from action or the retirement of a larger command, the squadron employs the principles and techniques appropriate to the conduct of a delaying action. When employed in this manner, the squadron may be reinforced with tanks, infantry, artillery, and engineers.

*c.* When employed as a flank guard to protect the flanks of a larger unit performing a covering force mission, the squadron follows the technique appropriate to the conduct of a mobile flank guard.

*d.* The armored cavalry squadron normally conducts a withdrawal from action as part of a larger force; however, it may be required to withdraw as a unit to be employed elsewhere in the battle area.

*e.* When the division is conducting delaying action, the armored cavalry squadron may be assigned a zone in which to perform delaying action.

### 335. Employment of Reconnaissance and Surveillance Platoon in Retrograde Operations

During retrograde operations, the reconnaissance and surveillance platoon is used to provide early warning of enemy approach to the delaying position and to assist ground commanders by advising them of ter-

rain conditions and routes of withdrawal. It may also adjust long-range fires of indirect-fire-support weapons. Army aircraft provide the squadron commander an excellent means of controlling his troops. Visual reconnaissance is conducted by the aerial reconnaissance section to the front and flanks of the squadron and in any gaps which may exist between elements of the squadron. The aerial television section provides television coverage of critical terrain or movement of enemy forces. During periods of reduced visibility, the aerial infrared and aerial radar sections are used to detect the presence and movement of enemy forces to the front and flanks and between elements of the squadron. Ground radar is used, under squadron control or attached by teams to the reconnaissance troops, to perform surveillance of critical areas immediately surrounding the ground formation.

## Section II. DELAYING ACTION, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 336. General

*a.* A delaying action is a retrograde movement by which a force seeks to delay the advance of an enemy force. A unit engaged in a delaying action inflicts maximum punishment on the enemy without becoming decisively engaged in combat.

*b.* The armored cavalry squadron may conduct a delaying action by itself or as part of a larger force. When the squadron is employed as part of a larger force, the assigned zone will normally permit the squadron to conduct the delaying action by employing troops on successive positions, with each troop using a single route of withdrawal. When the squadron is employed by itself to conduct delaying action, the extended frontage will normally require the squadron to employ troops on successive positions with each troop using several routes of withdrawal.

*c.* An armored cavalry squadron conducting a delaying action may be divided into two major echelons, the delaying force and the reserve. Troops normally do not designate reserves. The execution of a delaying action is decentralized to troop level. The squadron commander controls the action by assigning troop zones, designating squadron delaying positions, and regulating the rearward movement of subordinate elements.

*d.* The armored cavalry squadron is well suited to conduct a delaying action by itself. Its effectiveness in delay is increased by the attachment or support of tanks, artillery, infantry transported by armored personnel carriers, engineers, and Army aviation. When tank units are attached, they are used primarily in the reserve. Engineers are retained under squadron control. Infantry are best employed as part of the delaying force or as part of the tank-infantry team in the reserve. Each troop

in the delaying force should be supported by reconnaissance aircraft from the division aviation company.

## 337. Reconnaissance and Selection of Positions for Squadron Delaying Action

*a.* Higher headquarters normally will assign a zone in which the delay will be conducted and a general area where the delay will begin. In addition, lines may be specified on which successive delaying positions must be established, and a time specified until which a delaying position must be held.

*b.* Upon receipt of a delaying action mission, the squadron commander makes as thorough a map, aerial, and ground reconnaissance of his zone as time and the enemy situation will permit. The most likely avenues of enemy approach to the position are located, and plans are made to deny their use to the enemy. If the depth of the area for the entire operation permits, the squadron delaying positions should be far enough apart to force the enemy to renew his advance and reconstitute his attack at each position. However, the squadron seeks to delay the enemy on all favorable terrain, regardless of distance. The squadron commander selects squadron delaying positions on terrain which permits coordinated delay by the squadron. When he divides the squadron zone into troop zones, he assigns boundaries between troops so that terrain features which control fire and observation in any one troop zone, as well as any avenue of approach into the zone, are included within that troop zone. Boundaries extend from the forward limit of the effective range of troop weapons, rearward through the final delaying position. Each troop zone should include at least one good route of withdrawal.

## 338. Disposition of Squadron Forces in Delaying Action

The squadron commander disposes his troops to cover the most likely avenues of approach available to the enemy through the squadron zone. The squadron command post and squadron trains are located well to the rear, so that they will not have to displace frequently and will not interfere with actions of combat elements of the squadron, and for security. The command group, however, should remain well forward with the engaged elements and should be among the last to withdraw. The reserve, if constituted, is initially located in an area from which it can move rapidly to any threatened point or rapidly execute a counterattack.

## 339. Security in Squadron Delaying Action

*a.* Action must be taken to prevent surprise of the delaying force and to provide early warning of enemy approach. Ground reconnaissance may be extended by using Army aircraft in conjunction with ground elements. Close coordination between adjacent units is essential to

avoid presenting an exposed flank to the enemy. Contact points are designated along boundaries, and liaison officers are used to keep the squadron commander informed of the situation on his flanks.

*b.* Because of the nature of the operation, the flanks of a delaying force are extremely vulnerable. An armored cavalry unit on a delaying position must establish its own flank security by all-round observation, patrols, and contact with adjacent units. Planning should include consideration of natural obstacles such as rivers, mountains, thick woods, and rugged terrain as flank protection. However, obstacles alone cannot be relied upon to stop a determined enemy. The squadron commander should use his reserve to counter any flank actions and be prepared to withdraw the remainder of the squadron to the next delaying position, if necessary.

## 340. Use of Obstacles in Squadron Delaying Action

Maximum use must be made of both natural and man-made obstacles during a delaying action. Scout sections and rifle squads both have a capability for performing limited pioneer work. Each unit commander must make use of every type obstacle which will delay the enemy and which is authorized by higher headquarters.

## 341. Routes of Withdrawal in Squadron Delaying Action

In planning and executing withdrawals to successive delaying positions, the following desirable characteristics of routes of withdrawal must be considered:

*a.* Provide cover from enemy fire.

*b.* Provide concealment from enemy observation.

*c.* Lead directly to the next delaying position.

*d.* Provide good trafficability.

## 342. Occupation and Organization of a Squadron Delaying Position, General

The delaying position usually consists of a series of platoon-size positions organized around tanks. The commander endeavors to position his tanks on terrain features which dominate likely avenues of enemy approach, which give long-range fires, and which facilitate covered withdrawal. Aside from the greater emphasis on long-range fires and covered routes of withdrawal, the occupation of each delaying position by an armored cavalry unit is similar to the occupation of a strongpoint in the mobile defense (par. 325).

## 343. Squadron Occupation and Organization of a Delaying Position

The squadron commander must insure that coordination is effected between all troops of the delaying force, the reserve, and all elements in

support of the squadron. He must also insure that security is adequate to the front, flanks, and rear.

*a. Squadron Reserve.* The squadron reserve, if organized, must occupy a position which has access to a good road net. The position must be organized to serve as a blocking position from which it can block enemy penetrations and, if necessary, support by fire the withdrawal of elements of the delaying force. The road net is utilized to execute limited-objective attacks forward of or between delaying positions and to displace to blocking, reinforcing, or supporting positions.

*b. Squadron Command Post.* The squadron command post occupies a position which is centrally located and which affords good communication (FM) with forward elements. The position should also afford good communication (FM and AM) with higher headquarters.

*c. Squadron Trains.* For occupation and organization of the squadron trains position, see FM 17–50.

*d. Engineer Support.* Supporting engineers normally participate in delaying action by destroying bridges, blocking roads, demolishing railways, and erecting barriers forward of the delaying position, and preparing similar obstacles in rear of the delaying position. Engineers also assist the rearward movement by improving roads and bridges along the routes of withdrawal.

## 344. Reconnaissance of Succeeding Squadron Delaying Positions

The squadron commander, assisted by the executive officer and other members of the staff, should perform an air or ground reconnaissance of each succeeding squadron delaying position. This reconnaissance normally includes the selection of general positions for all elements of the squadron and should be performed prior to the time that forward units begin their withdrawal to the position.

## 345. Ambush in Squadron Delaying Action

*a.* An ambush is extremely effective in the conduct of a delaying action. However, the frequency with which the armored cavalry unit employs an ambush is limited by enemy action and terrain. The unit must be capable of destroying the enemy force which it intends to ambush. If the enemy force is too large, the unit may become so heavily engaged that it will be unable to withdraw. The delay of the enemy, not his destruction, is the primary consideration.

*b.* Elements are positioned to deliver maximum fire on the enemy force being ambushed. Tanks are positioned to deliver direct fire on all vehicles within the ambush. The armored infantry are positioned to prevent the escape of dismounted enemy troops. The scout elements may

be placed forward to provide security, and where they can fire within the ambush position. Scouts also may assist in sealing off the enemy troops by firing on elements farther back in the enemy column. Mortars deliver indirect fire to the rear of the ambush position to prevent escape of enemy troops and to prevent reinforcements from coming to their assistance.

## 346. Squadron Conduct of Delaying Action

The squadron commander normally will be able to withdraw troops from the delaying position before they become decisively engaged with the enemy. The squadron continues to delay the enemy in the area between squadron delaying positions by making maximum use of troop delaying positions. The reserve may be employed to assist the withdrawal from the delaying position by conducting a limited-objective attack designed to disrupt and disorganize attacking enemy forces. Piecemeal commitment of the reserve should be avoided. The counterattack plans cover all logical enemy threats throughout the squadron zone, and must be given early dissemination to all units involved. Every effort is made to obtain surprise and to strike the enemy on the flank or rear. The employment of the reserve may take one of the following forms:

*a. Support by Fire From a Blocking Position.* The firepower of the reserve, added to firepower already concentrated in the delaying position, either destroys the penetration or permits engaged units to withdraw.

*b. Maneuvering the Reserve.* The attack launched by the reserve destroys the penetration and permits restoration of the position or orderly withdrawal to the next position, depending upon the requirement of the mission.

## 347. Squadron Withdrawal to Next Delaying Position

*a.* The squadron commander may order a withdrawal to the next squadron delaying position for one or more of the following reasons:

(1) Enemy action.

(2) To conform to action of other troops.

(3) To reorganize.

*b.* Contact with the enemy is maintained. Every effort is made to deceive the enemy and, in particular, to conceal the preparations for the withdrawal to the next position. Unless there are favorable routes of withdrawal, it is usually more effective to defend the delaying position during daylight and then withdraw at night.

*c.* Squadron trains should be located well to the rear. Attached or supporting artillery withdraws by echelon, insuring that a portion of the

unit is prepared to fire at all times. The reserve withdraws to successive reserve positions, prepared to counterattack at any time.

*d.* The squadron commander must closely coordinate and control the withdrawal of the squadron. Close contact must be maintained with each troop engaged and with friendly units on the flanks of the squadron to determine when troops should be withdrawn. The withdrawal must be commenced while the delaying force still has freedom of movement. Withdrawal is made by subordinate units on order, according to prearranged plans, or when withdrawal is made necessary by the action of the enemy. The least engaged troop is normally moved rearward first. Other troops are then withdrawn, employing fire and movement, supported by fires of the elements previously withdrawn, artillery, and tactical air. The squadron commander must insure that coordination between withdrawing troops is maintained to prevent the advancing enemy forces from maneuvering behind elements not yet withdrawn.

### 348. Army Aircraft Support of Squadron Withdrawal

Army aircraft may be used to assist in the withdrawal to the next delaying position. Critical observation posts and positions which afford excellent flanking fire on advancing enemy may be held longer and then be disengaged by transport helicopters. Transport helicopters may also be used to extricate elements which have been encircled or whose routes of withdrawal have been cut. Reconnaissance aircraft supply delaying forces with timely information of enemy movement. This allows the delaying force to remain on the delaying position for as long as possible.

## Section III. WITHDRAWAL FROM ACTION, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 349. General

*a.* See paragraphs 430 through 434, FM 17–1.

*b.* The armored cavalry squadron may be required to withdraw from action in order to position itself to be able to initiate some other action. Generally, a withdrawal from action is accomplished in two phases: a disengagement from action, followed by the formation of march columns for continued movement to the rear. To disengage from action, the squadron commander designates a security force which may be composed of one or more troops or elements of each troop.

*c.* The boundaries of the zone of withdrawal will extend back to the point where the squadron forms its march column.

### 350. Squadron Daylight Withdrawal from Action

*a.* If the squadron commander uses elements of each front-line troop as a squadron security force, the troop commanders normally employ

scout elements as their portion of the security force. This force covers the withdrawal of the troop main body and withdraws on order of the troop commander as ordered by the squadron commander.

*b.* A reconnaissance troop which is given a security force mission for the entire squadron conducts its actions in essentially the same manner as explained for a covering force (pars. 376 and 377). Often the reserve forms just in rear of the front-line troops and then assumes the functions of a security force when front-line troops have withdrawn through it. Elements of the security force normally withdraw simultaneously.

### 351. Squadron Night Withdrawal from Action

Withdrawing units move to the rear at night in generally the same manner as in a daylight withdrawal. All platoons move simultaneously if possible. It is sometimes possible to withdraw so rapidly that a squadron security force is not required; however, each platoon is responsible for maintaining its own security.

## Section IV. RETIREMENT, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 352. General

The armored cavalry squadron usually participates in a retirement as a part of a larger force. The squadron actions are essentially the same as for armor marches, since a retirement does not begin until the major portion of the command is formed into march column. In this type operation, the squadron may be directed to form in march column and move to a designated objective or assembly area, or the squadron may furnish all or part of the security for the larger force. The retirement may be preceded by a withdrawal from action, and it may be covered by a force executing a delaying action.

# CHAPTER 23

# RECONNAISSANCE OPERATIONS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

## Section I. GENERAL

### 353. General

*a.* The armored cavalry squadron is the principal reconnaissance agency of the unit to which it is assigned. In executing reconnaissance missions, the squadron obtains information by surveillance, stealth, and infiltration whenever possible; however, the squadron engages in any type of combat necessary, and often must fight to obtain information of the enemy and terrain.

*b.* The armored cavalry squadron accomplishes its reconnaissance missions by employing the reconnaissance troops in conjunction with aerial and electronic reconnaissance. Supporting Army aircraft extend the range and scope of reconnaissance operations conducted by the squadron, while the troops conduct detailed ground reconnaissance to verify, identify, or locate more exactly enemy forces or installations detected by aerial observation and surveillance devices. The activities of all elements of the squadron—air, ground, and electronic—are interrelated, and information obtained by one element may be corroborated or exploited by all other elements (fig. 85).

*c.* Chapter 5, FM 17–1, contains the detailed definition and purpose of reconnaissance and the types and fundamentals of reconnaissance; it also prescribes general tactics and techinques for reconnaissance operations.

*d.* The armored cavalry squadron is best suited for the conduct of close reconnaissance and is normally employed in this type of mission. When executing close reconnaissance, the squadron normally is directed to obtain the location, composition, and disposition of enemy forces, and specific information of the area of operations. The squadron executes battle reconnaissance for itself when in contact with the enemy. Other units normally perform their own battle reconnaissance. When suitably reinforced by fire-support agencies and Army aircraft, the squadron can conduct distant reconnaissance. Distant reconnaissance may be executed best by employing air-transportable elements of the squadron and Army aircraft.

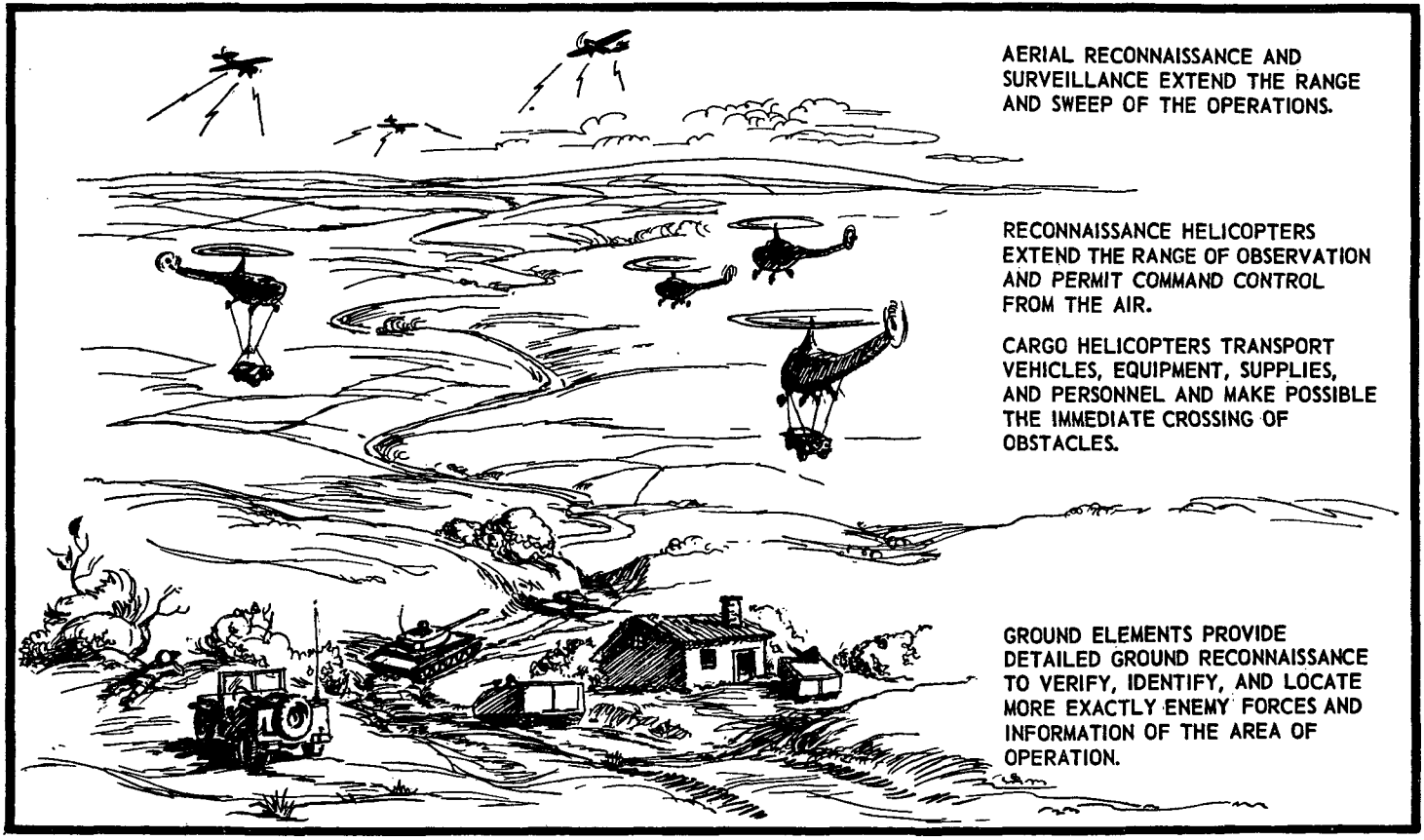



*Figure 85. Ground and air activities are interrelated.*

## 354. Squadron Reconnaissance Frontages

*a.* There is no set distance for the width of the front to be covered by the armored cavalry squadron in performing a reconnaissance mission. The factors which affect the frontage assigned to the squadron include the type of information and the detail desired, the time available, the enemy capability to resist or interfere, the terrain (with emphasis on the road net), and the weather. The capabilities of the squadron to effectively reconnoiter the avenues of approach within the given area of operations may also affect the frontage assigned.

*b.* The armored cavalry squadron of the armored division can effectively execute ground reconnaissance of four major avenues of approach by assigning one avenue to each reconnaissance troop. The infantry division cavalry squadron can effectively reconnoiter three major avenues of approach by assigning one avenue to each reconnaissance troop. Usually this allocation allows the assignment of one major road or two or three secondary roads to each troop.

*c.* Fixed-wing aircraft and helicopters are an excellent means of increasing the speed, and extending the range and scope, of the reconnaissance performed by the squadron. The number of aircraft attached to or placed in support of the squadron from the aviation company will depend on the situation; however, aircraft from the target acquisition section of the aviation company are normally placed under operational control of the armored cavalry squadron commander for employment. Army aircraft are used in conjunction with elements of the reconnaissance troops, permitting reconnaissance to be conducted by the following methods:

(1) Conducting airborne observation, utilizing visual, photographic, and electronic observation methods from fixed-wing aircraft and helicopters.

(2) Utilizing helicopterborne patrols and transporting personnel to observation posts.

(3) Providing aerial guidance for elements of the reconnaissance troops.

*d.* Fixed-wing aircraft and reconnaissance helicopters which support the squadron usually operate in front of and to the flanks of the reconnaissance troops. Transport helicopters which support the squadron are used to move scout or armored infantry elements to investigate critical terrain features and to establish observation posts ahead of or to the flanks of the reconnaissance troops. This method of transportation occasionally may increase the frontage to be assigned, but its principal effect is to quicken the tempo and improve the effectiveness of reconnaissance operations. Armored cavalry personnel must be well trained in selecting, preparing, and marking landing sites for helicopters, and

aiding in landing, loading, and protecting the aircraft. The proper choice of approaches and exits is important in effecting security of the site.

*e.* The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon is used to extend and augment the reconnaissance effort of the squadron through the use of observers, cameras, and electronic devices. Operating personnel must work in conjunction with ground elements of the reconnaissance troops and supporting Army aircraft. The platoon is able to operate very effectively during periods of darkness and limited visibility.

### 355. Squadron Reconnaissance Missions

The squadron commander determines routes, zones, or areas to be reconnoitered by the reconnaissance troops and supporting Army aviation elements. Responsibility is thus fixed, and duplication of effort is avoided. Maximum freedom of action is allowed subordinate commanders in execution of the reconnaissance mission. A limit of reconnaissance should be specified to provide each troop commander with an objective toward which he can direct the efforts of his unit. Instructions should specify what the unit is to do when the mission is completed.

## Section II. RECONNAISSANCE OF ROUTES, ZONES, AND AREAS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

### 356. Reconnaissance of Routes, Armored Cavalry Squadron

*a.* Route reconnaissance is the directed effort to obtain information of the enemy or terrain along a specific route and on the terrain features that dominate the route. In an area where no enemy action is anticipated, the reconnaissance troop in the armored division may be assigned three or four roads for route reconnaissance; the reconnaissance troop in the infantry division may be assigned two or three roads. When enemy action is imminent or anticipated, reconnaissance missions are usually assigned on the basis of one major road per troop.

*b.* The reconnaissance troop is responsible for obtaining information of the enemy or the area of operations along its assigned routes and the terrain features that dominate the routes.

*c.* Reconnaissance helicopters may be employed to support the reconnaissance troops. In the reconnaissance of a route, one or two helicopters should be employed with each troop and will generally—

(1) Be used as vantage points for observation or command control when enemy action is imminent or anticipated.

(2) Be used to extend observation by flying ahead or to the flanks of the ground formation.

*d.* The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon, supported by aircraft from the division aviation company, may be employed as follows:

(1) The aerial reconnaissance section may be assigned one or two specific routes to reconnoiter, or it may be used to the front and flanks of the squadron to conduct observation and provide photo coverage.

(2) The aerial television section should be kept available for use by the squadron commander and staff. As targets for television reconnaissance present themselves, the television section should be prepared to cover the area as quickly as possible.

(3) The aerial infrared section may be used to detect concealed enemy within the area of operations. When reconnaissance is conducted during periods of poor visibility, the section may be used to indicate possible enemy along the squadron route of advance.

(4) The aerial radar section is normally held in reserve until visibility becomes poor. The section may be used to provide indication of enemy movement along the squadron route of advance or along the flanks.

(5) The ground photo section is normally used with the reconnaissance troops which have been assigned routes to reconnoiter. Each photographer may ride with a leading element of a troop and receive instructions through a troop commander. One or more photographers may be kept at the squadron command post and be directed to specific localities on photographic missions.

(6) The ground radar section normally provides security and conducts area reconnaissance missions for the squadron. The section is used most frequently during periods of poor visibility.

## 357. Reconnaissance of Zones, Armored Cavalry Squadron

*a.* Zone reconnaissance is reconnaissance of the routes and terrain between definitely established boundaries. Zone reconnaissance is more thorough and time-consuming than any other type. In conducting zone reconnaissance, the squadron commander divides the squadron zone into troop zones and indicates the boundaries for each troop. The boundaries should be along easily recognized features, such as roads, streams, or ridge lines. Supporting Army aircraft may be assigned a zone of air reconnaissance, or may act in support of individual troops or the squadron as a whole.

*b.* The reconnaissance troops are responsible for reconnoitering all routes and terrain between their established boundaries. The number of troops to be employed, and the use of Army aircraft, depend upon the

current situation and are directly influenced by the width of the zone, terrain, capabilities of the enemy, and availability of friendly ground and air units. A troop should be assigned a zone containing not more than three avenues of advance in the case of the reconnaissance troop in the infantry division, and not more than four avenues of advance in the case of the reconnaissance troop in the armored division. The squadron command post and the squadron trains advance by bounds on the best road available in or near the center of the squadron zone.

*c.* The reconnaissance and surveillance platoon may be employed as follows:

(1) The aerial reconnaissance section may reconnoiter a specific zone assigned the platoon, or it may conduct observation and photo coverage to the front and flanks of the squadron zone of operation.

(2) The aerial television section should be used generally the same as for route reconnaissance (par. 356).

(3) The aerial infrared section may give a more complete coverage of the zone during periods of either good or poor visibility. Areas which are not easily accessible to ground elements may be initially covered by infrared reconnaissance and later by ground reconnaissance. When reconnaissance is continued during periods of poor visibility, the section is used to detect the enemy in the assigned zone.

(4) During periods of poor visibility, the aerial radar section provides detection of enemy movement in the squadron zone of advance.

(5) During a zone or area reconnaissance, the photographers of the ground photo section are normally kept at the squadron command post and directed to specific localities as needed.

(6) The ground radar section should be used generally the same as for route reconnaissance (par. 356).

## 358. Reconnaissance of Areas, Armored Cavalry Squadron

*a.* Area reconnaissance is the directed effort to obtain information of the enemy or the terrain within a definitely defined locality. All roads and terrain features within the area must be reconnoitered. The armored cavalry squadron performs area reconnaissance by assigning zones of reconnaissance, within the area assigned to the squadron, to the reconnaissance troops. The specific area to be reconnoitered is designated by use of a boundary line which completely encloses the area.

*b.* The reconnaissance troops perform the reconnaissance of their assigned areas by first moving to the area by a direct route normally designated by the squadron commander, and then performing the recon-

naissance using the same techniques as used for the reconnaissance of a zone (par. 357).

*c.* For the technique to be used in reconnoitering specific localities, such as a town, obstacle, enemy position, bridge, or defile, see paragraphs 152 and 153, FM 17–1.

### 359. Squadron Formations for Reconnaissance

*a.* In the performance of a reconnaissance mission, the armored cavalry squadron usually advances in three columns. The number of troops committed is determined by the mission, the terrain, and the known enemy situation.

*b.* Reconnaissance helicopters should support each committed troop to extend the range of observation and for command control. Fixed-wing aircraft are employed to the front and flanks of the squadron on specific missions.

## Section III. CONDUCT OF SQUADRON RECONNAISSANCE MISSIONS

### 360. General

*a.* In general, reconnaissance missions are executed boldly and aggressively, making full use of the squadron's mobility and firepower. While at times the mission assigned to the squadron can be accomplished by stealth, the squadron must be prepared to engage in combat with the enemy in order to accomplish its mission. The squadron commander coordinates and directs the efforts of the reconnaissance troops and supporting Army aviation to avoid duplication of effort. Whenever possible, the squadron avoids determined enemy resistance and seeks to perform reconnaissance without becoming engaged in decisive action. Each reconnaissance element must develop the enemy situation when contact is made. Even when platoons and troops become engaged in a fire fight, the squadron commander must keep the reconnaissance moving. When the resistance cannot be overcome by an attack, units seek to bypass and to continue the mission. The attack by the squadron may be a coordinated squadron action. However, due to the normal dispersion of the squadron, the attack frequently consists of individual troop actions

*b.* Reconnaissance frontages usually require commitment of all troops; however, if a portion of the squadron is uncommitted, it may be designated as the reserve.

### 361. Development of Situation in Reconnaissance

*a.* When enemy contact is made or an obstacle is encountered, the situation must be developed quickly. Action must be taken to determine

the enemy's location, strength, composition, and dispositions. Special effort is made to determine the flanks of the position. Attack, mounted and dismounted reconnaissance, and reconnaissance by fire are the actions normally taken to develop the situation.

*b.* Whenever the terrain permits, scout elements and/or tank elements reconnoiter the enemy position by mounted reconnaissance and reconnaissance by fire. If the terrain and enemy fire restrict vehicular movement, the position is reconnoitered by dismounted patrols from scout or armored infantry elements. Those scout, tank, and armored infantry elements which are not performing the mobile reconnaissance cover the movement of other elements.

*c.* Reconnaissance and observation flights must be employed to assist the reconnaissance troops in developing the situation. Observers, aerial television, aerial radar, and aerial infrared detectors assist in determining the factors listed in *a* above.

## 362. Control in Squadron Reconnaissance

*a.* The squadron commander controls and coordinates the operations of his troops through his command post and the command group. Generally, the squadron commander places himself in a position where he can contact all troops by radio. However, he is prepared to move rapidly to any portion of the squadron area to closely supervise and direct a critical action by any element of the squadron. The squadron commander usually operates with a small command group and necessary command control facilities. This command group shifts its means of transportation, as required, between wheeled vehicles, tracked vehicles, and aircraft.

*b.* The squadron commander uses control measures such as phase lines, routes, check points, contact points, boundaries, and objectives to control and coordinate the operations of the troops. Controls are used only to the extent of coordinating the efforts of the various elements of the squadron and preventing interference between troops. Maximum freedom of action should be given to the troop commanders in the execution of reconnaissance missions.

## 363. Squadron Reconnaissance Orders and Instructions

*a.* The reconnaissance mission is assigned to the squadron as a unit. Instructions may be issued to the squadron commander either orally or in written operation orders. Priorities should be given when more than one mission is assigned; the squadron commander then allocates tasks to individual troops.

*b.* Instructions of the squadron commander may be issued orally, by an overlay-type operation order, or by a combination of both. Whenever

possible, troop commanders should be assembled for initial orders to insure that measures for mutual support and cooperation are understood. Objectives and routes or zones are assigned by the squadron commander. After active reconnaissance has started, orders are disseminated by radio, messenger, Army aircraft, members of the squadron staff, or the commander in person.

## 364. Transmitting Information by Elements of Squadron

*a.* Prompt transmission of accurate information is essential to the success of any reconnaissance. All members of armored cavalry units must be indoctrinated with the need for prompt transmission of all information gathered. The use of a standing operating procedure facilitates transmission of essential information. Information of first contact with the enemy, or terrain information which is vital to the higher commander's plan of action, must be transmitted at once.

*b.* Information received at squadron headquarters must be handled efficiently and rapidly. The squadron staff must insure that all information of the enemy and terrain is reported to higher headquarters, disseminated to appropriate elements within the squadron, and made available for use in planning squadron operations. Information is normally reported to higher headquarters over the higher headquarters intelligence net or the higher headquarters command net, depending on the urgency of the information.

*c.* Supporting Army aircraft may be used to facilitate the transmission of information. The aircraft may be used as radio relay or to rapidly transport messengers, liaison officers, or other key personnel.

# CHAPTER 24

# SECURITY OPERATIONS, ARMORED CAVALRY SQUADRON

## Section I. GENERAL

### 365. General

*a.* The armored cavalry squadron is extensively employed to provide security for the division or major subordinate elements of the division. In executing security missions, the squadron engages in any type of combat necessary.

*b.* The armored cavalry squadron accomplishes its security missions by employing the reconnaissance troops in conjunction with aircraft from the division aviation company. The airborne observers and electronic devices extend the range of security operations, while the reconnaissance troops conduct offensive, defensive, or retrograde actions as required to accomplish the mission. The activities of all elements of the squadron—air, ground, and electronic—are interrelated. The information obtained through aerial reconnaissance is used to facilitate the ground operations of the reconnaissance troops.

*c.* The armored cavalry squadron may be reinforced with additional tanks and infantry. Support of the squadron by observation and reconnaissance aircraft should be habitual. Execution of security missions frequently requires support by artillery, engineers, and tactical air.

*d.* The squadron is well suited to provide security for a larger force. It may act as flank guard for the division. It is capable of conducting effective rear area security missions and of providing security in areas between dispersed units. It may be employed as a covering force for the division. When used as a covering force against strong enemy forces, the squadron should be reinforced with medium-gun tanks and with infantry transported by armored personnel carriers, and should be supported by artillery.

*e.* Chapter 5, FM 17–1, prescribes the general doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures for security operations and should be used in conjunction with this text.

### 366. Squadron Frontages for Security Operations

The armored cavalry squadron may be employed over extended frontages when engaged in security operations, because of its mobility and

extensive and flexible communication. It is capable of guarding both flanks of a division. It can provide security for the entire rear area of a division. The infantry division cavalry squadron, without reinforcement, normally can execute a covering force mission over a frontage containing not more than three major avenues of approach. The armored cavalry squadron of the armored division, without reinforcement, normally can execute a covering force mission over a frontage containing not more than four major avenues of approach.

### 367. Squadron Liaison in Security Operations

Units performing security missions should maintain close liaison with units concerned with the mission and with adjacent units. Commanders at all levels within the armored cavalry squadron maintain command liaison, exploit the use of liaison officers and agents, and insure that subordinate elements maintain contact with appropriate adjacent units.

### 368. Squadron Security Forces

The armored cavalry squadron can provide advance, flank, and rear security. In performing these missions, elements of the squadron may be designated as one of the following type security forces:

*a.* Advance guard.

*b.* Flank guard.

*c.* Rear guard.

*d.* Covering force.

*e.* Screening force.

*f.* Rear area security force.

## Section II. SQUADRON ADVANCE GUARD OPERATIONS

### 369. General

The advance guard operates ahead of the main body to insure the uninterrupted advance of the main body. The advance guard usually moves in a column formation, from which it deploys promptly and aggressively when opposition is encountered. The advance guard commander uses all the means available to him to remove the enemy opposition or, if this is beyond his capability, to develop the situation. The advance guard does not bypass enemy resistance, unless so ordered by the main body commander. However, the main body commander may order the advance guard to find a bypass around the enemy resistance which the main body can use.

### 370. Armored Cavalry Squadron as Advance Guard

*a. General.* The squadron may provide the advance guard for the division. Additional tanks may be attached to the squadron for this

mission. Artillery and air support should be made available, as well as the normal support by the division aviation company.

*b. Conduct.* When the squadron is acting as advance guard, the squadron commander insures that the leading troop is heavy in tanks, and that the squadron formation lends itself to attack from march column. When the squadron encounters enemy resistance, the advance guard troop attacks promptly from march column, to dislodge the enemy or to develop the situation. All available fire is placed on the hostile position. If the attack of the advance guard fails to dislodge the enemy, the squadron commander promptly launches a squadron attack. Using elements of the advance guard troop and available indirect fire support as the base of fire, the squadron commander maneuvers other elements of the squadron to strike the flank of the hostile position.

## Section III. SQUADRON FLANK GUARD OPERATIONS

### 371. General

The flank guard protects the main body from ground observation, direct fire of hostile weapons, and surprise attack. The flank guard may be mobile or stationary, depending on the actions of the main body.

### 372. Armored Cavalry Squadron as Flank Guard, General

The armored cavalry squadron is frequently employed as flank guard for the division. Normally, the squadron protects only one flank. It may protect both flanks of a division by employing the bulk of the squadron on the flank where an enemy threat is more likely to develop, with a portion of the squadron, usually a reconnaissance troop, protecting the other flank. This reconnaissance troop normally is attached to the battle group or combat command on that flank.

*a.* When the armored cavalry squadron is assigned a flank guard mission, the higher commander will specify the units to be protected or the zone of responsibility. Usually the flank guard responsibility begins at the rear of the leading battle group or battalion and ends at the rear of the combat elements of the division. When performing a flank guard mission, the armored cavalry squadron operates along critical terrain features dominating likely avenues of enemy aprpoach. Should the main body be halted, the squadron establishes blocking positions on controlling terrain to protect the flank. The leading reconnaissance troop is responsible for the area between the route or axis of advance of the force being protected and the route or axis of the squadron. Reconnaissance and observation aircraft should be placed in support of the

squadron. Cargo helicopters, when available, are used to airlift ground elements to critical localities where detailed reconnaissance, observation, or defensive action is required.

*b.* There are occasions when, due to terrain restrictions or enemy activity, it is not possible for the flank guard unit to move on a route separate from the routes used by the main body. This is usually true during a penetration and may be true during other advances. In such situations, it is necessary that elements of the flank guard be integrated into the column of the main body for forward movement. When the armored cavalry squadron is protecting a flank of the division, and no separate routes are available, it is desirable that the leading battle group or battalion on that flank be followed by a reconnaissance troop. This troop moves forward with the main body until it is necessary to occupy blocking positions, at which time it leaves the column and moves directly to the blocking positions. Other elements of the squadron are placed as far forward in the column as the situation dictates. After blocking positions have been occupied, subsequent movement usually is conducted by the leapfrog method.

## 373. Squadron Flank Guard—Planning and Conduct

*a. Planning.* In executing a flank guard mission for an attacking force, the squadron commander makes plans to move in column formation on the flank of the main body and to seize and occupy blocking positions as necessary. The command post normally is centrally located in the column. Combat trains may accompany the command post. It may be desirable to leave the squadron field trains with the field trains of a nearby unit of the main body to insure protection. Rotary-wing aircraft should be placed in support of each reconnaissance troop. Fixed-wing aircraft normally operate under squadron control. They are assigned missions which extend surveillance of the squadron to the flank and thus assist in providing early warning of enemy activity. An artillery liaison officer and a forward air controller should accompany the squadron commander in order to insure adequate planning of supporting fires.

*b. Conduct.* The squadron commander insures continuous reconnaissance by air and ground means, and keeps the main body commander informed of enemy activity on the flank. If a threat develops on the flank, he protects the main body by occupying blocking positions. He resists enemy action by offensive, defensive, or delaying action or a combination thereof, and, in doing so, provides time for the main body to react to the enemy threat. If a flank covering force is operating on that flank, he establishes and maintains contact with it.

## Section IV. SQUADRON REAR GUARD OPERATIONS

### 374. General

Elements of the armored cavalry squadron may be employed as a rear guard for larger units in retrograde movements or when advancing. The rear guard follows behind the main body, and executes delaying action if the main body is threatened. All routes to the flanks of the axis of advance or withdrawal of the main body are reconnoitered. Army aircraft are employed to the rear of the rear guard on reconnaissance and surveillance missions.

### 375. Armored Cavalry Squadron as Rear Guard

*a. General.* The squadron is sometimes employed as rear guard for the division. It may be reinforced with medium-gun tanks and engineer elements and should be supported by artillery as well as reconnaissance aircraft.

*b. Planning.* The squadron commander selects delaying positions along the route or routes of the main body from which he can protect the main body against enemy action. He employs Army aircraft and ground elements to reconnoiter to the rear to insure early warning of enemy approach. He provides for maintaining contact with the rear of the main body. This contact usually is made by liaison officers. The squadron usually withdraws on one route but may withdraw on several routes.

*c. Conduct.* The movement of the squadron is governed by the movement of the main body. The squadron commander moves the squadron so that one delaying position is always between the squadron and the rear of the main body. He executes aggressive reconnaissance to the flanks.

*d. Formations.* The armored cavalry squadron commander selects a formation which will enable him to retain the bulk of his squadron in a central location. In order to accomplish this, he designates a rear guard for the squadron. Usually the squadron rear guard consists of one reconnaissance troop. The squadron rear guard deploys to cover the routes of advance or withdrawal of the main body. The remainder of the squadron marches between the main body and the squadron rear guard. When the squadron rear guard is attacked by the enemy, the squadron commander employs the remainder of the squadron on previously selected delaying positions between the squadron rear guard and the main body, or execute a counterattack against the enemy threat.

## Section V. SQUADRON COVERING FORCE OPERATIONS

### 376. General

A covering force operates to the front, flanks, or rear of the main body beyond the local security detachments. Its mission is to give early

warning of the enemy, develop the situation, destroy enemy forces within its capabilities, disorganize and inflict maximum delay upon the enemy, and deceive the enemy as to the location of the main body. A covering force may provide security for a unit which is advancing, defending, or executing retrograde action.

## 377. Armored Cavalry Squadron as Covering Force

*a. General.* The squadron may be employed as a covering force for the division. When so employed, it should be supported by tanks, engineers, artillery, and tactical air.

*b. Planning.* When the squadron is not in contact with the enemy, the squadron commander plans to advance on a broad front to establish contact. Until contact is established, the squadron employs zone reconnaissance methods (par. 357). The reconnaissance troops are given zones to reconnoiter. The Army aircraft extend reconnaissance forward and toward the flanks. If the squadron has been reinforced, the squadron commander may establish a reserve. However, he usually relies on employment of uncommitted elements and on the mobility of the troops. Once contact with the enemy has been established, the squadron commander makes plans to develop the situation and to delay the approach of the enemy toward the main body. During this phase of the covering force operation, the squadron uses delaying action tactics. After the covering force mission has been accomplished, the squadron withdraws through the front lines of the main body, where it may provide rear area security or become part of the reserve, or withdraws to the flanks of the main body to provide flank security.

*c. Conduct.* In conducting a covering force operation, the armored cavalry squadron moves aggressively to develop the hostile situation and to prevent hostile approach toward the main body.

(1) During the advance to contact, small hostile forces may be bypassed, but only with approval of the main body commander. The reserve, if constituted, is used to destroy small forces which threaten accomplishment of the mission, and to develop the situation by forcing the enemy to show his strength.

(2) After contact has been gained and the squadron is unable to continue the advance, or when the squadron is covering a unit in a defensive situation, the squadron deceives the enemey as to the location of the main body and delays the enemy effort to advance. Every advantage is taken of natural and artificial obstacles. Engineers are used to construct and strengthen obstacles. During this phase, ambushes are usually effective and add to the delay of the hostile force.

## Section VI. SQUADRON SCREENING FORCE OPERATIONS

### 378. General

A screening force is a security detachment which protects an area or a body of troops from surprise by observing and reporting enemy activity. The mission is accomplished by establishing a series of observation posts and patrols that are capable of observing all the enemy approaches into the sector. Support by Army aircraft is of particular importance to the unit providing a screening force.

### 379. Armored Cavalry Squadron as Screening Force

*a. General.* The squadron may be used to provide a screening force when operations of the division have created extended flanks, or gaps between major subordinate units, that cannot be secured in force, or that are not considered critical enough to require security in strength. Screening operations require use of mission-type orders, and decentralization of action to troops and platoons.

*b. Planning.* The area to be screened will be designated by the division commander. The area is divided into troop zones by the squadron commander. The troops screen in their zones by establishing observation posts and mobile patrols. Army aircraft are used to extend and increase the effectiveness of screening action. Usually, no reserve is maintained at squadron level, due to the dispersion of the troops. Critical avenues of approach may receive additional fire support or may be included in narrow troop sectors.

*c. Reconnaissance and Surveillance Platoon.*

(1) The aerial reconnaissance section is used to make visual and photographic flights across the entire squadron front.

(2) The aerial television section is used to assist the commander and his staff in quickly reconnoitering critical areas along the squadron front.

(3) The aerial infrared section provides surveillance of areas where camouflage or poor visibility limits visual surveillance. This section is used extensively at night to give warning of enemy concentration and approach. It must be directed to specific areas.

(4) The aerial radar section can extend observation to the front throughout the squadron area, overcoming limited visibility.

(5) The squadron commander normally attaches one radar team from the ground radar section to each troop, so that it can provide ground radar coverage for the entire squadron front. The squadron commander may designate the location of the ground radar sets even when they are attached to troops.

*d. Conduct.* The squadron commander influences the action by providing fire support and by moving troops to previously designated screening positions when required by enemy pressure. Every effort is made to keep the screen intact while maintaining contact with the enemy. The squadron commander may maneuver lightly engaged elements to assist in extricating other elements which have become heavily engaged.

## Section VII. SQUADRON REAR AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS

### 380. General

A force with a rear area security mission protects rear area units and installations from hostile airborne, guerrilla, and infiltration attacks, and guards lines of communication. Generally, units are disposed against the threat of airborne attack. Coordination with other units and installations within the area of responsibility is essential. Communication and liaison are maintained with other units and installations.

### 381. Armored Cavalry Squadron Protecting Lines of Communication

The method employed to guard lines of communication varies according to the terrain, the road net, the length of the lines of communication, and the type of enemy action expected. The following two methods usually form the basis of any plan for the security of lines of communication.

*a.* If the lines of communication are threatened for only a short distance, sufficient troops are assigned sectors to insure that the squadron area of responsibility is completely secured. An outpost system is organized on avenues of approach and conmmanding terrain features. The squadron commander should maintain as large a reserve as possible to counter any enemy threat to the lines of communication.

*b.* If the lines of communication are long and must be guarded over a great distance, much larger sectors are assigned to troops. Sufficient troops are assigned sectors to insure that both flanks of the main supply route are covered by a series of observation posts. These observation posts have the mission of giving warning of any enemy threat. The remainder of the squadron is used to patrol the main supply route and to escort convoys through the threatened area. The unit which is escorting a convoy holds its main strength in the forward part of the convoy and also establishes patrols to the front and rear. The security of each individual convoy is normally allocated to one troop. However, the squadron commander must use as much strength as he feels is necessary for any given escort mission. This type of supply route security is normally used during the exploitation or pursuit phase of combat.

## 382. Armored Cavalry Squadron Providing Security Against Airborne and Guerrilla Attack

*a. General.* When protecting a rear area against airborne and guerrilla attack, the squadron commander disposes his units generally against the threat of airborne attack. He accomplishes this by placing a portion of the unit adjacent to likely drop zones, so that heavy automatic fire can be placed on airborne elements as they arrive on the drop zone. Other elements are prepared to move rapidly to the support of any unit attacked. Warning of guerrilla attack is gained by patrolling and surveillance of the area to be secured. The division warning broadcast net is monitored.

*b. Planning.* The squadron commander reconnoiters his assigned area and selects likely drop zones for airborne forces. He divides the area among the reconnaissance troops so that each troop is responsible for its share of likely drop zones. A portion of a troop should be positioned near each drop zone. The area is covered by patrols or observation posts. The squadron commander makes plans to move all elements of the squadron to any threatened part of the area. If the squadron is reinforced, he may constitute a reserve, which is centrally located. Army aircraft are used to provide visual surveillance of the area of responsibility. Aerial radar and infrared devices provide surveillance during periods of limited visibility. Ground radar is sited to cover critical avenues of enemy approach. The employment of aerial reconnaissance permits the squadron commander to retain more of the squadron as a striking force, centrally located.

*c.* The key to success against airborne attack is rapid deployment and the placing of maximum fires on the airborne forces during the early phases of the landing. Consequently, movement to reinforce any element must be most rapid. Scout elements and supporting Army aviation execute continuous reconnaissance to insure early warning of enemy activity.

# APPENDIX

# REFERENCES

| | |
|---|---|
| FM 5–34 | Engineer Field Data |
| FM 5–36 | Route Reconnaissance and Classification |
| FM 6–20 | Artillery Tactics and Techniques |
| FM 6–40 | Field Artillery Gunnery |
| FM 6–50 | 4.2-inch Mortar M30 |
| FM 17–1 | Armor Operations, Small Units |
| FM 17–20 | Armored Infantry Units—Platoon, Company, and Battalion |
| FM 17–33 | Tank Units—Platoon, Company, and Battalion |
| FM 17–50 | Armor Logistics |
| FM 17–70 | Signal Communication in the Armored Division |
| FM 17–80 | Tanks, 76-mm Gun, M41 and M41A1 |
| FM 17–100 | The Armored Division and Combat Command |
| FM 20–32 | Employment of Land Mines |
| FM 20–100 | Army Aviation |
| FM 21–5 | Military Training |
| FM 21–6 | Techniques of Military Instruction |
| FM 21–30 | Military Symbols |
| FM 21–60 | Visual Signals |
| FM 21–75 | Combat Training of the Individual Soldier and Patrolling |
| FM 23–5 | US Rifle, Caliber .30, M1 |
| FM 23–55 | Browning Machine Guns |
| FM 23–90 | 81-mm Mortar M1 and M29 |
| FM 23–92 | 4.2-inch Mortar, M2 |
| FM 30–5 | Combat Intelligence |
| AR 750–5 | Maintenance Responsibilities and Shop Operations |
| DA Pamphlet 39–1 | Atomic Weapons Employment |
| DA Pamphlet 39–3 | The Effects of Nuclear Weapons |
| DA Pamphlet 108–1 | Index of Army Motion Pictures, Television Recordings and Film Strips |
| DA Pamphlet 310-series | Military Publications Index (as applicable) |
| SR 320–5–1 | Dictionary of United States Army Terms |
| AR 320–50 | Authorized Abbreviations |
| TM 9–2810 | Motor Vehicle Inspection and Preventive Maintenance Services |
| TC 3–2 | Radiological Surveys |

# INDEX


| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Advance guard: | | |
| Platoon team | 94 | 73 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 253–255 | 187 |
| Scout units | 148 | 112 |
| Squadron | 369, 370 | 255 |
| Air support, tactical | 31, 281 | 20, 212 |
| Airborne attack. (*See* Rear area security forces.) | | |
| Air-landed operations. (*See* Helicopterborne operations.) | | |
| Ambush in delaying action: | | |
| Platoon team | 86 | 62 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 235 | 168 |
| Squadron | 345 | 241 |
| Area reconnaissance: | | |
| Platoon team | 90 | 69 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 251 | 179 |
| Scout units | 145 | 110 |
| Squadron | 358 | 250 |
| Armored cavalry units: | | |
| Characteristics | 5 | 7 |
| Employment | 43 | 31 |
| Missions | 4 | 6 |
| Role | 3 | 6 |
| Support | 28–33 | 19 |
| Armored infantry. (*See* Platoon, armored rifle.) | | |
| Armored rifle: | | |
| Platoon. (*See* Platoon.) | | |
| Squad. (*See* Platoon.) | | |
| Army aviation | 32, 281, 303, 348, 354 | 20, 212, 223, 243, 247 |
| Artillery support (*See also* Fire support) | 29, 281 | 19, 212 |
| Atomic: | | |
| Post-strike reconnaissance | 275 | 208 |
| Target acquisition | 275 | 208 |
| Weapons support | 33 | 21 |
| Attack: | | |
| Armored rifle platoon | 109 | 81 |
| Light-gun tank platoon | 102 | 79 |
| Mortar units | 185, 186 | 129, 130 |
| Platoon team | 62–70 | 45 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 205–219 | 144 |
| Scout units | 137 | 103 |
| Squadron | 289–311 | 218 |
| Aviation company. (*See* Army aviation.) | | |
| Administration, squadron | 273 | 208 |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Base of fire: | | |
| Platoon team | 65 | 46 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 212 | 147 |
| Scout units | 137 | 103 |
| Squadron | 295, 305 | 222, 225 |
| Bomb line | 31 | 20 |
| Characteristics: | | |
| Armored cavalry units | 5 | 7 |
| Mortar units | 183, 184 | 128 |
| Routes of withdrawal | 341 | 240 |
| Combat outpost. (*See* Defense, position.) | | |
| Command group radio communication | 36 | 24 |
| Command post: | | |
| Radio communication | 35 | 22 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 203 | 140 |
| Squadron | 284, 286 | 214 |
| Communication: | | |
| Command group radio communication | 36 | 24 |
| Command post radio communication | 35 | 22 |
| Liaison | 35, 36 | 22, 24 |
| Messengers | 39 | 30 |
| Mortar units | 183, 184 | 128 |
| Platoon | 14, 35 | 12, 22 |
| Radio nets | 35–37 | 22 |
| Scout units | 130 | 97 |
| Supplementary means | 40 | 30 |
| Wire system | 38 | 27 |
| Contact parties, scout units | 133 | 100 |
| Covering force: | | |
| Reconnaissance troop | 224, 268 | 154, 203 |
| Squadron | 324, 376, 377 | 232, 258, 259 |
| Daylight withdrawal. (*See* Withdrawal from action.) | | |
| Defense: | | |
| Armored rifle platoon | 110 | 81 |
| Light-gun tank platoon | 103 | 79 |
| Mobile: | | |
| Reconnaissance troop | 224 | 154 |
| Squadron | 323–326 | 232 |
| Mortar units | 185, 186 | 129, 130 |
| Perimeter: | | |
| Reconnaissance troop | 226 | 158 |
| Squadron | 331, 332 | 235 |
| Platoon team | 71–75 | 50 |
| Position: | | |
| Reconnaissance troop | 225 | 155 |
| Squadron | 327–330 | 233 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 220–228 | 151 |
| Scout units | 138 | 103 |
| Squadron | 312–332 | 228 |
| Delaying action: | | |
| Armored rifle platoon | 111 | 81 |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Delaying action—Continued | | |
| Light-gun tank platoon | 104 | 79 |
| Mortar units | 185, 186 | 129, 130 |
| Delaying action: | | |
| Platoon team | 76–86 | 56 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 229–238 | 163 |
| Scout units | 139–141 | 107 |
| Squadron | 336–348 | 238 |
| Disengagement. (*See* Withdrawal from action.) | | |
| Duties of personnel: | | |
| Platoons and sections | 51–55 | 40 |
| Reconnaissance troop headquarters | 195 | 133 |
| Squadron commander and staff | 10 | 9 |
| Employment: | | |
| Armored cavalry units | 43 | 31 |
| Armored rifle platoon and squad | 108 | 80 |
| Light-gun tank platoon | 101 | 78 |
| Reconnaissance and surveillance platoon | 157, 308, 317, 335, 356, 357, 379 | 119, 225, 230. 237, 248, 249, 260 |
| Reconnaissance platoon | 60 | 45 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 196–198 | 136 |
| Scout platoon and section | 119, 120 | 85 |
| Squadron: | | |
| Armored division | 275, 276 | 208, 209 |
| Infantry division | 275, 277 | 208, 210 |
| Engineer: | | |
| Pioneer work: | | |
| Armored infantry units | 116 | 83 |
| Scout units | 135 | 101 |
| Route reconnaissance | 88 | 64 |
| Support: | | |
| Armored cavalry units | 30 | 19 |
| Defense: | | |
| Reconnaissance troop | 223 | 153 |
| Squadron | 321 | 231 |
| Delaying action: | | |
| Reconnaissance troop | 232 | 163 |
| Squadron | 340, 343 | 240 |
| Squadron | 281 | 212 |
| Estimate of the situation | 209 | 145 |
| Exploitation | 309, 310 | 226 |
| Factors of METT | 23–27 | 17 |
| Fire: | | |
| Reconnaissance | 91 | 69 |
| Support. (*See also* Base of fire.) | | |
| Armored cavalry units | 29 | 19 |
| Mortar section | 185, 186, 188 | 129, 130, 131 |
| Plan, squadron in defense | 322, 332 | 231, 235 |
| Platoon team: | | |
| Attack | 66 | 48 |
| Defense | 73 | 51 |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Firepower: | | |
| Mortar units | 183, 184 | 128 |
| Scout units | 129 | 96 |
| Fixing force. (*See* Defense, mobile.) | | |
| Flank guard: | | |
| Platoon team | 95 | 73 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 256–260 | 189 |
| Scout units | 149 | 113 |
| Squadron | 314, 371–373 | 229, 256 |
| Formations: | | |
| Platoon team: | | |
| Advance guard | 94 | 73 |
| Route reconnaissance | 88 | 64 |
| Reconnaissance troop: | | |
| Advance guard | 254 | 187 |
| Route reconnaissance | 249 | 177 |
| Zone reconnaissance | 250 | 179 |
| Scout units | 124 | 87 |
| Squadron, for reconnaissance | 359 | 251 |
| Forward air controller | 31, 35, 36 | 20, 22, 24 |
| Forward observers, mortar units | 187 | 131 |
| General outpost. (*See* Defense, position.) | | |
| Guerrilla attack. (*See* Rear area security force.) | | |
| Guides: | | |
| Scout units | 134 | 100 |
| Headquarters. (*See* type of unit.) | | |
| Helicopterborne operations: | | |
| Armored infantry units | 117 | 83 |
| Scout units | 152–155 | 117 |
| Infantry: | | |
| Armored. (*See* Platoon, armored rifle.) | | |
| Information collection and transmission: | | |
| Scout units | 130 | 97 |
| Squadron, elements | 364 | 253 |
| Infrared. (*See* Platoon, reconnaissance and surveillance.) | | |
| Integrated platoon. (*See* Platoon.) | | |
| Integrated troop. (*See* Troop.) | | |
| Liaison: | | |
| Artillery | 36 | 24 |
| Officer, squadron | 12, 35, 288 | 12, 22, 217 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 204 | 143 |
| Scout units | 131 | 99 |
| Sergeant | 195 | 133 |
| Squadron security operations | 367 | 255 |
| Light-gun tank platoon. (*See* Platoon.) | | |
| Light-gun tank section. (*See* Platoon.) | | |
| Listening posts | 128, 267 | 94, 201 |
| Loading: | | |
| Helicopterborne operations | 153 | 117 |
| Scout unit equipment | 122 | 86 |
| Logistics, squadron | 274 | 208 |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Maintenance platoon, squadron | 15 | 12 |
| Maneuvering force: | | |
| Platoon team | 63, 64, 67 | 46, 48 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 211 | 147 |
| Squadron | 294, 304 | 219, 224 |
| Messengers | 39 | 30 |
| METT, factors | 23–27 | 17 |
| Minefields. (*See* Engineer support.) | | |
| Missions: | | |
| Armored cavalry units | 4, 24, 275 | 6, 17, 208 |
| Army aviation | 32 | 20 |
| Mortar units | 182 | 128 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 196 | 136 |
| Reconnaissance: | | |
| Armored rifle platoon | 112 | 81 |
| Light-gun tank platoon | 105 | 79 |
| Platoon team | 87 | 63 |
| Reconnaissance and surveillance platoon | 166, 167 | 124 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 245, 248 | 176, 177 |
| Scout units | 142 | 109 |
| Squadron | 353, 355 | 245, 248 |
| Security: | | |
| Armored rifle platoon | 113 | 82 |
| Light-gun tank platoon | 106 | 79 |
| Platoon team | 93 | 73 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 252 | 187 |
| Scout units | 147 | 112 |
| Squadron | 365 | 254 |
| Surveillance: | | |
| Gap | 315 | 229 |
| Mobile defense | 224 | 154 |
| Position defense | 225 | 155 |
| Reconnaissance and surveillance platoon | 173–180 | 125 |
| Reconnaissance troop on | 267 | 201 |
| Mobile defense. (*See* Defense.) | | |
| Mobile flank guard. (*See* Flank guard.) | | |
| Mortar units. (*See* Section.) | | |
| Movement: | | |
| Bounds | 124, 125 | 87, 90 |
| Contact | 124 | 87 |
| Nets, radio | 35–37 | 22 |
| Night withdrawal. (*See* Withdrawal from action.) | | |
| Observation: | | |
| Posts | 115, 127, 267 | 82, 93, 201 |
| Scout units | 126, 127 | 90, 93 |
| Obstacles | 223, 340 | 153, 240 |
| Offensive operations. (*See* Attack.) | | |
| Operation order | 213, 302, 363 | 149, 223, 252 |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Organization: | | |
| Combat. (*See* Type of unit.) | | |
| Platoon: | | |
| Armored rifle | 46 | 32 |
| Communication | 14 | 12 |
| Integrated | 6, 44 | 8, 32 |
| Light-gun tank | 45 | 32 |
| Maintenance | 15 | 12 |
| Reconnaissance and surveillance | 19, 48 | 14, 40 |
| Scout | 47 | 32 |
| Support | 17 | 13 |
| Team | 56–58 | 41 |
| Section: | | |
| Mortar | 49 | 40 |
| Scout, combat command | 50 | 40 |
| Squadron: | | |
| Armored division | 7 | 8 |
| Infantry division | 20 | 14 |
| Task. (*See* Task organization.) | | |
| Troop: | | |
| Headquarters and headquarters: | | |
| Armored division | 9–19, 282 | 8, 213 |
| Infantry division | 22, 282 | 16, 213 |
| Headquarters, reconnaissance troop | 193–194 | 133 |
| Reconnaissance: | | |
| Armored division | 8, 192 | 8, 132 |
| Infantry division | 21, 192 | 14, 132 |
| Outposts | 267 | 201 |
| Patrolling: | | |
| Armored infantry | 114 | 82 |
| Scout units | 146 | 112 |
| Perimeter defense. (*See* Defense.) | | |
| Pioneering: | | |
| Armored infantry | 116 | 83 |
| Scout units | 135 | 101 |
| Plan: | | |
| Attack: | | |
| Platoon team | 63 | 46 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 210 | 145 |
| Squadron | 298 | 222 |
| Fire support, squadron in defense | 322, 332 | 231, 235 |
| Loading, scout unit equipment | 122 | 86 |
| Platoon: | | |
| Armored rifle: | | |
| Attack | 109 | 81 |
| Defense | 110 | 81 |
| Delaying action | 111 | 81 |
| Employment | 108 | 80 |
| Helicopterborne operations | 117 | 83 |
| Observation posts | 115 | 82 |
| Organization | 46 | 32 |
| Patrolling | 114 | 82 |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Platoon—Continued | | |
| Armored rifle—Continued | | |
| Pioneering | 116 | 83 |
| Reconnaissance missions | 112 | 81 |
| Security missions | 113 | 82 |
| Attack | 62–70 | 45 |
| Communication, squadron | 14, 35 | 12, 22 |
| Defense | 71–75 | 50 |
| Delaying action | 76–86 | 56 |
| Duties of personnel | 51–55 | 40 |
| Integrated, organization | 6, 44 | 8, 32 |
| Light-gun tank: | | |
| Attack | 102 | 79 |
| Defense | 103 | 79 |
| Delaying action | 104 | 79 |
| Employment | 101 | 78 |
| Organization | 45 | 32 |
| Reconnaissance missions | 105 | 79 |
| Security missions | 106 | 79 |
| Maintenance, squadron | 15 | 12 |
| Reconnaissance and surveillance: | | |
| Army aviation support | 32, 158 | 20, 120 |
| Capabilities | 159–165 | 122 |
| Employment | 157, 308, 317, 335, 356, 357, 379 | 119, 225, 230, 237, 248, 249, 260 |
| Organization for combat | 158 | 120 |
| Organization | 19, 48 | 14, 40 |
| Reconnaissance | 166–172 | 124 |
| Surveillance | 173–180 | 125 |
| Scout: | | |
| Advance guard | 148 | 112 |
| Area reconnaissance | 145 | 110 |
| Attack | 137 | 103 |
| Communication | 130 | 97 |
| Contact parties | 133 | 100 |
| Defense | 138 | 103 |
| Delaying action | 139–141 | 107 |
| Employment | 119, 120 | 85 |
| Firepower | 129 | 96 |
| Flank guard | 149 | 113 |
| Formations | 124 | 87 |
| Guides | 134 | 100 |
| Helicopterborne operations | 152–155 | 117 |
| Information collecting | 130 | 97 |
| Liaison | 131 | 99 |
| Listening posts | 128 | 94 |
| Loading of equipment | 122 | 86 |
| Movement by bounds | 124, 125 | 87, 90 |
| Movement to contact | 124 | 87 |
| Observation | 126, 127 | 90, 93 |
| Organization | 47 | 32 |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Platoon—Continued | | |
| Scout—Continued | | |
| Patrolling | 146 | 112 |
| Pioneering | 135 | 101 |
| Quartering parties | 132 | 100 |
| Rear guard | 150 | 115 |
| Reconnaissance missions | 142–146 | 109 |
| Route reconnaissance | 143 | 109 |
| Screening force | 151 | 113 |
| Security missions | 147–151 | 112 |
| Training | 121 | 86 |
| Zone reconnaissance | 144 | 110 |
| Support, squadron | 17 | 13 |
| Task organization | 56–58 | 41 |
| Team: | | |
| Advance guard | 94 | 73 |
| Area reconnaissance | 90 | 69 |
| Attack | 62–70 | 45 |
| Defense | 71–75 | 50 |
| Delaying action | 76–86 | 56 |
| Flank guard | 95 | 73 |
| Organization | 56–58 | 41 |
| Part of larger force: | | |
| Attack | 70 | 50 |
| Defense | 74 | 54 |
| Delaying action | 85 | 61 |
| Rear area security | 99 | 76 |
| Reconnaissance | 92 | 72 |
| Rear area security force | 98, 99 | 76 |
| Rear guard | 96 | 74 |
| Reconnaissance by fire | 91 | 69 |
| Reconnaissance missions | 87–92 | 63 |
| Reserve in delaying action | 84 | 61 |
| Route reconnaissance | 88 | 64 |
| Screening force | 97 | 75 |
| Security missions | 93–99 | 73 |
| Training | 61 | 45 |
| Zone reconnaissance | 89 | 67 |
| Position defense. (*See* Defense.) | | |
| Pursuit | 309, 311 | 226, 227 |
| Quartering parties, scout units | 132 | 100 |
| Radar. (*See* Platoon, reconnaissance and surveillance.) | | |
| Radio nets | 35–37 | 22 |
| Rear area security force: | | |
| Platoon team | 98, 99 | 76 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 227, 228, 269 | 158, 159, 204 |
| Squadron | 316, 380–382 | 230, 261 |
| Rear guard: | | |
| Platoon team | 96 | 74 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 261–263 | 195 |
| Scout units | 150 | 113 |
| Squadron | 375 | 258 |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Reconnaissance: | | |
| Area: | | |
| Platoon team | 90 | 69 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 251 | 179 |
| Scout units | 145 | 110 |
| Squadron | 358 | 250 |
| Fire | 91 | 69 |
| Missions: | | |
| Armored rifle platoon | 112 | 81 |
| Light-gun tank platoon | 105 | 79 |
| Platoon team | 87 | 63 |
| Reconnaissance and surveillance platoon | 166, 167 | 124 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 245, 248 | 176, 177 |
| Scout units | 142 | 109 |
| Squadron | 353, 355 | 245, 248 |
| Post-strike, atomic | 275 | 208 |
| Route: | | |
| Platoon team | 88 | 64 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 249 | 177 |
| Scout units | 143 | 109 |
| Squadron | 356 | 248 |
| Troop. (*See* Troop.) | | |
| Zone: | | |
| Platoon team | 89 | 67 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 250 | 179 |
| Scout units | 144 | 110 |
| Squadron | 357 | 249 |
| Reconnaissance and surveillance platoon. (*See* Platoon.) | | |
| Reserve: | | |
| Platoon team in delaying action | 84 | 61 |
| Reconnaissance troop: | | |
| Delaying action | 238 | 168 |
| Position defense | 225 | 155 |
| Withdrawal from action | 241 | 170 |
| Scout units in delaying action | 141 | 109 |
| Squadron: | | |
| Attack | 296 | 222 |
| Position defense | 330 | 234 |
| Retirement: | | |
| Reconnaissance troop | 243, 244 | 175 |
| Squadron | 352 | 244 |
| Retrograde movements. (*See* type of movement.) | | |
| Roadblocks | 75 | 54 |
| Role: | | |
| Armored cavalry units | 3, 272 | 6, 207 |
| Route reconnaissance: | | |
| Platoon team | 88 | 64 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 249 | 177 |
| Scout units | 143 | 109 |
| Squadron | 356 | 248 |
| Scout platoon. (*See* Platoon.) | | |
| Scout section. (*See* Platoon and Section.) | | |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Screening force: | | |
| Platoon team | 97 | 75 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 264–266 | 198 |
| Scout units | 151 | 113 |
| Squadron | 378, 379 | 260 |
| Section: | | |
| Mortar: | | |
| Characteristics | 183, 184 | 128 |
| Employment | 185, 186 | 129, 130 |
| Forward observers | 187 | 131 |
| Mission | 182 | 128 |
| Organization | 49 | 40 |
| Scout, combat command | 50 | 40 |
| Security: | | |
| Missions: | | |
| Armored rifle platoon | 113 | 82 |
| Light-gun tank platoon | 106 | 79 |
| Platoon team | 93 | 73 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 252 | 187 |
| Scout units | 147 | 112 |
| Squadron | 365 | 254 |
| Rear area. (*See* Rear area security.) | | |
| Squad, support. (*See* Section, mortar.) | | |
| Squadron: | | |
| Administration | 273 | 208 |
| Advance guard | 369, 370 | 255 |
| Area reconnaissance | 358 | 250 |
| Combat support | 281 | 212 |
| Command and control | 288 | 217 |
| Command post | 284, 286 | 214 |
| Communication platoon | 14 | 12 |
| Covering force | 376, 377 | 258, 259 |
| Defensive operations | 312–332 | 228 |
| Delaying action | 336–348 | 238 |
| Employment: | | |
| Armored division | 275, 276 | 208, 209 |
| Infantry division | 275, 277 | 208, 210 |
| Exploitation | 309, 310 | 226 |
| Flank guard | 315, 371–373 | 229, 256 |
| Headquarters | 10 | 9 |
| Logistics | 274 | 208 |
| Maintenance platoon | 15 | 12 |
| Offensive operations | 289–311 | 218 |
| Organization for combat: | | |
| Armored division | 278, 279 | 211 |
| Infantry division | 278, 280 | 211, 212 |
| Organization: | | |
| Armored division | 7 | 8 |
| Infantry division | 20 | 14 |
| Pursuit | 309, 311 | 226, 227 |
| Rear area security operations | 316, 380–382 | 230, 261 |
| Rear guard | 374, 375 | 258 |

| | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Squadron—Continued | | |
| Reconnaissance operations | 353–364 | 245 |
| Retirement | 352 | 244 |
| Retrograde movements | 333–352 | 237 |
| Route reconnaissance | 356 | 248 |
| Screening force | 378, 379 | 260 |
| Security forces | 368 | 255 |
| Security operations | 365–382 | 254 |
| Support platoon | 17 | 13 |
| Task organization | 293 | 219 |
| Trains | 285 | 214 |
| Withdrawal from action | 349–351 | 243 |
| Zone reconnaissance | 357 | 249 |
| Striking force. (*See* Defense, mobile.) | | |
| Support. (*See* type of support.) | | |
| Surveillance missions: | | |
| Gap | 315 | 229 |
| Mobile defense | 224 | 154 |
| Position defense | 225 | 155 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 267 | 201 |
| Reconnaissance and surveillance platoon | 173–180 | 125 |
| Tactical air support | 31, 281 | 20, 212 |
| Tank: | | |
| Platoon. (*See* Light-gun tank platoon.) | | |
| Section, headquarters | 13, 22 | 12, 16 |
| Target acquisition, atomic | 275 | 208 |
| Task organization: | | |
| Platoon | 56–58 | 41 |
| Squadron | 293 | 219 |
| Reconnaissance troop: | | |
| Armored division | 200 | 138 |
| Infantry division | 201 | 138 |
| Team. (*See* type of team.) | | |
| Television. (*See* Platoon, reconnaissance and surveillance.) | | |
| Terrain evaluation | 26 | 17 |
| Training: | | |
| Platoon team | 61 | 45 |
| Scout units | 121 | 86 |
| Trains: | | |
| Reconnaissance troop | 203 | 140 |
| Squadron | 285 | 214 |
| Troop: | | |
| Headquarters and headquarters | 9–19, 22, 282 | 8, 16, 213 |
| Integrated | 6, 190 | 8, 132 |
| Reconnaissance: | | |
| Advance guard | 253–255 | 187 |
| Area reconnaissance | 251 | 179 |
| Attack | 205–219 | 144 |
| Command, control and liaison | 204 | 143 |
| Covering force | 268 | 203 |
| Delaying action | 229–238 | 163 |

| Troop—Continued | Paragraph | Page |
|---|---|---|
| Reconnaissance—Continued | | |
| Employment: | | |
| Armored division | 197 | 137 |
| Infantry division | 198 | 137 |
| Flank guard | 256–260 | 189 |
| Headquarters: | | |
| Duties of personnel | 195 | 133 |
| Employment | 203 | 140 |
| Organization for combat | 203 | 140 |
| Organization: | | |
| Armored division | 193 | 133 |
| Infantry division | 194 | 133 |
| Missions | 196 | 136 |
| Rear guard | 261–263 | 195 |
| Reconnaissance operations | 245–251 | 176 |
| Organization for combat: | | |
| Armored division | 199, 200, 222 | 138, 151 |
| Infantry division | 199, 201, 222 | 138, 151 |
| Organization: | | |
| Armored division | 8, 192 | 8, 132 |
| Infantry division | 21, 192 | 14, 132 |
| Part of larger force: | | |
| Attack | 219 | 150 |
| Covering force | 268 | 203 |
| Rear area security force | 227, 228, 269 | 158, 159, 204 |
| Retirement | 243, 244 | 175 |
| Route reconnaissance | 249 | 177 |
| Screening force | 264–266 | 198 |
| Security operations | 252–269 | 187 |
| Surveillance missions | 267 | 201 |
| Task organization: | | |
| Armored division | 200 | 138 |
| Infantry division | 201 | 138 |
| Trains | 203 | 140 |
| Withdrawal from action | 239–242 | 169 |
| Zone reconnaissance | 250 | 179 |
| Weather | 26 | 17 |
| Wire communication | 38 | 27 |
| Withdrawal: | | |
| Delaying action: | | |
| Platoon team | 83 | 61 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 236 | 168 |
| Scout units | 140 | 109 |
| Squadron | 347 | 243 |
| Routes | 341 | 240 |
| Withdrawal from action: | | |
| Reconnaissance troop | 239–242 | 169 |
| Squadron | 349–351 | 243 |
| Zone reconnaissance: | | |
| Platoon team | 89 | 67 |
| Reconnaissance troop | 250 | 179 |
| Scout units | 143 | 109 |
| Squadron | 357 | 249 |

[AG 470.8 (21 Nov 57)]

By Order of *Wilber M. Brucker*, Secretary of the Army:

MAXWELL D. TAYLOR,
*General, United States Army,*
*Chief of Staff.*

Official:

HERBERT M. JONES,
*Major General, United States Army,*
*The Adjutant General.*

Distribution:

*Active Army:*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| DCSPER | MAAG | |
| ACSI | Mil Mis | |
| DCSOPS | Units org under fol TOE: | |
| DCSLOG | 5–215T | 11–55T |
| CNGB | 5–217T | 11–57T |
| Technical Stf, DA | 5–218T | 11–58T |
| Admin & Technical Stf Bd | 6–301T | 17T |
| USCONARC | 6–315T | 17–22T |
| OS Maj Comd | 6–316T | 17–25T |
| OS Base Comd | 6–317T | 17–26T |
| Log Comd | 6–325T | 17–27T |
| MDW | 6–326T | 17–32 |
| Armies | 6–327T | 17–35 |
| Corps | 6–328T | 17–45T |
| USATC | 6–330T | 17–46T |
| USMA | 7T | 17–51 |
| CGSC | 7–11T | 17–55 |
| USAARMS | 7–25T | 17–57 |
| USAAMS | 7–27T | 17–57T |
| US ARADSCH | 7–37T | 17–65T |
| USAIS | 9–65T | 17–66T |
| USA Ord Sch | 9–66T | 17–67T |
| USA QM Sch | 9–67T | 17–85T |
| Trans Tng Comd | 10–45T | 17–86T |
| PMST Sr Div Unit | 10–47T | 17–87T |
| PMST Jr. Div Unit | 10–48T | 19–29T |

*NG:* State AG; units—same as Active Army.

*USAR:* Same as Active Army.

For explanation of abbreviations used, see AR 320–50.

☆ U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1957—440890